UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO

3 1761 01478375 7

Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2007 with funding from
Microsoft Corporation

DICTIONARY
OF THE
HAUSA LANGUAGE

VOLUME II. ENGLISH-HAUSA

BY THE SAME AUTHOR

A Dictionary of the Hausa Language. Vol. I.
Hausa-English. Crown 8vo. 3rd ed. 12s. net. Vol. II.
English-Hausa. Crown 8vo. 3rd ed. 10s. net. (Cambridge
University Press.)

Specimens of Hausa Literature. Small 4to. 10s.
Translation, Transliteration and Notes, without Facsimiles. 5s.
(Cambridge University Press.)

Hausa Grammar, with exercises, readings and vocabulary.
4th ed. 5s. (Kegan Paul, Trübner & Co.)

Magana Hausa. Hausa Stories and Fables collected by
J. F. SCHÖN, D.D., re-edited by C. H. ROBINSON, D.D. 2s. 6d.
(S.P.C.K.)

**The Interpretation of the Character of Christ to
non-Christian Races:** an apology for Christian Missions.
Seventh thousand. 2s. 6d. In paper covers. 1s. (Longmans.)

The Missionary prospect, including a survey of
Christian Missions in the past. 5s. net. (Partridge.)

DICTIONARY
OF THE
HAUSA LANGUAGE

by

CHARLES HENRY ROBINSON D.D.

SOMETIME LECTURER IN HAUSA IN THE UNIVERSITY OF CAMBRIDGE
HONORARY CANON OF RIPON

VOLUME II
ENGLISH-HAUSA

THIRD EDITION

Cambridge
at the University Press

1914

Ph

8233

R63

1913

V. 2.

639295

27.7.56

CAMBRIDGE UNIVERSITY PRESS

C. F. CLAY, MANAGER

London: FETTER LANE, E.C.

Edinburgh: 100 PRINCES STREET

Berlin: A. ASHER AND CO.

Leipzig: F. A. BROCKHAUS

New York: G. P. PUTNAM'S SONS

Bombay and Calcutta: MACMILLAN AND CO., LTD.

Toronto: J. M. DENT AND SONS, LTD.

Tokyo: THE MARUZEN-KABUSHIKI-KAISHA

First Edition 1900

Second Edition 1907

Third Edition 1914

All rights reserved

PREFACE TO THE THIRD EDITION

IN preparing this third edition of the *English-Hausa Dictionary* for the press I desire to express my gratitude for much valuable assistance received from Major Frank Edgar, author of three volumes of Hausa stories (*tatsuniyoyi*), Mr W. J. Gowers, the Resident at Kano, Captain Roland Fletcher, author of *Hausa Folklore*, Dr Walter Miller, of the C.M.S. Mission, Zaria, the chief translator of the N.T. into Hausa, Dr J. M. Dalziel and others who have supplied corrections and additions to the former edition. To Major Edgar I am specially indebted for many suggestions in regard to the transliteration of Hausa words, and to Dr Dalziel I am indebted for much help in compiling lists of plants and animals.

The system of transliterating Hausa which has been adopted in this volume and in the fourth edition of the *Hausa Grammar* recently published, differs in several respects from that followed in Vol. I. The changes have been made in order to render the system of transliteration uniform with that which has recently been adopted by the English Government authorities in Nigeria. It is impossible by any system of transliteration to represent the exact sounds of many Hausa words. Thus we might almost equally well write *yanka* or *yenka* 'to cut,' *kwai* or *kwoi* 'egg,' *hanya* or *hainya* 'road,' *bakwai* or *bokkoi* 'seven.' In each case the sound to

be represented lies between the sounds suggested by the alternative forms. The Hausa script affords no help in deciding between *e* and *a* in a word such as *yanka* 'to cut,' as the script contains no symbol for a short *e*. In order to bring the system adopted in this dictionary into line with that of the books issued by the Government of Nigeria I have adopted the former alternative in each of these cases which are typical of many others.

Several changes have also been made in respect of the divisions between nouns or pronouns and prepositions. Prepositions will be found written as separate words except in cases where the words to which they are attached cannot be used as independent words apart from the prepositions. Thus we have *ma shi* or *masa* 'to him.' The possessive pronouns are joined to the nouns to which they belong. In some cases, e.g. *wurinsa* 'in his place,' where the pronoun is really possessive the noun although used as a preposition cannot be separated from the pronoun: the same rule would apply to a use such as *ina binsa* 'I follow him.' In a few cases a preposition followed by a noun has become so closely united that it would be pedantic to separate them, e.g. *dayawa*, cf. English 'forasmuch,' 'overmuch' etc.

There are many instances in which it is impossible to say whether a double consonant should be used for purposes of transliteration. In the former edition of this dictionary in such doubtful cases the second consonant was placed in a bracket, e.g. *dag(g)a* 'from.' As this method of transliteration is clumsy and is otherwise unsatisfactory the use of brackets has been abandoned. In a considerable number

of cases a word may be written either with a single or a double consonant. Thus we may write *dăga* or *dagga*, *tăfi* or *taffi* 'to go,' *bisa* or *bissa* 'top.' The general rule is that wherever a consonant is doubled both consonants should be pronounced: thus *amma* 'but,' should be pronounced *am-ma*.

In accordance with the use adopted by the majority of Hausa students I have avoided the use of *chch*, *shsh* and *tsts*, as, although in a word such as *chikache* 'full,' the sound *chikachche* may be heard when the word is pronounced with unusual deliberation, the double *ch* is not heard when the word is used in ordinary rapid conversation.

As this dictionary is intended for the use of those who desire to speak the ordinary colloquial Hausa, I have omitted rare words and rare plurals or other formations.

CHARLES H. ROBINSON.

June, 1914.

ABBREVIATIONS

ans.	= answer.
art.	article.
coll.	collective.
comp.	comparative.
concr.	concrete.
conn.	connective.
dem.	demonstrative.
diff.	different.
expr.	expression, also = expressed.
fem.	feminine.
fig.	figuratively.
foll.	following.
fut.	future.
gent.	gentilic.
id.	the same.
impers.	impersonal.
instr.	instrumental.
interj.	interjection.
interrog.	interrogative.
intr.	intransitive.
loc.	of place.
neg.	negative.

neut.	= neuter.
obj.	objective.
part.	participle.
pass.	passive.
pers.	person.
phys.	physically.
possess.	possessive.
pregn.	in a pregnant sense.
prep.	preposition.
pr. n.	proper noun.
pron.	pronoun.
rel.	relative.
rep.	repeated.
sep.	separate.
spec.	specially, also = special, special term or terms.
suff.	suffixed.
techn.	technical.
tr.	transitive.
trop.	tropically.
v.	verb, also = see.
vv.	verbs.

The letters (K.), (S.) or (Z.) placed after a Hausa word denote that the word is specially used in the districts of Kano, Sokoto or Zaria.

ENGLISH-HAUSA DICTIONARY

When more than one Hausa equivalent is given it is not intended to suggest that the Hausa renderings are synonyms. For the exact meanings of the Hausa words the student is referred to the HAUSA-ENGLISH Dictionary.

*Words to which * is attached are not in general use amongst the Hausas, and should not be employed without reference to the HAUSA-ENGLISH Dictionary.*

a, 1. indef. art.; there is no word generally used in Hausa corresponding to the English indefinite article, the simple noun sufficing, e.g. *ba ni goro* give me a kola nut.

2. as indef. pron. taking the place of an art., *ɗaya* one and *wani*, fem. *wata*, pl. *wan-su*, *wasu* or *wadansu* are sometimes used, e.g. *wani gari ke nan* there was a city, *akwai wata mache sunanta Amina* there was a (certain) woman named Amina.

3. *a-*, found as a prep. prefix with Engl. words, as *a-shore a*, *da*, e.g. *afoot a kafa*, *alive da rai*.

aback, 1. adv., see **back**.

2. fig. e.g. I was taken aback (i.e. I was staggered or surprised) at this *wannan ya ba ni mamaki*.

abandon, tr. v. *bari*, *bar*.

abandoned, adj., see **profligate**.

abase, tr. v. *maida* or *yin karami*; refl. with *kai* (=self), e.g. he abases, or humbles, himself *ya maida kansa karami*, or *ya tankwasa kansa*.

abash, tr. v. *sa*, *ba* or *bada kumya*; I feel abashed *na ji kumya* (or *kunya*).

abate, tr. v. *raga*, *rage*, *ragi*; intr. *ragu*, *ragi*.

abatement, n. (decrease) *rāge-wa*, *raguwa*; = amount deducted from price of anything *rangwame*, grant me an *a. ka yi ma ni rangwame*.

abattoir, n. *wurin fawa*.

abdicate, intr. v. (used of a king) *kawu*, *maida rawani*.

abdomen, n. *chiki*; *jiki*, pl. *jikuna* (lit. body) is sometimes employed in this sense.

abhor, see **hate**.

abide, intr. v. (dwell) *zamna* ; see **abode**.

ability, n. 1. (power) *iyawa*, *iko*, a. to do what one likes *samun dama*.

2. (mental power, understanding) cf. *hankali*, *dubara*, *dabara*, *dibara*, *lura*, *wayo*.

abject, adj., see **despised**.

able, to be, v. *iya*, *i ma*, *isa*, e.g. I am a. to do this work *ina iya yin aikin nan*, you can do this *ku isa yin wannan*, or *ku isa ku yi wannan* ; to be unable or not able is expr. by *gaza*, or the neg. of the above, e.g. we are unable to lift this *ba mu isa mu dawka wannan ba*, I cannot *na gaze* or *ya faskare ni* (lit. it surpasses me).

able, (clever) *gwani*.

ablutions, ceremonial, n. *al-walla*, *arwalla* ; a. made with sand *taimama* ; to make a. *shafe*, *shafo*.

abode, n. *mazamni*, *gida*.

abolish, tr. v., see **take away**, **destroy**.

abominable, adj. *mugu*, fem. *mugunya*, pl. *miyagu*, or *mugaye*.

abominate, tr. v., see **hate**.

abomination, n. *abin mugu*, *abin kazamta*, *abin haram*.

aborigines, n. *habe*.

abortion, *ashara*, to produce a. *hata chiki*, *yasda diya*.

abortive, adj. *babu anfani*, *banza*.

abound, intr. v. *faye*, *kāru*, *yin girma* ; see **abundance**, **abundant**.

about, adv. and prep. 1. (a. so much, nearly) *ko*, *kwatamchin* (*kwatanchin*, *kāza*).

2. (around) *kewaye* ; a. him *kewayensa*.

about, to be, v. *za* followed by the personal pronouns, e.g. I am a. to start *za ni tashi* ; *yin kūsa*, *kūsata*, e.g. *su kūsata in yi haka* ; cf. *makāda*.

above, adv. and prep. *bisa*, *a bisa*, *dāga bisa*, *birbishe* (S.), *darap* ; as prep. *bisa ga*, and, when followed by personal pronouns, *gare*, e.g. *bisa ga tudu* but *bisa gare shi* ; cf. *biz-biz*.

abreast, adv. *ajere*, *ajera*, *gaba daya*, *dabara*, *daura*.

abroad, adv. *a waje*, *daga waje* ; (at a distance) *daga nesa*.

abrogate, tr. v. *kauda*, *kawas da* ; to a. a law *gushe*.

abrupt, adj. (precipitous) *da gangara*.

abruptly, adv. (suddenly) *da sauri*, *da samri*.

abscess, n. *kurji*, *kureji*, *kirchi*, *gurje*, pl. *kuraje*, *maruru*, *gyambo*, pl. *gyambuna*, *hantukuriya* (K.), *jambade*.

absence, in his *bayansa*.

absent, see under **present**.

absorb, tr. v. *sha*, *shanya*; (used of cloth, etc.) *tsotsa*; to be absorbed in thought or business (so as to forget all else) *yin shagalchi*, e.g. I was so absorbed that I forgot this *na yi shagalchi har na manta wannan*.

abstain from, tr. v. *daina*, *dena*; *bari*, *bar*.

abstract, tr. v. *debe*, *fitasda*; (to purloin) *sache*, *sata*, *yin sata*.

absurd, adj. *banza*.

Abubekr, pr. n. *Abubakar*, also contracted form *Bube*.

abundance, n. *yawa*, *yawan-chi*, *auki**, *yalwa*, *yayalwachi*, *kāri*, *malala*, *rufogo*, *walawa*, *tululu*, *tilli*, *tulli*, *rikumbu**; (a. of food) *zari*, *machiya*, *tinjim**.

abundant, adj. *dayawa*, *mayawa*, *mai-yawa*.

abundantly, *yālwache*.

abuse, n. (i.e. abusive words) *habaichi*, pl. *habaitai*, *kazaf*, *kazap*, *zambo*.

abuse, tr. v. 1. (to revile) *zage*, *zagi*, *birga*, *burga*; (to

a. behind one's back) *yin habaichi*, *chim baya*.

2. (to make ill use of) turn by *yin* with *abin wofi*, etc.

acacia, *bagaruwa*, *gabaruwa*, *ḍakwara*, *dushe*, *fura kaya*, *farchin shafo*, *gaba chara*, *gardayi*, *gawo*, pl. *gawake*, *kwarkwara*, *karḱara*, *kak-kara*, *kwandariya*.

accede to, v. 1. *yarda*, e.g. *abin nan da ya faḍa ma ka mun yarda* = we a. to the terms he mentioned to you; *amsa*.

2. (as heir) *gāda*.

3. (to the throne) *chin sarauta*, *chi*, *yin sariki*.

accelerate, to *hamzarta*, see **hasten**.

accent, he has an a. *bakinshi yana da kwata*.

accept, tr. v. *karḱa*, *karḱi*, *samu*; cf. also prec. 1.

acceptable, adj., it is a. to me, periphr. *ya gamshe ni*, *da or abin da ya gamshe ni*.

acceptance (receipt), *amsa*.

accident, n. *kure*, pl. *kura-kuri*, *subābi*, *tsautsayi*; an a. happened to him *sabābi ya same shi*.

acclamation, n. *guḍa*. See **shout**.

accompany, tr. v. *raka*, *rāki*,

rake, yin rakiya, chi ma,
I will a. thee *za ni tare*
da kai.

accompanying, act of, n.
rakiya (S.), *rako* (K.).

accomplish, v. *iyas, iyas da,*
hare, chika, gama, yi.

accomplished, particip., see
finished.

accord, to a. with *yin baki*
daya, yin kama da.

according as, adv. particle
kama da, kaman da, kanda,
tamkan da, tamkar da, tam-
kad da, yadda.

accordingly, see therefore.

accouchement, *jego.*

account, n. 1. *lisafi, lesafi,*
kidaya, kida, kididiga; to
render an a. *yin lisafi, yin*
kidaya, to take a. of *zana.*

2. fig. e.g. he held of no a.
ba ya kula or *ba ya yi kula*
constr. with *da* or *ga.*

3. (narration) *labari*, to
give an a. *bada, ba* or *gaya*
labari; I will give you an a.
of the war *zan gaya ma ka*
labarin yaki.

account, on a. of, prep. *sa-*
*ba da, sabad da, sabo da**,
a bisa, don, domin, e.g. on
a. of this *sabad da wan-*
nan, on a. of what? where-
fore? *don mi, dommi, or*
domi.

accoutred, one who is a.
mai-daurin jiki.

accoutrements, i.e. arms, etc.
kayan daga, kayan yaki.

accrue, v. 1. (of gain) see
profit.

2. (happen, ensue) *faru.*

accumulate, see gather.

accurate, adj. and adv. *na-*
kwarai, fem. *ta-kwarai, dai-*
dai, sosai; to be a. *yin*
daidai.

accursed, adj., e.g. it is ac-
cursed *ya yi la'ana.*

accusation, n. *sara, abin sara,*
*rada**, *kara*; false a. *rinto,*
kage.

accuse, v. *sare, sara, kai kara*
(lit. bring an accusation,
constr. with *ga*), e.g. they
a. this man *sun kai kara ga*
mutumen nan, kaga ma.*

accuser, n. *mai-sara, pl. masu-*
sara, mai-kawon kara, dan-
kara, mai-kara.

accustom, v. 1. to be accus-
tomed *saba*, e.g. I am accus-
tomed to this *na saba da*
wannan, domestic animals
are accustomed to men,
bisashen gida sun saba da
mutane.

2. (to be wont, used)
employ the verbal form with
kan, e.g. he was accustomed
to do thus *shi kan yi haka.*

3. tr. I accustomed him to this food *na sa shi saba da abinchin nan*.

ache, n. *chiwo*; I have a headache *na ji* (or *na yi*) *chiwon kai*.

achieve, v. *aikata*, *samo**, *yi*, see **accomplish**.

acid, adj. *da tsami*, *da tsamiya*, *da yami*.

acidity, n. *tsami*, *tsamiya*, *yami*.

acknowledge, see **confess**.

acquaint, tr. v. (i.e. tell, inform of) *gaya*, *fadi*, *sanas da*, *sanar da*, *sanar da*, *sanashe*.

acquaintance, an, n. *masani*, pl. *masana*; he is no a. of mine, I am not acquainted with him *ba shi ne masanina ban san shi ba*.

acquainted with, 1. see prec.

2. (versed in); see **ac-custom** 1.

acquiesce, v. *yarda*; I a. in this *na yarda wannan*.

acquiescence, *yarji*.

acquit, v. (used of a judge) *chechi*, *bada gaskiya*; to be acquitted *barra*, *kubuta*.

acrid, see **acid**.

acrobat, *dan foto*.

across, prep. 1. e.g. a. the sea *ketaren* (or *daga ketaren*) *gulbi*.

2. (beyond) *bayan*.

act, n. *aiki*; phr. a bad a. *mugunta*, *mugun aiki*; a good or kind a. *alheri*.

act, to *aikata*, *yi*.

active, *karsani**.

actually, adv. *hakika*, *da gas-kiya*, *ko*; the last is emphatic (=even), e.g. this man a. surpasses a lion in strength *mutumen nan ya fi ko zaki karifi*.

Adansonia digitata (the baobab or monkey-bread tree), *kuka*.

add, tr. v. *kara*, *jimilla*.

adder, puff-a. *kasa*.

addicted, to be a. to *faye*, e.g. the boys are a. to (or fond of) play *yara suna faye yin wargi*.

addition, in a. to *bam da*, *ban da*.

address, to a. to, v. *ambata*, *ambache*.

adduce, tr. v., e.g. to a. testimony *kai* (or *karwo*) *shaida*.

adept, n. *gwani*, pl. *gwanaye*; he is an a. at... *shi ne gwani na...*; also *ya saba da...*

adhere, to a. to, v. *rike*, *dafe*, *like*, *lazumche*, *lazumta*, *na-na*, *nane*, the last is used of things stuck together with gum etc.; those who a. to the commandments of God

masu-riken hakumtai na Allah.

adhering, n. *nani*.

adhesive, adj. *mai-yauki*.

adieu, interj. *sai wata rana* ;

a. for the present *sai an jima*,

a. till to-morrow *sai gobe*.

adjoin, intr. v. *kusata, kusanta, kusache, yin kusa*.

adjure, v., I a. thee by God *na gama ka da Allah*.

administer, tr. v. (to give to, e.g. medicine) *ba, bada*; to a. justice or law *yin shari'a*; to a. government, cf. *mallaka, hakumta*; an administrator of law and justice *maraban shari'a da gaskiya*.

admit, tr. v. 1. I admitted him, periph. *na bar shi shi shiga*.

2. to a., e.g. error, guilt etc., see **confess**.

admonish, see **warn**.

adoption, n. *yanchi*.

adoptive, a.-father *uban rana*.

adorn, tr. v. *gyarta*.

adorned, adj. *gyartache*, fem. *gyartata*, pl. *gyartattu*.

adornment, n. *sha'awa, ado*, the last used of trinkets, etc., also of dress.

adulteration, *algus, algusu, tsirariya, tsinariya, ha'inchi*.

adulterer, n. *kwarto*, fem. *kwartuwa, mazinachi, mazi-nanchi, mai-zina*.

adulteress, n. *mazinachiya, mazinanchiya, farka, falka, fasiika*.

adultery, n. *zina, kwartonchi, zamba**.

advance, intr. v. *yin gaba*, to get in a. of *chin gaba, riga, rigaya, rigayi*, e.g. he outran us *ya riga mu*.

advantage, n. *anfani*; of no a. *babu anfani*.

advantageous, adj. *da anfani, mai-anfani*.

adversary, n. *ma'kiyi*, pl. *ma-kiya, abokin-gaba, mai-kin-ji*.

advice, n. *dabara, dubara, dibara* (S.), *shawara*, my a. is *abin da na gani*.

advisable, adj. see **advantageous**.

advise, v. *yin dabara*.

advocate, n. (helper, defender) *mai-taimako*.

afar, adv. *nesa, daga nesa*, e.g. I saw him from a. *na hange shi daga nesa*.

affair, n. *abu, abin*, pl. *abubuwa, sha'ani, shagali*, e.g. a sad a. *mugun abu, abin mugu*; avoid deceit and falsehood in your affairs *a bar* (or *bari*) *tsalumchi da kariya ga abubuwanaka*; *al'amari*, e.g. a wonderful affair *al'amaringa*; the affairs (= the vicissitudes or changes) of this world

a'amarin duniya; zamanchi, zama (i.e. condition of affairs), e.g. how are affairs with you in the city? *ina zaman gari?* ans. we have reason to be thankful for the condition of affairs *zaman gari da godiya.*

affect, to *sāḥe*; the heat of the fire affected her *wuta ta sāḥe ta.*

affection, see **love**.

affinity, (by marriage) *sur-kunta.*

afflict, tr. v. *yin wahala.*

afflicted, adj. (one who endures affliction and toil) *mai-wahala*, pl. *masu-wahala.*

affliction, n. *wahala, masāba, matsuwa*, see **pain**.

affright, l. n. *tsoro.*

2. tr. v. *bada tsoro, tsorata.*

afoot, adv. a *kafa, da kafa.*

afraid, adj. I am a. *na tunzera*, or *na firgita*; he made him a. *ya ba shi tsoro*; to be a. *j'in tsoro.*

afresh, adv., see **again**.

after, l. prep. *baya, bayan, baya ga.*

2. adj. *na-baya*, fem. *ta-baya.*

afternoon, n. *la'asar*, see under **rana**.

afterwards, adv. (after this) *bayan wannan, bayan haka.*

again, *kuma, haryo, har yau,*

na sābo, dāḍa, dai, de; the v. *ḡara* (add), e.g. I did not do so a. *ban ḡara yin hāka*; a and a. (i.e. repeatedly) *mai-maiche*; go again *ka sake tafiya.*

against, prep. *gaba ga, ga*; to stumble a. *tuntube da*; a. his will (perforce) *da tilas.*

agate, a brooch of *talhatina.*

age, n. l. (period or time) *yayi*, e.g. in the a. of the prophet *da yayin annabi.*

2. (time that a person has lived) *shekara* or pl. *shekaru*, e.g. what is your a.? *shekarunka nawa?* or *shekara nawa kana da rai?* or *shekara nawa tun haifuwarka?* I am eighteen years of a. *shekarata ishirin biyu babu.*

aged, adj. 1. (of a certain age), see prec. 2.

2. (advanced in years) *tsofo*, fem. *tsofuwa*, pl. *tsoffi*, *tsofaffi*, or *tsofoffi*; he is a. *yayinsa ya wuche*, lit. his time is past; see **old**.

agent, n. *na'ibi**; nouns denoting the a. may be formed from verbs, substantives or adjectives by prefixing *mai* or *ma*, e.g. *gudu* to run, *mai-gudu* a fugitive, *sassaka* to smooth wood, *masassaki* a carpenter; for further

illustrations see under *mai* and *ma*.

aggressor, to be an *harzuka*.

agitate, tr. v., see **shake**.

ago, adv. *tun, tun da*, e.g. this was written twelve days a. *kwana sha biyu tun da wannan an rubuta shi*; long a. *da, lokachin da, tun dadewa, da wuri, dauri, tuntuni*. See **age** 2.

agree, v. *gama, gamu, yarda, yarje, yin baki daya, sadu, jito, jeto, damre magana*; my friend and I a. exactly *da ni da abokina mu ne tangas*; he agreed with you *ya yarda ma ka*; agreed to *yardadde*.

agreeable, adj. 1. (pleasant) *da dadi, dadi, daidai, dede*.

2. (willing), e.g. if you are a. *in (or idan) ka yarda, in ka (or kana) so*.

agreement, n. *sulhu, sulfu, sulba**, *yardi, yarji*; a trade a. *sallama*; to make an a., see **agree**; a. to work for a certain sum *sharadi*.

ague, n., see **fever**.

ahead, adv. *gaba*.

aid, tr. v. *taya, yin taimako, tanya, tanyo, koro sauƙi*.

aid, n. *taimako, taimakawa, sauƙi*; (a helper) *mai-taimako*.

ail, v., e.g. what ails you? *mi ya same ka?*

ailment, n., see **sickness**.

aim, (point aimed at) *bara*; to aim at, *yin bara, barata, barache, bartaka, nuna, nuno*.

aimless, a. toil *aikin banza*.

ainhum, n., i.e. a disease of the little toe, *hambudiga, mage-duwa*; cf. also *krudumbiya* a disease which may affect all the toes.

air, n. *iska, hiska*; *shan iska* is the Hausa idiom for to take a walk, e.g. let us take a walk to enjoy the air *mu yi yawo garin shan iska*.

air, v. *ƙeƙashe*, see **to dry**.

ajar, to put a door a. *saya ƙofa*.

akimbo, put your arms a. *chi dununka da hannu*.

alarm, to *yin ruba*, see **frighten**.

alarm, n. *yagatu (K.)*.

alas, interj. *kaito, (S.) kaicho, (K.) kaitaro, wai, wai niya, tir, ashsha*.

albino, n. *zabiya*.

alien, n. *barc**; see also **stranger**.

alienate, to a. a person *kan-gara da*.

alight, intr. v. *sabka, safka, sapka, sauka, soka, sabki, sapki, shida, shide, jida*.

alike, adj. *daidai, suwa-suwa*,

tangam, tangas, sakke (S.); they are all a. *duka daya ne, suparsu* (or *sifassu*) *daya*, or *sun yi tangam da juna*.

alive, adj. *da rai*; to keep a. *raya*, e.g. may God preserve us a. *Allah shi raya mu*.

all, adj. *duka, duk, dukanta, jama'a*; a. together *tarsashi, tararre*, fem. *tararra*, pl. *tararru*; a. of you *dukanku, tarinku*; a. men *mutane duka* or *dukan mutane*; all (i.e. total) *dokachi*; all (i.e. everything) *dokachin komi*.

Allah, by *wallah, wallahi*

allay, tr. v. *futas da, kwantas da*.

allegory, n. *misali, michali**, *almara*.

alliance, n. *gāya*.

alligator, n. *kāda, kādo*, pl. *kā-dōdi, kaduna*, or *kadunduna*.

allow, tr. v. *bari, bar, yarda*; e.g. let me depart *bar ni in tafi*, if you a. we will do so *in ka yarda za mu yi hāka*, a. me *ba ni yarji*.

alloy, n. *hañchi*; unalloyed *babu hañchi, safi*.

allure, tr. v. *rude*.

almighty, adj. *mai-iko da kowa, mai-iyawa*.

almond, n. *chanza**.

almost, adv. *kūsa*; it is a. finished *ya yi kūsan kare* or *ya kūsa karewa*.

alms, n. *sadaka, zakka, kurdin gurasu, kono** (K.), alms-giving, n. *sadaka*.

aloe, (*Aloe zebrina*) *zabo*.

alone, adv. *kaḍai, kawai, abin* followed by a personal pronoun, thus, he a. *abinshi*, I a. *ni ḍayana* or *ni kaḍai*, leave him a. *bar shi ḍayansa*; they a. *ḍayansu*; a state of being a. *kadaichi*, to be left a. *waiwai*.

alongside, *daura, dabara, dabra*, or followed by *da* as a prep., e.g. they stood side by side *su tsaya daura da juna*.

aloof, to keep a. from *nesanchi, nisanchi*.

aloofness, *nisanta*.

alphabet, n. *abajada*, letter of the a. *harafi*, pl. *haruffa*.

already, adv. *na dā, dāzu, wuri, dāuri, tun da wuri*; he is gone a. *ya rīgaya ya tafi*.

also, adv. *kuwa, kau* (S.), *kawa* (S.); usually placed after that which it connects; *haryo**, *har ya*.

alter, v. 1. tr. *sake, saki, sauya, musaya*.

2. intr. *sauya*.

altercation, *haya-haya, har-gowa, hayaniya, tankiya*.

altered, particip. adj. *sauyaye*, fem. *sauyayya*, pl. *sauyayyu*.

although, adv. *ko, ko da*.

altogether, adv. *bāki ɗaya*, cf. *fau*, *fofo**, also *faye* and *fi*.

always, adv. *koyaushe*, *kul-yaushē*, *tutur*, *tutul*, *kullum*, *da kullum*, *yini**, *chikin ko-wanne yayi**, *judu**, to continue a. *tuturta*.

am, v., see **be**.

Amaranthus (native spinach), *alayafu*, *zakīn banza*.

amazed, to be *yin mamaki*, *jin mamaki*, *jin damuwa*.

amble, n., of a horse *tākama*; a horse which ambles *doki mai-tākama*.

ambuscade, n., see **seq.**

ambush, n. *kwanto*, *ḡago*, *fako*, *maraya*; to set an a. *yin fako*; to lie in a. *lāḡe* (S.), *raḡe* (K), place of or for an a. *mafaka*.

amen, *amin**.

amidst, prep. *tsāka*, *tsākan*, *tsākanin*.

amount, large, n. *chushe*; see **quantity**.

amulet, *talili*, see **charm**.

amuse, tr. v. *bada* (or *sa*) *murna*.

ancestor, n. *kāka*; ancestors *kakanni*.

ancestry, see under **ba**.

and, conj. *da*, *wa**.

angel, n. *malaika*, pl. *malaiku*.

anger, n. *fushi* pronounced *fhushi*, *haushi*, *ḡanḡanchi*,

kuna, *takaichi*, *zauta*, *zafin rai*, *bijira* (S.), *ḡumchin zu-chiya*.

angle, n. *kusuruwa*.

angry, to be, v. *yin fushi*, *fusata*, *yin tsiwa*; to be a. with *harzuka ga*, *hasāla ga*, *chichika*, *yin chichika*, *takaita*, *jin takaichi*; he feels a. *yana jin haushi*.

angry, adj. *da fushi*; one who is a. *mai-fushi*.

anguish, n. *azaba*, *zogi*.

angular, *mai-kusuruwa*.

animal, n. *bīsā*, pl. *bīsashe* or *bisaje*, *dabba*; domestic animals *bisashen ḡida*, wild animals *bisashen daji*, *abin daji* or *naman daji*, pl. *namun daji*.

animosity, n., see **hate**.

ankle, n. *idon ḡafa*, *idon sawu* (or *sau*), pl. *ijīyan sawu*, or *ijiyar sawu*, or *ijiyas sawu*; a. bone *dombubu*, or *dam-bubu*.

announce, tr. v. *gaya*, *fadi*, *labarta*; to a. as a herald does the coming of some one *gabato*.

annoy, tr. v. *dāme*, *dāma*, *fitina*, *hayyāta*, *tayas*, *wahalda*, *wahalshe*, *sa wahala*, *al'ale*; *sawarwara*, *ḡawai-niyasda*, *tozarta*, I am not to be annoyed *bā ni damuwa*.

annoyance, n. *wahala*, *sawarwari*, *takaichi*, see **anger**.

anoint, e.g. with oil or water, tr. v. *shāfa*, *shāfe*, *yin shāfa*.

anointing, n. *shāfa*.

anon, adv. *sai an jima*, *jima kadan*.

another, pron. *wani*, fem. *wata*, pl. *wasu* or *wadansu*; often rendered with *kuma*, e.g. *wani kuma*.

answer, n. *amsa*, *amshe*, *am-sawa*, *jawābi*, *karḥawa*.

answer, v. *amsa*, *yin amsa*, to give an a. *kāda bāki*, *karḥa magana*; I answered him *na mayas masa da magana*.

ant, n. different species are: small stinging a. *tarmani*, *tirmani*, *kwankwambishi*; small black a. *chinnaka* or *chirnaka* or *tuma da gaya*; driver a. *kwalkwasa*, *kwar-kwasa*; the stink a. *gwana*, *gwano*, *geno*; a red traveling a. *makwaiwa*; harvesting a. *tururuwa*; very small black a. *kudafi*, *kudahi* (S.); a red biting a. *kumo*; an a. which feeds on honey *sha-zumami*; small red a. *kiyashi*; white ants (i.e. termites) *zāgo*, fem. *gāra*, *gaira*, pl. *gārani*, *sansamiya*; the white a. in the winged stage *shinge*, *gina*; *gara* is also used of ants

generally; an a. with a large abdomen *maidauro a gato*; a reddish biting ant *ba-fula-tana*.

ant-bear, see **ant-eater**.

ant-eater, the great a. or ant-bear, *dapgi*, *dabgi*, *dubgi*, *daugi*.

antelope. The following are some of the antelopes found in Hausaland. Senegal or red-fronted gazelle, *barewa*, pl. *bareyi*; Dorcas gazelle *farin barewa*; the roan a. (*Hippotragus equinus*) *gwan-ki*, *gwamki* (S.); the W. African hartebeeste *kanki*, pl. *kanoki*; oryx *mariri*, *marili*; Buffon's red cob a. *mareya*; Addra or red-necked gazelle *mai-farin gindi*; a Senegal hartebeeste (*Damaliscus korrigum*) *dāri*; the oribi a. *batsiya*; the red-flanked duiker *makurna*; the 'crowned duiker' *gada*; klipspringer *gadar dutsi*; the water buck (*Cobus defassus unctuosus*) *gwambaza*, *gwan-zama*, *ambache*, *dodoka*; reed buck *kwantarafi*, *ḡaji*; bush buck *mazo*; a. leucoryx *wal-waji*; an old solitary a. *kishi-mi*; see also *matso*, *ḡaranga-goda*.

ant-hill, n. *suri*, pl. *suwura*,

surā, jīḥa, jūḥa; kunkū-wa.

anticipate, v. *tsaitse*, e.g. I anticipated him *na tsaitse shi; wada**.

anticipation, *zāto*.

antimony, n. *kwalli, tōzali*; small skin bottle for holding a. *tandun tōzali, gidan kwalli*; a stick used for applying a. *mashiyi, masayi*.

anus, *diwa, tsuli, tsuliya, kar-kashi*, shakira, munta, muriya*.

anvil, n. *mākēra*.

anxiety, n. *machiyata, mata-mache, mamābi*.

any, adj. *kowanne*, fem. *kowache*, pl. *kowāḍanne*.

anyhow, indef. pronl. adv. *ko kaka*.

anyone, indef. pron. *kowa, kowanene*, fem. *kowa, kowacheche*.

anything, indef. pron. *komi, kome*; not a., nothing *babu komi, ba komi*.

anywhere, indef. pronl. adv. *koīna*.

apart from, adv. *banda, bamda, dabam dabam*.

apartment, n. (room) *ḍaki*, pl. *ḍakuna*.

apex (of house, etc.), *kan ḍaki*.

apostatize (from Islam), *rin-da, ridda*.

apparatus, n. *kaya*, pl. *kaya-yeki*, or *kayaryeki*.

appear, intr. v. *bayāna, bai-yāna, gwadu*.

appearance, n. *kāma*, pl. *kāmā-nu*, or *kamannu* (S.), *halamu*, wato*, watau**.

appease, tr. v. *lallashi, lillashi, sāda*.

appetite, n. *kwaḍai*, kwaḍayi**.

apple, Akee a. *alele*; balsam a. *garafuni*; wild custard a. *gwandar daji*; hairy thorn a. *zakami*; Dead Sea or Sodom a. *tumfafiya*.

appoint, tr. v. (to order, used of God) *ḡadarta*; (to select for an office) *zaḡa, zaḡe*; appointed *zaḡaḡḡe*, fem. *zaḡaḡḡa*, pl. *zaḡaḡḡu*.

apportion, to *yin fasali*.

approach, intr. v. *nache, yin kūsa, doshi, dosa*, see **near**.

approval, sale on *chinikin shawara*.

approve of, v. *yardā*; approved of, adj. *yardadde*, fem. *yardadda*, pl. *yardaddu, tābatache*, fem. *tābatachiya*, e.g. *magana tābatachiya* approved, i.e. true words; he approves o. *hankali ya kwan-ta da*.

apricot, a tree with fruit like a wild a., n. *tsaḍa**; see **plum**.

apron, n. *bante, banche*, pl.

bantuna, *ḵudu*; a woman's a. *darazan*.

Arab, n. *ba-ture*, pl. *turawa*; an A. *ba-Larabe*, pl. *Lara-bawa*; the Arabic language *Arabiyya*, *larabchi*.

arch, (used in building) *kafo-fin guga* (S.), *masharuwa**.

arched, an arched roof *dam-ren-guga*, *ḍauren-guga*, *ma-sha-ruwa**.

are, v. *ne*, *che*, *ke*; phr. there a. *ina*, *akwai*; there a. to me, i.e. I have *sun yi ma ni*, *a yi ma ni*; there a. many *ina da su dayawa*.

argument, *jiyeya**, *jiyaiyya**.

aright, to direct a. *daidaṛta*.

arise, intr. v. *falka*, *tashi*, *taso*, *tsira*, *tsire*, *tsiro*, or *chira*, *chire*, *chiro*.

arithmetic, *hisabi* (S.).

arm, n. 1. (from the wrist to the elbow) *damchi*, *damtse*, pl. *damasa*; the forearm *gāḇa*; to hold up at arm's length *dāga*; a man with a bent a. *mai-laushi*, *mai-lauje*, *mai-ḵwarda*.

2. arm (i.e. weapon), see **arms**.

armhole, n. *hamata*, pl. *hamatu*, *hamatta*, *hamutta*.

armlet, n. gen. *ḵwandage*, a. made of metal *ḵarafa*; a. made of natron *ḵārau*, *ḵāro*,

pl. *ḵaurawa*, *ungurnu*; a. made of plaited grass, worn by children *darambuwa*; a. made of leather and wood *dāga*.

armour, n. chain or iron a. *sulke*, *saba*; a horseman's a. *kumakumi*.

armpit, n. *hamata*, pl. *hamatu*, *hamatta*, or *hamutta*.

arms, coll. (weapons, etc.) *makami*; battle a. *kayan dāga*, *kayan yaḵi*.

army, *dako* (S.); the centre of an a. *uwar yaḵi*.

around, adv. *kewaye*, *gewaye*, prep. *kewayen*, *gewayen*.

arouse, tr. v. *tada*, *tashe*, *tayas*, *tayas da*, *falkad da*.

arrange, tr. v. *gyara*; to a. the hair (i.e. to comb or dress the hair) *gyarta*, *shata*, *shache*.

arranged, adj. *shiriyayye*, fem. *shiriyayya*, pl. *shiriyayyu*; *gyartache**.

arrangement, (contract) *wahabi*, *sharaḍi*.

arrive at, v. *isa*, *iso*, *sadu*.

arrogance, n. *foma*, *homa*.

arrogant, n. one who is a. *mai-foma*, pl. *masu-foma*, *mai-homa*, pl. *masu-homa*.

arrow, n. *kibiya*, pl. *kibau*, *kulere*, *gora*, pl. *gororo*, or *gorina*; bow and arrows

bakan kibiya; a. head *fasa*, *pāsa*; a. projecting from quiver *zagiya*; barbs on an a. *kālemu* (K.), a quiver for arrows *kwarin kibiya*; special names of a. poison are *tumia* or *tinia*, *kwankwani*, *sainya**, *tururubi*, *uwar magunguna*, *womagunguna*, *zabgai*, *zabo*, *uwal dafi*, gen. *dafi*; e.g. they (the arrows) are poisoned *sunu da dafi*. Ingredients for making arrow poison are obtained from many different plants. Arrows are made from the reed-like plants, e.g. *kyamro*, *kyamru*, *kyamare*, *sheme*, *gazara*, *sansari*; a. notch *gofi*.

art, n. *gwani*.

article, the definite a. -n, see **the**; the indefinite a., see **a**.

as, adv. *kāma*, *yadda*, *yāda*, *kauda*, *ya**, *yi**; a. before *kāma ta dā* or *kāma na dā*; even a. *kāmar yadda*.

ascend, v. *shirga*, *hawa*, *hau*, constr. with *bisa* or *bisa ga*; e.g. he ascended the hill *ya hau bisa tudu*.

asceticism, *gudun-duniya*, *tsantsani*, *tsintseni*.

Asclepias gigantea, n. *tumfafiya*, pl. *tumfafi*.

ashamed, to be, intr. v. *jīn kumya*, *jīn kunya*.

ashes, n. *toka*, pl. *tokuna*, *habdi* (S.); hot a. *rufushi*, *rubshi*, *habdi* (S.).

aside, e.g. I turn a. from the path *ina ratsewa dāga bisa hanya*; a *baya*, *ga baya**.

ask, v. *roka*, *roko*, *yin tambaya*; one who asks *mai-tambaya*; to a. of or from *roko*, *roka*.

asking, *roko*, continued a., n. *kokanto*.

ass, n. *jāki*, fem. *jāka*, or *jākanya*, pl. *jākai*, or *jākuna*, *āsuwa*; *dan bakuru*, *matuwa*; large male a. *bingi*, a castrated ass *aguru*; diff. species have the foll. names; a. with red body *jimrau*; a. with black mouth *gofa*, red a. *aura*, reddish brown a. *idubar*, tawny a. *oraki* and *dan oraki*; large black a. *jāba*; white a. *mugo*, *shawu* (S.); a spec. of wild a. *shiyaki*; a pad for an ass *akumari*, *leferu*, pl. *leferai*; *lafero*, *laheru*.

assault, n. (as in war) *falmaki*, *farmaki*, *firmaki*.

assemble, v. *gayya*, *gayyata*, *tāra*, intr. *tāru*.

assembled, to be *taru*, particip. *tarare*.

assembly, n. *gayya*, *al'umma*; royal assembly-room *fage*, *dandali*.

assent, v. *kāda kai, gyada kai* ;
assent is very frequently
expr. by *kyau* as in the phr.
da kyau.

assess, to *kimanta, aza ma*.

assimilate, they will not a.
ba su haḍuwa.

assist, tr. v. *taya, tamaya, tai-
maka, taimaki, yin taimako,
yin shalli*.

assistance, n. *tamayi, taimako,
taimakawa, shalli, sauki* ; a.
in war *gudummarwa* ; he
called for a. *ya buga gāyya*.

assurance, *tabbas*.

assure, to a. a person of the
reality of anything *gaskata*
or *gaskanta*.

assured, to be a. of (to feel
sure) *tabbata, tābatta, tāb-
bacha*, cf. seq.

assuredly, adv. *da gaskiya,
babu shakka, lābudda, babu
wawa, faufau* ; he is a. there
ya tabbata nan ; he is a. a
heathen *ko tabbata kafiri ne*.

asthma, n. *fuka*, see **breath**.

astonished, to be, v. *jin da-
muwa, jin mamaki, yin ma-
maki*.

astonishment, n. *damuwa*,
exclamations expressing as-
tonishment *haba, gāsara**.

astray, to go *bakita* (S.).

astrigent medicine, n. *ma-
gani mai-kama chiki*.

astrologer, to act as an *zūba
tamrarai*.

at, prep. a, e.g. *a wuri chan* at
that place ; often prefixed to
gare, chikin and *bisa* ; *ga*
(*gare* with pronouns), e.g. *ga
gida* at home ; *dāga*, e.g. *shi
ne dāga nan* he is at that spot,
i.e. he is there ; *gun**, e.g.
gun chan = *a wuri chan*.

atmosphere, n. *duniya*.

attack, n. *farmaki, falmaki,
firmaki* ; a feint or pretended
a. *zanzoma*.

attack, to *girsu, girshe, mama,
mami*.

attain, to a. to same, *samu, kai*.

attempt, v. *yin koḳari, tāga*.

attempt, n. *koḳari*.

attend, to a. to (to look care-
fully into) *lura* ; to listen to
ji, saurara, daddāra ; see
attention (2).

attendant, n., an a. on one sick
majinyata ; the attendants
of a king *fadawa*.

attention, 1. n. (serious
thought) *hankula, hankali* ;
ruwa, e.g. *it is no matter worth
my a. ba or babu ruwana*.

2. to pay a. to *tuna*,
constr. with *da, maida him-
ma* ; to give a. to what is
said *ji, saurara* ; give a. with
your ears (incline your ears
to) *ka kakartsa kunnūwa*.

attentively, to look at a. *tso-kachi*.

attest, v. *shaida*, *yin shaida*, *kai shaida*.

attested, particip. adj. *shaidadde*, fem. *shaidadda*, pl. *shaidaddu*.

auction, *gwanjo**.

auger-beetle, *gunda*, *gumda*.

augment, tr. and intr. v. *dāda*.

aunt, n. *gwaggwo*, a. on the mother's side *rafaniya*.

authority, n. *iko*, pl. *ikoki*, *ikon-taka*, *alfarma**, a person in a. *mahakumchi*, *mahukumchi*.

avarice, n. *zargi*, *zalimi*, *zalum*, *rowa*, *rowwa*, *māda*, *madda*.

avaricious, adj. *mairowa*, *da māda*.

avaricious, to be *yin zalumchi*.

avenge, tr. v. *rāma*, *sāka*.

avenger, *mai-rama*.

average (adj.), *tsāka-tsāka*, *madaidaichi*, pl. *madaidaita*.

avoid, v. *kalmāsa*, *kalmashe*, *baudi*, *waske*, *zāge*, cf. a thing to be avoided *abokin kiyeye*.

avoidance, i.e. of a missile, etc. *gochiya*, *guchiya*, *waskiya*.

await, to wait for one *jira*, *jirache*, *jinkirta*.

awake, intr. v. *farka*, *falka*; awaking *falkawa*; a start or exclamation on awaking *firgigi**.

awaken, to *tāsad da*, *falkad da*.
away, to get a. (escape) *fichi*, *fiche*.

away, adv. phr. a. with him *yi da shi*.

awkward, *shallali*.

axe, n. *gatari*; a. for cutting stones *dundurusu*; a. for cutting grass *gizago*, *gisago*; a. with broad blade *barandami*, *tsitaka*; battle a. *gāfiya*, *gita* (K.), *walwada*, *warwada*; the point of an a. head which projects through the handle *suga* (S.).

axe-handle, n. *ḡota* (K.), *ḡota*.

babbling, n. *rawatsa*.

baboon, n. *bika*, pl. *bikoka*, *gogo*, *yimki* (K.).

baby, n. *jarīri*, *jarīli*, *yarīli*, *jinjiri*.

bachelor, n. *gwabro*, *gwauro*, *gauro*, *gwamro*, *balaguro**; *namiji da shara*, lit. one who has to sweep his own dwelling.

back, n. *baya*, *janfi**, hence *bada janfi* to put to flight; to turn the b. *bada baya*; phr. on the b. *rigingine*, on the b. of *reran*; to be hollow backed *gantsarwa*.

back, e.g. to come b. *komo*; to go b. *koma*; to move b., intr. v. *gusa*, *gulgusa*, *gurgusa*.

backbite, tr. v. *chim baya*.

backbiting, *tsēgumi*, *tsogumi*.

backbone, n. *tsatso*, *tsotso*, *ka-shin tsatso*.

backward, adv. (on the back) *rigingine*.

backwards, adv. *baibai*, e.g. they walked b. *su ka tafi baibai*.

bad, adj. *mugu*, fem. *mugunya*, pl. *miyāgu*; *mamuna*, *mum-muna**; used of corn *tsadari*; b. man *dan duniya*; the expr. *farikobaki* often = good or bad.

bad, to go b. *rūba*, *riḥa*, as meat or fruit; to render b., to spoil *rubachi*.

badger, n. *takas*.

badness, n. *mugunta*.

baft, grey b. *akoko*; see **cloth**.

bag, n., a small b. *aljifi*, *aljifu*, pl. *aljifaye* or *aljifai*;

b. made of grass with narrow opening *ashasha*; b. for cowries *birgami*, *burgami*, *burgame* (S.); woman's b.

made of grass *burma*, *burima*; small b. for carrying salt *chukurfa*;

b. of feminine luggage *fago** or *pago**; leathern b. for camels, etc.

gurara; large skin b. for cowries *jikka*, pl. *jikkuna*, or

jikkoki, *kyankyandi*; b. holding 20,000 cowries *kwaroro*;

very small b. *rarita*, *lalita**;

long, narrow salt-b. *lange*; a leathern pouch used by barbers etc. *zabira*; skin b. or bottle *salka*, pl. *salkuna*; small leathern or grass b. *sarita*; large b. for holding rice *sūbolo*, *saulo*; a small leathern b. *kumaro*, *komaro*, *tānwara* (K.); a large leathern b. *māla*, pl. *malalaki*; a b. made from *tukuruwa* leaves *tādāli*; leathern narrow-mouthed b. *sulkumi* (S.), *surkumi* (K.); large skin b. *taiki*, pl. *taika*, *tayukka*, or *taikuna*, *buhu* (Z.); small goat-skin water-b. *tandawara*; small provision-b. *tanwara*; leathern bag closed by two strings pulled in opposite directions *alagwami*; a money-b. made of skin or cloth *tsaletā*, *salita*.

baggage, n. *kaya*, pl. *kayayeki*; see **goods**.

bail, see **surety**.

bake, tr. v. *tuya*, *toya*, *gāsa*, the latter also spec. used of baking bread, e.g. *ya gāsa gurasa*; baked (i.e. fully baked = the Engl. colloquial 'done') *ninanne* (S.), *nunanne* (K.), pl. *nenannu* or *nunannu*; (cooked) *toyayye*, *tuyayye*.

bakemeat, *tuya*, pl. *toye-toye*.

balance, n. a pair of scales
maauna, maauni, mazani,
mizani; abin awo.

balance, v., to b. a load on the
head *digirgire.*

Balanites aegyptiaca, n.
aduwa.

bald, adj. *mai-kora, mai-saiḱo,*
mai-sanḱo, mai-kwambe.

baldness, n. *kora, saiḱo (S.),*
sanḱo (K.), kundumi, kun-
dimi, kundumin kai; cf. prec.

bale, of goods *fugūma, hu-*
guma; see load.

ball, n. *makodi**, *kwālo, mul-*
mule; a small b. ḁan kodī;
b. or brick made of mud
tubali; b. of the eye kwayan
ido; (bullet) harsa, harsashi;
to roll into a b. *dunḱula,*
ḱudundune.

ballad, n. *waka.*

bamboo, a sort of, n. *gora,*
kwangi.*

banana, n. the b. tree, or fruit
ayaba.

band, n. 1. (company or gather-
ing) *taro or taru, pl. tarori.*

2. (strip for binding) cf.
seq., a leathern band worn
round the neck *goli (S.).*

bandage of any kind, n. *ra-*
wani, pl. rawunna.

bandit, n. *mai-fashe, pl. masu-*
fashe.

bandy-legged, adj. *gwami,*

mai-gwami, chassa (K.), tar-
koshi (S.).

bang, an exclamation *pom, pam.*

bangle, for wrist *ḱārau, ḱār-*
ḱārau, munduwa, manduwa,
pl. *mundaye, mandaye.*

bank, n. (= edge or margin)
bāki, gāḁa, gachi; b. of a
river *gefe, bākin ruwa, gachi,*
gāḁa, refe.

banner, n., see **flag.**

baobab (*Adansonia digitata*),
n. *kuka, pl. kukoki; fruit of*
the b. tree *ḱwame (S.).*

bar, n. (a rod or stick of wood,
iron, etc.) *sanda, pl. sanduna;*
a b. of iron *sanda ta ḱarife;*
b. used to close a doorway
gagara-bado.

barbarians, n. 1. (of men in a
rude, uncivilised state) *baibai,*
baibaya, baibayi, or baubawa
(S.).

2. (cruel) *da mūni.*

barbarity, n. (cruelty) *mūni.*

barbarous, see **barbarians.**

barber, n. *wanzami, pl. wan-*
zamu, wanzamai; a hair-
dresser is *mai-kitso.*

barbs, on an arrow *ḱālemu (K.),*
kun-nuwan kibiya.

bare, see **naked.**

bareness, n. *wofi.*

bargain, n. (bargaining) *chini-*
ki, tāyi; a discussion before
making a b. *alwāshi; the*

conclusion of a b. *yardaje-niya*; to haggle over a b. *yin chiniki*; to make an offer in bargaining, see seq.; a b. (cheap) *da araha, da arha*; into the b. (= besides, as well) *banda wannan*.

bargain, v. *tāya, tayi, yin tayi, yin chiniki*.

bark, n. (of a tree) *fāta, pāta, ḡawon itache*.

bark, tr. v. (to strip off b.) *kware, kwari*.

bark, intr. v. (of dogs, etc.) *yin hafshi, yin hapshi, yin habshi, yin haushi, yage*.

barking, n. (of dogs, etc.) *hafshi, habshi, haushi*.

barley, n. *sha'air*.

barn, n. *rumbu, rafoniya, rufogo*.

barrel of a gun, n. *baki*; a double-barrelled gun *bindiga mai-baki biyu*.

barren, adj. (used of the female sex) *karara, bakarariya, matauriya*; (used of a sheep or goat which has not had young) *kazgainya*; a b., or fallow, field *sabra, sabara, saura, tsandauri*.

barrenness, n. (of woman, etc.) *tauriya, rashin haifuwa*.

barricade, n. *kāgara, kēgaruwa*, pl. *kāgaru, gagarabado*.

barrier, n. *kāfi*.

barter, n. *chiniki, sārafi, tāyi, furfure, sārafa, rangama*.

barter, to *sārafa, yin chiniki, tāya, yin tāyi*; see **bargain**.

base, adj. (of low worth) *banza*.

base, n. 1. (lowest part or bottom of anything) *kalkashi, karkashi*.

2. (= support or foundation of anything) *gutsu*, or *guzu**, which is used physically and also figuratively; *gindi, tushe*.

bashful, adj., see seq.

bashfulness, n. *kumya* or *kunya*; to feel bashful *jin kumya*, e.g. when asking you for this, I felt bashful *da na roḡe ka wannan na ji kumya*.

basil, wild b. *daiḡoya* (K.), *ḡoḡoya* (S.).

basin, n. *kwachiya, gwangwan*, a metal b. *dāro*.

basket, n., a large b. for salt etc. *adila* or *adilak kaya*; large b. or pannier made of grass *gufa, gufata, kantalma*; a b. made of palm fibre *lefe*; a small grass b. used in making bread *marari*; a large grass b. *sanfo* or *samfo*, pl. *sanfuna*; *kwando*; a b. used as a strainer *kindi*, pl. *kindodi, marari*; a small b. used by women *kwatashi*,

taskira, tazkira; a b. used in fishing *suru*; a b. full of corn *totsiya*. See under **bag**.

bastard, adj. *shēge*, fem. *shēgiya*, pl. *shēgu*, *ḍan farka*, *ḍan nema*.

bat, n. *tattapara, birbiri, rugi, tsabilbila, yabirbira, kanen jemāge*; a large-sized fruit b. *jemāge*.

bathe, to *kurma, kuruma*.

bathing, *kurme*.

battle, n. *fama, faḍa, gāba, yaḳi*, the latter is also the proper word for **war**, q.v.; b.-field *dāga*.

battle, to draw up in line of b. *ja dāga*.

battlefield, n. *kangan fada*.

bawl, n. *yin kuka, yin ufu*.

bdellium, African b. *dashi*.

be, v. 1. *ne* with masc. subject, *che* with fem. subj., *ke* with either; they may follow the subj. but are often found at the end of their clause; e.g. he is truthful *shi mutum mai-gaskiya ne*; she is very beautiful *ita kyakkyawa che*; both of them are old *su biyu tsofi su ke*; the above chiefly express the simple copula, but see below (3).

2. *kashi, kashe, kasanche*, used where emphasis is laid on the fact or continuance

of existence; they are frequently used in written, but seldom in colloquial Hausa.

3. *akwai* (sometimes pronounced *akwoi*), implying real existence, there is, there are, there was, there were, e.g. are there elephants in this town? *akwai giwaye a garinga?* ans. there are *akwai*: *ke* is often found with *nan* in this sense, e.g. there was a certain jerboa *wani kurege ke nan = akwai wani kurege*.

4. *na* (masc.), *ta* (fem.), are sometimes used in place of the substantive verb, e.g. the men are doing so *mutane na yin hāka*, the horses are running away *dawaki na gudu*; for this use of *na* see H. Dict. I. p. 273.

bead, n., beads *chasbi, chasba-ha*; a large white b. in a set of black *alāma*, pl. *alamomi*; round blue b. *galan kumburi*; a large white seed used as a b. *gimba*, pl. *gimbai*; a large (Phoenician) b. *dilari*; a small red b. *rigigi*; a red coral b. *bajumba*; a blue cylindrical b. worn by women *samfalwa*; red beads *dimbuji* *zufa, dumbaji, jinin kafiri*; beads made from black seeds

kantururuwa ; necklace of beads *kutofi*; beads worn round the neck by women *tagode* ; string of beads worn round loins *kwatana* ; pearls or red beads *murjan, murjani*; large red b. *murjanin tudu, rigigi* (S.), *rikiki*; prayer beads *tasbi*, pl. *tasbai*; a woman's girdle of beads *kwatana, tsäkuwa*.

bead-tree, *kurnan nasara*.

beak, n. *qoto, bakin tsuntsuwa, gebe**.

beam, n., b. above door *almanäni* ; a cross b. *kuba* ; b. or post stuck in the ground to support a roof *dirka, jigo*, pl. *jiguna* ; b. for pumping water *jigo, kutära*.

beam, of light *giraza, girazal rana*.

bean, n. *wake*, pl. *wakoki* or *wakaikai* ; red edible b. *tsarariya, tsurariya* (K.), *kwama* (S.) ; small b. *komo* ; mahogany b. *kawo* ; sword b. *barankachi* ; yam b. *giri giri* ; beans ground up and cooked in water *tubäni, tabäni, tubuni* ; a species of large b. *zaqo*.

bear, 1. (to carry) *kai, shide*, constr. with *da*.

2. (to produce their kind, of animals, trees, plants, etc.) *haifa, haife* ; to b. in the ear as corn *goyo*.

3. (to endure) *jimri*, (to b. with one) *jimrache*.

beard, n. *geme* (S.) ; *gemu* (K.), pl. *gema*, or *gyamma* (S.), *gyammai* (K.) ; b. of goat *rairo, rero*.

bearded, a b. man *mai-geme*, pl. *masu-geme*.

beardless, adj. *shagiri*, pl. *shagirai*.

beast, n. *bisa*, pl. *bisashé* or *bisaje, däbba, däbbo*, pl. *dab-buna* or *dabbobi* ; wild b. *naman daji, firdi** ; wild beasts *bisashen daji, namun daji*.

beat, tr. v. 1. *buga, doke, duka, dirka*, the last is sometimes written *tsirka, bada käshi*.

2. to b. down, as earth etc. *taka, taki, tsaga, tsatstsaga, dāḡe*.

3. to b. or tread grain *däka*, intensive form *dä-däka, swāḡa* (S.), *surfe, taki, tingama*.

4. to b. a drum *yin wargi* ; see **drum**.

5. to b. in war, intr. *yin nasara*, trans. *chi*.

6. to b. in a game *chi*, e.g. *na chi ka* I have beaten you.

beaten, part. adj. in sense of prec. 3. *takakke*, fem. *takakka*, pl. *takakku*.

beating, n. 1. *tsirka*, *dirka* ; see **beat**.

2. *kāshi*, (a defeat in war) *artai*.

3. b. of wings *tāfi* (K.), *tabi* (S.).

beautiful, adj. *da kyau*, *kyau*, *mai-kyau*, *kyaukyauwa*, *kekya-wa*, *kyakkyawa*.

beauty, n. 1. of persons and things *kyawo* or *kyau*.

2. of dress ornaments etc. *ādo*, *armashi*.

because, conj. *don*, *chewa**, *domin chewa**, *gama*, *zama* (S.); *chewa* and *domin chewa* are used in written, but not in colloquial Hausa.

because of, prep. *domin*, *don*, *sābada* or *sabad da*, *sāboda**, *sābo* (K.), *gāma*, *sabili da*, *zama* (S.); b. of me *domina*, b. of him *dominsa*.

beckon, v., to b. with the head (in token of assent) *gyada kai*; to b. or shake the head (in token of denial) *kāda kai*; to b. with the hand *yafuche*, *yafuto*.

beckoning, (with the hand) *yafuchi*.

become, intr. v. (to come to be) *zāma*, *zam* (S.), *samma**, *kawa**, *sawoya*.

become, intr. v. (to befit, to be proper) *kāmata*, *kāmache*.

becoming, adj. (lawful, ceremonially right) *halal*, *halas* or *halata*, *daidai*; it is b. *ya yi daidai*.

bed, n. *gādo*, pl. *gādaje* or *gādashi*, *karaga**; to go to b., v. *kwanta*; a b. of mud *dakali*, *tugufa*; space under a b. in which a fire can be put *tsāriya*, *tsāri*.

bed-clothes, coll. n. *mayāfi*.

bee, n. *ḡudan zūma* or *ḡudan zummuwa*, pl. *ḡudashenzūma*; the mosquito b. or stingless b. *gāla*, *galla*, *rakuwa*; young of b. *ḡudajen zummuwa*; small bees *sofofuwa*; ground bees *ganya*.

bee-eater, (bird) *tsuntsun ha-yaki*, *tsiriyar kogi*.

beef, n. *naman sa*, *naman shanu*.

beehive, n. *ainya*, *amya* (K.), *hamya*, *butumi*, pl. *butuma*, *burtumi* (S.), *gidan zummuwa*.

beeswax, n. *dankon zummuwa*, *kakin zummuwa*.

beetle, n., spec. large, black, long-legged b. *gurgunguma*, *ḡurgunguma*, *ḡurgunguma*, *sāri*; the 'plush b.' or 'velvet mite' *ḡaramuski* or *mulufi**; burying b. or dung b. *buzuzu*; click b. *makeri*; blister b. *han-gara*; auger b. or wood borer *kichichiya*, *ḡunḡa*; longicorn

b. or leaf-cutting b. *mage-duwa*; tiger b. (larva) *furau*; water b. *kumbudiya* (S.), *kumbudewa* (K.).

befall, intr. v. *samu*, *same*, *sama*, *sami*; it befell him *ya same shi*.

befit, intr. v. *kāmata*, *kāmache*.

before, adv. of time *da fari*, *tukun* or *tukuna*, *na dā*, *kaman na dā* or *kamandā*, *wuri*, *da wuri* or *dauri*, *dazu*; in former time *lokachin dā*; see **ever**.

before, conjunctive adv. *gāba*, *kāfin*, b. that *kani**, *kamin*, *kana*, *kan da*, *kan**, e.g. finish this b. (that) you do that *ƙare wannan kana ka yi wanchan*; *tun* and *tun da* are employed with negative clauses, e.g. b. (that) he died he composed a book *tun ba ya mutu ba ya yi wani litaɗi*; to go b. *gabāta*, *gabāche*, *riɗaya*, he was at the farm b. her *ya riɗa ta gona*.

befriend, tr. v., see **assist**.

beg, v. 1. (to entreat, supplicate) *roka*, *yin roko*, *biko*.

2. (to ask a thing of, as alms) *bāra*, *yin bāra*, *roko*; I b. pardon *gafara ma ni* (or *mini*); to b. for help *zukaɗa**.

beget, tr. v. (of the male) *haife*, *yin da*.

beggar, n. *mai-bāra*, *mai-roko*, *marok**, fem. *marokiya*, *al-*

majiri, fem. *almajira*, pl. *almajirai*, *madāha*, *mauro*, *gardi**; spec. an idle b. *mai-kasala*, a b. on the road *masarchi*, a b. who sings a great man's praises *ma'aba*, one who lives by begging food *mai-kwaraka*.

beggar, to wander alone as a b., intr. v. *kasala**.

begging, n. *marokachi*, *roko*.

begin, v. *fāra*, *yin fāra*, *dora*, *soma* (K.); to b. work *kāma aiki*, *farma**; it cannot be begun *ba shi somuwa*.

beginner, a (i.e. learner) *bami*.

beginning, participial n. *fara-wa*, *furko*, *ta-furko*, *somi*, *masomi*, *mafāri*; from the b. of the world *dāga mafarin duniya*.

beguile, tr. v. *ruɗe*; see **deceive**.

behave, intr. v. (to turn out, prove) *zama*, e.g. *na zama da hankali* I shall b. wisely; *maida**.

behaviour, n. (character, conduct) *hali*.

behead, tr. v. *yanke*, *ɗebe kai*.

behind, adv. *baya*, *a baya*, *dāga baya*; that which is b. *abin baya*.

behind, prep. *baya*, *baya ya*, with suff. prons. *gare*, e.g. b. them *baya gare su*.

behold, v. *duba, dubo, gani, tsokachi, yin kallo*, exclam. phr. b. *duba!* b. him or it *ga shi!* b. her or it *ga ta!*

behove, to *kāmachē, kāmata*.

belabour, tr. v. *buga*; see **beat**.

belated, to be, i.e. to be late in arriving *yin yauchin zakurwa, makara*.

belch, intr. v. *gyatsa, gyasa, gyashi* (S.).

belief, n. 1. (creed) *addini, imanchi*.

2. (credence) *ban gaskiya*.

believe, v., to b. a fact *gaskata, gaskanta*, to b. a person *bada gaskiya, yin gaskiya* constr. with prep. *ga*; to b. in, esp. to b. in God, *kasada*; I do not b. it *ban karḡa ba*.

believed in, particip. adj. *yardadde*, fem. *yardadda*, pl. *yardaddu*.

believer, n. *mumini*, fem. *mumina*, pl. *muminnai*.

bell, n., small b. attached to horse *gwarje, gwalje, gurje*; small bells on horses' heads *chikasaura, chikasabra, chakasabra, chikasaura*; bells attached to goats etc. *kārau-rawa* or *kararawa*.

bellow, intr. v. *ruri, yin bu*.

bellowing, n. *bu*.

bellows, n. *mafuri, mafurin wuta, zigazigai, zugazugi*; a

man who blows b. *mazigi*; the stick of the b. *maziga*.

belly, n. *kundu*; lower part of b. *māra, chiki*.

belong, intr. v. 1. (to be the property of) *na*, fem. *ta* with the forms of the v. to be, e.g. this book belongs to Hassan *litafin nan na Hasan ne*, the horses b. to the king *dawaki na sariki ne*, that stick belongs to this man *sanda chan ta mutumennan che*, it belongs to me *nawa ne* or *ni ke da shi*.

2. (to be native of) e.g. he belongs to Kano *shi ḡan Kano ne*.

belongings, n. (property) *dukiya*, and in a still more general sense *abubuwa*.

beloved, n. *masoyi*, fem. *masoya*, pl. *masoyu, lele* or *na-lele**; a thing b. *abin kamna*.

below, 1. adv. a *ḡasa, a ḡas, baya**.

2. prep. *kalkashin* (S.), *karkashin* (K.).

belt, n. *abin ḡamre, maḡamre, ḡamāra*, pl. *ḡamāru*; b. for sword *hamila*; see **girdle**.

bench, n. *kujera, kushera*, pl. *kujeru*.

bend, tr. v. *kalmāsa, kalmisa* (S.), *kalmashe, karkāta, gusda, kantara, sunkwiyad da, tankosa, tankwasa, tankware*,

jirga, lauya; spec. to b. the head *kāda kai, kanḡanda kai, sadakai, karkātā* or *kakartsa** with or without *kunne* (ear) to b. down (the ear) in order to attend to what is said; intr. *duḡad da, jirge, kantare, lanḡwashe, lanḡwasa, sunkwiya, duḡa*; see **bent**.

bending, n. *duḡawa, laudi*.

beneath, adv. and prep., see below.

beneficial, adj., see seq.

benefit, n. *anfāni*; of b. (beneficial) *da anfāni, mai-anfāni*.

benefit, (confer a b. upon) *anfāna*.

benevolence, n. (an act of b.) *kyauta, abin kyauta, alheri*.

benign, see **kind**.

beniseed, *ridi, lidi*.

bent, adj. *gangare* or *gangara*, pl. *gangaru*; b. or tottering, as of a wall, *karkache*, fem. *karkata*, pl. *karkatu*; a b. tree *kwandariya, kondariya**; a man with a b. arm *mai-laushi, maiḡwarda*, with a b. leg *gwami*, old man with b. back *takoko*; it cannot be b. *ba shi tanḡwasawa*.

bent, to be *yin gangare, karkache*.

Benué, the river, pr. n. *Tsāda*, or *ruwan Tsāda*.

benumbed, to be, intr. v.

*kage** or *ḡaga**; my foot is b. *dela ya kama ḡafata*.

bequeath, to *wasiche**.

bereavement, n. *kewa, kiwa*.

bereft (devoid of) in phrases like b. of sense *maras, rashi*, e.g. *maras-hankali*, b. of shame *maras-kumya*, b. of strength *rashin ḡarifi*; see under *rāsa*.

beseech, v., see **ask**.

beseem, v., see **befit**.

beside, prep. (at the side of) *wajen, a wajen*; in a looser sense, *kusa ga, tare da*.

besides, prep. *bamda, ban da, baya, bayan, baya ga*.

besprinkle, *buta, yāfa, yafa ruwa*.

best, adj. this can only be expr. by the phr. *ya fi duka, mafi duka*, or *ya fi kowa*; this is the b. of these *wannan mafifichi dāga wa-dannan*; this is the heaviest *wannan ya fi duka nauyi*; he is doing his b. *yana da jimri*; cf. Hausa Gr. p. 75.

betray, tr. v. (to deliver up treacherously) *bashe*; to b. confidence *chin amana*, or *chinye amana*; to b. one another *bada juna*.

betroth, tr. v. *riḡe, riḡa, riḡi*.

betrothal, *riko*.

better, adj. 1. gen. *dama*,

gwama, *gwamma*, e.g. it were b. *ya yi dama*; (superior) *mafifichi* foll. by *daga*, e.g. this is better than that *wannan mafifichi dāga wanchan*, or *wannan ya dadi wanchan*; *fi*, e.g. it is b. so *ya fi*; *gara*, *gaira*, *guma*, *gwamma*, e.g. it is b. *gara*, it is b. so *gara hāka*, or *gwamma hāka*, it is b. for me to stop *ni gara in tsaya*, rather than I should do this it would be b. to die *da na yi wannan gara in mutu*.

2. a b. state of health is expr. by means of *dama*, *afuwa*, *rangwame*, e.g. to feel b. *jin dama*, *jin rangwame*, to get b. *samu dama*, also by *wartsaka*, b. to-day than yesterday *gwamma yau da jiya*, see Hausa Gr. p. 75.

between, 1. adv. *tsāka*.

2. prep. *tsākan*, *tsākanin*.

3. n. (a space), b. *tsākani*.

bewail, v. 1. intr. *yin kuka*.

2. tr. expr. by 1. with preps. given under on **account** of.

bewailing, 1. particip. n. (the act of b.) *kukawa*.

2. coner. (wail) *kuka*.

beware of, v. *yin hankali*, *tuna*, constr. with prep. *da*,

e.g. b. of that log lest you fall over it *ka tuna da ichen nan kāda ka faɗi bīsa*.

bewilder, tr. v. *dāme*.

bewildered, to be, intr. *dāmu*, *jin damuwa*, *ruɗe*.

bewilderment, n. *damuwa*.

beyond, 1. adv. of place *baya*, *gaba*; (further on, at a distance) *nesa*, *da*, or *dāga* or *na nesa*, e.g. that which lies b. *abin baya*.

2. prep. *baya*, *bayan*, *ketaren*.

3. fig. (surpassing) *faskare*, *fi*, e.g. it is b. me *ya faskare ni* or *ya fi ni*, b. the power of man *ya fi mutum* or *ya fi karfin mutum*.

beyond, to go, v., e.g. he went b. sea *ya ketare gulbi*.

biceps, *kwanduwan hannu*.

bid, n., a b. *tayi*.

bid, v. 1. (to command) *hakumche*, *hakumta*.

2. (to offer a price for) *taya*, *tayi*, *yin tayi*.

bier, *mākarai*.

bifurcate (of a path), *birkichi*, *birkita*.

big, adj. 1. (of size) *babba*, pl. *manya*, *ruku-ruku* *; also fig. (important), e.g. a b. man *babban mutum* or *mutum babba*, a b. thing *ridimin abu*; to grow b. *gawurta*, *gawusta*,

the boy has grown b. *yaro ya gawurta*; full-grown *gawurtache*, pl. *gawurtattu*.

2. (pregnant) *da chiki*, *karambiki*.

3. (pompous, arrogant) *da girman kai*, *mai-homa*, pl. *masu-homa*.

bile, n. *machiwa* (S.).

bill, n. 1. (account) *lisafi* or *lesafi*.

2. (beak, q.v.) *koto*.

bind, tr. v. 1. *damre*, *daure*, *damra*, *darme*, *tanka*, *tanke*, *lamyache* (K.), *sarkafe*; spec. to b. fast *tsuke*; to b. grass with cords so as to form roof *yamche* or *yamchi*.

binding, particip. n. *sarkafewa*; boards or stiff covers for b. books *bango*, *tadarishi*; b. of corn *bambu*.

bird, n. *tsuntsu*, *zunzu**, fem. *tsuntsuwa*, *zunzuwa**, pl. *tsuntsaye*, *zunzaye**. The following are some of the commonest birds in Hausaland: bishop-bird, *dala*, *mulufi*; bustard, the lesser b. *kadabkara*, *kadafkara*, *katakara*, *sokara**; the greater b. *tuje*; crow *shimkake*, a white-backed c. *hankaka*, pl. *hankaki* or *hankaku*; crane, crested c. *gauraka*, *goraka*, *garmaka*, *gamraka*, *kurki**;

cuckoo (lark-heel c. or crow pheasant) *ragon maza*; dove *kurchiya*, *garda*, *bardo*, *hazbiya*, *wala*; eagle *gaggafa*; egret (great white e. or heron) *zarbi*, *zalbi*; little e. *balbela*, *badbila*, *bilbila*; finch *chigoro*, *sisita*, *shaida*, *baiwar Allah*, *zalaidu*; honey-guide *gunda*, *maganiya*; hoopoe *chigi da tuku*, *katu tu*; horn-bill *burtu*, *bultu*, *chilikowa*, *ka-ki-ganin-Allah*; ibis (African wood i.) *tsagagi*, *jinjimi*; Hadadah ibis *rara*; partridge (or francolin) *fakara* (K.), *makeruwa* (S.); pigeon *tantabara*, *tandabara*; plover *kyarekyare*, *zakaran yaki*, *zakaran assuba*, *dan raguwa*; black-headed p. or crocodile bird *ladin kogi*; roller or blue jay *chanwaka*, *tsanwaka*; starling *dokin buntu*; glossy s. or grackle *tsakwaikwaiwa*; stilt *taka bado*; stork *shamo*, *shamuwa*, *kasheri*, *mai-jika*, *borintumke*, *babba da jikka*, *tsagagi*, *juhurma*; sun-bird *sha kauchi*; swallow (a species of s.) *tsaitsewa*, *mashirari*; weaver b. *jira*, *kabare*. The following have not yet been identified: a small white diving b. *benema*; a large carnivorous b. *duki*; a yellow-

breasted b. *gado* ; a species of sparrow *gora* ; a small b. with red plumage which feeds on guinea-corn *marai* ; a small singing b. *wali*, *waliya* ; a long-beaked water b. *sulbi* ; see also *banupiya*, *buwa*, *kajarini*, *kilabtu*.

bird lime, n. *danḡon tsunt-suwa*.

bird's-eye, *idon zakara*.

birth, n. 1. (coming into life) *haifuwa* ; since your b. *tun haifuwarka* = since you were born.

2. (the act of bringing forth) *haifuwa*, *jego*.

3. an untimely b. *ba-kwaini*, *ḡarin chiki*.

birth, to give b. to, tr. v. *haifa*, *haife*, *yin jegu*.

birth, a woman about to give b. to a child *karambiki*.

birthday, n. *rana ta haifuwa*, *ranan haifuwa*.

birthplace, n. *mahaifa**, phr. *wurin da aka haifa*.

biscuits, *akara**.

bishop-bird, or **cardinal-bird**, *dala*, *mulufi*.

bit, n. 1. (of a horse) *lizami*, *linzami*, *lizzami* (S.) ; the strap tied to a b., n. *kamazuru*.

2. (small piece, fragment) *gutsura*, pl. *gutsatsari*.

bitch, n. *kāriya*.

bite, n. *chizo* ; b., e.g. of a scorpion *dāni* ; b. of a snake *sāri*.

bite, tr. v. *chizo*, *yin chizo*, *chiḡe* (followed by pron. obj.) ; of snakes etc. (to sting) *sāra*, *tāḡa*, *halbi*, *tāma* (S.) ; to b. off *ḡātsa*, *zabta* ; to b. at *gurgura* ; to seize with the teeth *tasamma*, *tasoma* (S.).

bitter, adj. *da ḡwachi*, *da ḡachi*, *yamama*, *yanyanna*, *da yami*, *maḡachi* ; to make b. or to be b. *tsamama*.

bitterness, n. *ḡwachi*, *ḡachi*.

bivouac, on a field of battle *kwanandāḡa*.

black, adj. *bāki*, fem. *bāka*, pl. *babbaku* ; very b. *bāki kirin* (or *ḡerin*), *bāki wur* ; a b. horse *akawali*, *kīyara*, *chichiro*.

blacken, intr. v. (to become or turn b.) *zama bāki*, *sauya bāki*, *babake** ; tr. (to make black) *babaki**.

blackish, *bāki-bāki*.

blackness, *baḡintaka*.

blacksmith, n. *mai-ḡira*, *ma-ḡeri*, fem. *maḡeriya*, pl. *ma-ḡera* ; the fem. = a blacksmith's wife.

bladder, n. *maḡitsara*, *jika**.

blade, n. 1. (of corn etc.) *kāra*, pl. *karare*, *tofo*, *fofo*, *zangare*, *zangarniya*.

2. (of knife) *karifen wuka*.

3. (broken b. of sword) *ku-duru**.

blame, n. 1. (finding fault, re-proof) *foro, tsawa, harasa, rarakaua* (K.), *zarge*.

2. (fault, guilt) *laifi*.

blame, tr. v. 1. (to reprove, check) *yin tsawa*.

2. (to impute guilt) *bada laifi*.

blameless, adj. *maras-laifi, babu laifi*.

blanket, n. *bargo, burgo, luru, kuntu**, *kuntukuru**.

blaspheme, v. *yin alfasha, yin swaḥon Allah*.

blasphemy, n. *alfasha magana, ma'asi**.

bleaching, chalk used for, n. *alli*.

bleat, intr. v. *kāra* and gen. *yin kuka, yin bu*.

bleating, n. *bu, kāra*.

bleed, v. intr. *tsaga* or phr. *zubda jini*; tr. *fitā jini* or *fidda jini*, constr. with prep. *ma*.

bleeding, particip. adj., see **bloody**.

bleeding sickness, n. *tsagiya*; b. from nose *hāḥo*.

blemish, n. 1. material or physical b. *aibi, aibu*, pl. *aibo-bi, aibu, lāhani*; e.g. a b. in the eye *lāhani ga ido*; b., e.g. a spot of different colour in cloth etc. *sōfāne, sōfāni, surfani*.

2. moral b. *aibu*.

bless, v. *barka, albarka* used with *yi* or *wa*, e.g. he blessed *ya wa albarka*; *albarkata, kyautaye*.

blessing, n. *albarka, salati**.

blight, e.g. on corn *domana, mando*.

blighted, adj. applied to corn *kupturu, kūturu* (S.), see *birtuntuna*.

blind, adj. *makafo*, pl. *makafi*; a b. person *makāfo*, fem. *makafurwa* (S.), *makauniya* (K.), pl. *makāfi*; *makabta* (S.), *makanta* (K.).

blind, tr. v., to make b. *makanta*; intr. to become b. *makafche, makamche, makanche*.

blindness, n. *makamta, makanta, makopchi, makabche, makabchi*.

blink, intr. v. *rumtse, runtsi, runtsa* (S.).

blinkers, leathern b. for a horse *furtali*.

blinking, n. *kifil kifil*.

bliss, n. *ni'ima**.

blister, n. 1. i.e. something to cause blistering *farsa*.

2. of the skin *sali, swali, swale, bororo*.

blister, v. 1. tr. *farcha*.

2. intr. (to be blistered) *yin sali*.

block, e.g. of salt or potash *baura* (S.) ; b. of wood *firde*.

blood, n. *jini* ; b. letting *jiniya*, *jirfa*, *jarfa*, *majinachiya*.

blood-feud, *tarna*.

bloody, adj. (bleeding or blood-stained) *da jini* ; his face was all b. *fuskassa duka sai jini*.

blossom, n. *fure*, pl. *furori* or *furaye*.

blot, n., e.g. of ink *dole*, *dangwale* ; to make a b. *dardasa*.

blot out, v. *yin maimai*, *shashafe*.

blow, n. gen. *buga*, *kādi*, *rotse*, *roche* ; a b. esp. in boxing *dambe*, *tika*, a b. in fighting *fāda*, pl. *fādodi*, a b. with hand *mari*, pl. *marumari*, or *maremare*, *bugu*, *bugo*, a hard b. causing wound or swelling *rotsi*, *rochi* (S.), pl. *ratsa*, a b. in punishment fig. *sanda*, pl. *sanduna*.—To strike or give blow or blows, v. gen. *buga*, intens. *bubbuga* or *bugabuga* ; *mari* or *mare* with intens. participial n. *marmarawa* ; *rochi*, *rotsa*, *wulakanta*, *tsamki*, *daka* with intens. forms *daddaka* and *dandaka* ; a b. with clenched fist *dundu*, *naushi*, I gave him a b. that left its mark *na yi ma sa rotsi*, the sound of a b. *ku-mus* (S.).

blow, v. 1. tr. *būsa*, *dābar*, *yin dābar*, e.g. the trumpeter blew the trumpet *mai-būsa ya būsa kafo* ; to b. away *bushe*.

2. intr. *būsa*, e.g. the wind used to b. all night *iska ta kan būsa dare duka* ; spec. to b. the fire under a cooking pot *girke*, *girki* ; to b. water out of the mouth *tuddas* ; to b. a fire *zuga*, *fura*, e.g. b. up the fire with the bellows *ka fura wuta da mafuri* ; to b. up, e.g. an empty bag *yin bokoko*, to b. up a bag *fūra salka* ; to b. about *jake*.

blowing, n. *būsa*, e.g. the b. of the trumpet, wind, etc. *būsan kafo*, *būsan iska* ; b. of water out of the mouth *tudaswa*.

blown upon, i.e. dried, adj. *būsashe*.

blue, n. *shuni* or *juni**, *dāfuwa*.

blue, adj. *shudi*, fem. *shudiya*, pl. *shudodi*, *da shuni* or *da juni**, *dāfāfi* ; spec. b. cloth *shiyodi*, *turkudi*, *saki*, *swaki* ; light b. *shudi-shudi* ; a b. stone *kaule* ; a dark b. thread *nati*.

blue, to be, intr. v. *saki**, *soki** or *swaki** ; to stain the face b. *dambara* ; to dye b. *shuda*, *shiyuda*.

bluff, *alwāshi*.

blunder, see **mistake**.

blunt, adj. *da laushewa*; in the sense of devoid of edge *babu kaiſi*.

blunt, to be, v. *dallashe, dal-lishi, dakushe, yin daküsa*.

bluntness, n. (of a knife) *tade-rishi, laushiwa, daküsa*.

boar, the wild, n. *alhanzir, hanzir, gyado*, fem. *gyadain-ya*, pl. *gyadodi* or *gyaduna*.

board, n. (plank) *faskare*; to make into boards *yin faskare*, coll. boards *karauki*, boards for binding books *tadarishi**.

boast, v. *gawurta, gawusta, yin kurari, yin räha, ruba*.

boaster, n. *mai-foma*, pl. *masu-foma, mai-homa, mai-tama*, pl. *masu-tama*; b. in war *gugirma*.

boasting, n. *foma, homa, tama, alfahari, alwäshi, fari, fariya, kurari*.

boat (i.e. canoe), n. *jirigi* or *jirgi*, pl. *jirage*.

boatman, n. *mai-jirigi*, pl. *masu-jirigi*.

bobbin, *mätäri*.

body, *jiki*, pl. *jikuna*.

body-guard, one of the king's, n. *zarumi, zaromi, zarmi* or *jarimi*, pl. *zarumai*.

boil, n. *kurji, kureji*, pl. *kurareji, kuraje; kirchi, gurje, girje, bambaroki, maruru*.

boil, v. tr. or intr. *tafasa, yin*

tafasa, tafasu, tafashe, taso; it is boiling *ana tafasa*.

boiled, past part., *tafasashshe*, fem. *tafasashiya*, pl. *tafasassu*.

boiling, n. *taswa*; the rise and fall of b. water *habuma, hambuma*.

bold, adj., see **brave**.

bolt, v., to b. food *rushe* (K.).

bolt, see **lock**.

bone, n. *kashi*, pl. *kasussuwa* or *kassa*; back-b. *kashin tsotso*; bones in a fish *kayar kifi*; shin-b. *köbri, kwabri, kwauri* (K.), *kübri*, pl. *kwabruka*; hip-b. *kwankwasso*; marrow-b. *tantakwashi, tantakoshi*.

bone-setter, *mai-dori*.

book, n. *litäfi, letäfi*, pl. *litä-tafi*, or *litattaffai*, or *litattaffaye*; *takarda**, pl. *takardu**, *kundi*, pl. *kundaye, dan kundi, kitäba**; leathern case for a b., n. *gafaka, gafakka*, or *gufaka* (S.); large thick b., n. *sufuri, sufili*; page of a b., n. *warka, waraka*; stiff covers for a b., n. *tadarishi**, *bango*, pl. *bangaye* or *banguna*.

book-marker, n. *alama* or *halama*, pl. *alamomi, amara*.

boot, n. *kubuta**; spec. long leathern b. *safe*, high riding b. *karufa, kurufa, kurfa*, long riding b. with spurs

kufita, kufuta, pl. *kufitai, kufutai*.

booth, n. *bukka*, pl. *bukkoki*; *sayi*, pl. *sayoyi*.

booty, n. *abin kwache*.

border, n. 1. of a country *iyaka*.
2. silk b. on woman's dress *hashiya*.

3. b. of cloth *lafe, lafi*.

bore, tr. v. *fuda, fude, buda, huda, yin rarake*.

boring, n. *fudi, rarake*.

born, pass. part. *haifaffe*, fem. *haifaffa*, pl. *haifaffu*.

borrow, tr. v. *yin äro, ramta, yin ramche*, e.g. I did not b. much money *ban yi ramchen kurdi dayawa ba*; to b. money *chin bashi*.

borrower, n. *mai-chin bashi, mai-daukan bashi*.

bosom, n. *gaba*, pl. *gabobi, kirji*, pl. *kirjai, kiraza*.

both, 1. adj. *biyu*, e.g. b. of them *duka biyu or su biyu*; this may also be expr. by *däga wannan sai wannan*.

2. conj. *da*, e.g. b....and *da...da*.

bottle, n. *tasa* or *dasa**, pl. *ta-soshi, kwalaba, kwaliba*; *tulu*, pl. *tuluna, dalulu*; small earthenware b. *buta*, water b. calabash *kurtu, burmi, gyandama*, skin water b. *salka* or *salka*, pl. *salkuna*,

scent b. *wakiya, wakiyya*; a large leathern b. for holding butter *giwan basa*; a small skin b. *tandu*.

bottom, 1. (the lowest part or foundation) *gutsu, kalkashi, gato*, e.g. b. of a fence *gaton darni, gindi*.

2. (buttocks) *gato, gindi*.

bough, n. *reshe, refe* (S.), *rehe, refo*, pl. *rassu, rassa, raffu, refuna*; see **branch**.

bound, intr. v. (to leap up or forward) *tuma*.

bound, past part. 1. (tied up, fastened with a band) *dam-rarre*, pl. *damrarru, aka damre, faskarari**.

2. fig. (obliged, required) *wajib, wajibi* with *ne* or *ke*, e.g. we are b. to go to the war *wajibi ne mu tafi yaki*.

boundary, n. *iyaka, gayya, or gaya* (K.), *kaida, makarin kasa, matuka*.

bow, n. (i.e. the weapon) *bākā*, pl. *bākuna*, b. and arrows *bākan kibiya*; to discharge a b., v. *halbi* or *harbi*; b. for cleaning cotton *bākan shiba*.

bow, 1. intr. v. (to incline the head in salutation) *yin āfi, duka* (S.).

2. (to b. down as in the native prostration) *yin āfi, gurfana, yin gurfane rusuna, sujada*.

3. to b. or stoop *sunkwiya*, *sunkuya*, *sunkurya* (K.), *kurda* (S.), *duka*.

4. (to b. the head down or sideways in order to listen) *karkata* or *kakartsa*.

bowels, n. *hanji*.

bowing, n., i.e. so as to touch the ground with the forehead *sujada*, *sajada*, *alkafura*; see **bow**.

bowl, n. *tāsa*, pl. *tāsoshi*, *gi-dauniya*, *gwongwon*, *kata**.

bow-legged, *chassa*.

bowman, n. *mahalbi*, pl. *ma-halba* or *masu-halbi*.

bowstring, n. *tsirkiya*, *tsar-kiya*, *chirkiya*, *igiyar baka*.

box, n. *akodi*, *akwati*, *sanduki*, or *sanduki*, pl. *sandukai*, *mai-sutura**; spec. a small skin b., e.g. for snuff *batta*, pl. *battochi*; *barta*, pl. *bartochi*; small glass b. for frankincense *lulu*.

box, v. *dambe*, *nausha*, *naushe*, *nushe*, *dankwasa*, *dankwashe*.

boxer, *dan dambe*.

boxing, n. *naushi*, *dambe*.

boy, n. *yaro*, pl. *yara*, *yaraye*, *yaye* or *yayaye*; spec. b. who is third or fourth child, the previous children being all girls *tanko**.

boyishness, n. *halin yaro*.

bracelet, n. *tagula*, *tagulla*,

tugula, *tagura*, *munduwa*, pl. *mundaye*.

brackishness, *zartsi*.

braid, to *tufka*, *tubka*, *tupka* (K.), *tumka* (S.); see **plait**.

• **brains**, n. coll. *kwalluwa*, *kwa-kwalluwa*, *kokolwa*.

branch, n., of trees *reshe*, *refe* (S.), *refo*, pl. *refuna*, *raffu*; spec. small b. *hamso**, b. stripped of leaves *kututture*, *kututturo*, *kututturu*; withered branches coll. *kwabraka*; thin bending b. *tsumanjiya*.

brass, n. *jan karife*, *farin karife*, *gachi*, *janjache*.

brave, adj. *mazakuta*, *da zuchiya babba*, *mai-zuchiya*, *mai-karifin zuchiya*.

bravery, n. *mazakuta*, *mazakunta*, *mazakunchi*, *tasiri* (S.), *zarumta*.

bray, intr. v. (of the ass) *bir-bira*, *barbara*, *yin kugi*.

bray, tr. v. (to beat small, pound) *daka*.

bread, n. (made of wheat) *gu-rasa*.

breadth, n. *fādi*, *faski**.

break, v. 1. tr. *chiri*; *fāsa*, *fāso*, *pāsa*, *fashe*, *pashe*, *palshe*; *kariya*, *kariyi*, *karye*; *kalle* (K.), *rotsa*, *roshe*, *rosa*, *tsinke*, *tsunke*; to keep breaking *tsuntsunke*.

2. fig. to b. a promise *sāki*

alkawali or *warwari alka-wali*.

3. fig. intr. of the day, daylight or morning, see dawn.

4. tr. with various modifications of meaning: to b. open *ribe*, *falke* (S.); to b. to pieces *farfasha* or *pal-pashe* (intens. forms of *fashe*, *pashe*), *rugunguza**, *fanfutsa*; to b. off *kudure*; to b. up *kakkariya*, *karereya*, *rusad da*, *ɓalgache*, *kaririye* intensive forms of *kariya*; to b. up again *dandaka* intensive form of *daka*; to b. off *katse*.

5. to b. a horse *birga*, *burga*.

6. to b. the law *tāka shari'a*.

breakage, *aras*, a sound as of b. *garan-garan*, *kilin-kilin*.

breakfast, n. *kalachi*, or *karin kumallo* (also = midday meal), *kariyan azumi*, *sahur*, *suhur*.

breaking, participial n. *kari-yewa*.

breakwater, to hold water back by a b. *datse*; a b. used for catching fish *gunḍo*, *tāshi* (S.).

breast, 1. (bosom) *kirji*, pl. *kiraza*, *kirijai*, *gaba*.

2. (b. of mother or dam) *māma*, *nono*, pl. *nonuna*, *nonaye* or *nonna*.

breath, shortness of, n. *fuka*; to hold the b. *ɗauki lumfashi*.

breathe, intr. v. *lumfasa* (S.), *numfasa* (K.), to b. heavily *ɗauki lumfashi*, *yin sheda*, I b. hard *na yi fuka*.

breathing, n., heavy b. *lum-fashi*, *numfashi*, *lunfastu*, *sheda*, *habuma**, *hambuma*.

breed, v. *ba ɗiya*, *yin ɗiya*, *haifi*, *haife*, *haifu*.

brethren, n. *yan-uwa*; my b. *yan-uwana*.

bribe, n. *toshi*; b. given to a judge *fila* or *hila*, *kirsa*, *ri-shiwa*.

bribe, tr. v. *chidacheto**.

brick, n. (made of mud) *tubali*, *kunḡu* (S.), pl. *kunḡaye*; a grass used for making bricks *ramno* (S.), *rauno* (K.).

bricks, to make, v. *yin tubali*.

bride, n., specially applied to the latest wife *amariya*; the state of a bride *amarchi*; the friend of a b. *kāwa*.

bridegroom, n. *ango*, pl. *anguna* or *angaye**; a feast for a b. and his friends *ambaru-wa*, *sansambi*; a dowry or a gift given to a bride *sadaki*.

bridge, n. *kadarko*.

bridle, n. *lizami*, *lizzami*, *lizani*, *linzami*; a strap round horse's head fastened to b. *maraya*; a brass appendage to a b. *peluwa*; head of a b. *kwalkwada*, *kwalkwali*.

brigand, n. *mafashi*; pl. only, *masu-tari*.

bright, adj. *fari*, fem. *fara*, pl. *farari* or *farufaru*; *farifat*, *da tachi*, *tachache*, pl. *tachachu* or *tatattu*; b. as silver *tangarai*, the last also = unclouded.

brightness, *tachi*, *tāshi*.

brim, n. *burbishi*; up to the b. *fau*, e.g. it was filled to the b. *ya hau fau*, *ya tashi fau*.

brimstone, n. *faral wuta*, *ki-brit**, *kaule**.

bring, tr. v. *kawo*, *kayo*, *kai*; zo constr. with *da* (lit. come with), e.g. he brought the book *ya zo da litafi*; spec. modifications are to b. back (i.e. to restore) *maida*, *tumbe*; to b. forth *fito da*; (to give birth to) *hai fi* or *hai fe*; to b. forward (to adduce) *kai* or *kawo*, e.g. b. proof *kai shaida*, they would b. forward a reason *su kan kawo dakili*; to b. near to the speaker, also simply b. here or b. near *kawo*; to b. together *gabato*, *jawo*; to b. up (to nurse, educate) *gwoiyo*, *reno*; to b. up a child or animal whose parent is dead *tallafi*; to take and b. *tareyo* or *tariyo*; to b. together *jibche*, *jibta*, *tara*.

bringing, participial n. *kawowa*.

brinjal, (tomato) *gauta*.

brink, n. *baki*, pl. *bakuna*.

brittleness, *aras*, *gaushi*, *gau-tsi*.

broad, adj. *fādi*, *da faski*, *bikiki*, *tafkeke*.

broadcast, adv. *a zube*.

brocade, n. *dibajo*, *kambori**; white cotton b. *samasadowa*.

broil, tr. v. *soya* or *suya*.

broiled, past part. *soyayye* or *soyeye*, fem. *soyayya*, pl. *soyayyu*.

broken, past part. *fāsashe*, pl. *fāsassu*, *kararre*, *matache**, or *matache*, fem. *matachiya* or *matatta*, pl. *matattu*, e.g. a b. vessel *matattar kwariya*, *mara**.

broken, to be b. up, v. *war-wari*, *wariwari* or *wawari*.

broker, n. *dilāli* or *dillali*, *ḍan baranda*; to act as b. *yin dilāli*, or *yin dilanchi*; broker's commission, cf. seq.

brokerage, n. (fee or commission as intermediary in sales) *la'ada*, *ladda*; if the price paid is to be *la'ada chiki* (b. included) the seller pays the b. (usually 5 p.c.), if *la'ada waje* (exclusive of b.) the buyer pays the b.

brood, n. coll. (offspring) *ḍiya*,

in a wide or general sense
iri, pl. *irare*, q.v.

brook, n. *rafi*, pl. *rafuna* or *rafafuka*.

broom, *mashari**, *tsintsiya*;
see **brush**.

broom-weed, sweet b.-w.
roma fada.

broth, n. *miya*, *romuwa* (S.),
romo (K.), *kalu**; b. made
from fruit of *dorowa* tree
daddawa, *daudawa*.

brother, n. *dan-uwa*; used as
an expression of regard in
addressing others (usually
with suff. pron. *na*) = brother!
or dear friend! *dan-uwana*,
pl. *yan-uwana* or *yan uwa*,
shikiki, *shakiki*; elder b. *wa*,
pl. *yeye*; younger b. *kāne*,
pl. *kannai*, or *kanne*.

brotherhood, *kanenchi*.

brow, n. (forehead) *goshi*; he
bent his b. or knit his brows
(= he frowned) *ya damre*
(*gintse* or *jirkita*) *fuskassa*.

bruise, n. *rauni*, *targade*.

bruise, tr. v. *falfasa*.

brush, n. *tsintsiya*, *abin shara*,
mashari.

brush, tr. v. (i.e. to sweep with
a broom or b.) *shara*, *share*,
shache, *kabe*; to b. thoroughly
kakkabe; to b. the hair *shafa*
gashi.

brushing, *tsifa*.

buck, n. prefix *namiji*, e.g. b.
antelope *namijin barewa*; b.
goat *bunsuru*, pl. *bunsurai*;
water b. *gwambaza*; reed b.
kaji, *keji*, *kwantarafi*.

bucket, n. *guga*, pl. *guguna*,
kwariyar guga; a leather b.
wāsaki.

bucking, e.g. of a horse or
donkey *tutsu*, *butsari*.

buckle, n. *maḥalli*.

bud, intr. v. *yin gunda*, *yin*
tofo, *kumpsa**.

bud, n. *gunda*.

buffalo, n., dwarf b. or bush-
cow *ḥauna*, pl. *ḥakane*, or
ḥaunaye; *kutunkun ḥauna*.

buffalo-horn, (plant) *magari-*
yar kura.

buffet, v. *buga*, *dambe*.

bug, n. *kazunzumi*, *gazunzumi*
(S.), *kudi*.

build, tr. v. *gina*, *kafa*; the
former is also spec. applied
to construction of roads, the
latter to that of roof etc.
with beams: *kasantada**.

builder, *magini*.

building, a, n. *garu**.

built, past part. *ginanne*, pl.
ginannu.

bull, n. 1. (male of horned
cattle) *sa*, *bajimi* (S.), *bajini*
(K.), *bijimi*, *bishimi*, *kinna*;
spec. large (castrated) b. *bur-*
tumi, *furtumi*; b. for carrying

loads *takarkari*, pl. *takar-karai*.

2. gen. (male of any large animal) *toro*, pl. *toranni*, *torone*, e.g. bull elephant *toron giwa*; *toro* with omission of *giwa* is often specially applied to the male elephant = *namijin giwa*.

bullet, n. *harsashe*, pl. *harsasai*; *harsa* (S.), pl. *harsashi*, *dutsim bindiga*; see **cart-ridge**.

bulrush, *shalla*.

bunch, n. (e.g. a b. of flowers) *dāme* or *dami*, pl. *dāmuna* or *damma*, *dunji*.

bundle, *dāme*, *dami*, *dunji*, *gwallo*; to place in bundles *yin jeni*.

burden, n. *kaya*, pl. *kayayaki*.

burdensome, adj., see **heavy** and **troublesome**.

burial, abstr. n. *biso*, *bizni*, *birni*.

burial-cloth, native, n. *zugu*; see **winding-sheet**.

burial-place, n. *makwanche*, *wurin bizne*, *wurin kushewa*, *wurin kusheyi*, *kusheya*.

burn, v. 1. tr. *kona*, *kone*, *kuna*, *soya*, *suya*, *surya*, *toyī*, *towi*, *toya*, *tuya*; to b. up completely *konkone*, spec. to b. with a hot iron *lalas**.

2. intr. *kuna*, *kone*; fig. of

desire etc., the heart burned *zuchiya ta kuna*.

burning, particip. adj. *maifūra*, *konewa*; b. disease *kona* or *kuna**; a smell of b. *karni*, *kasni*, *kaur*.

burnous, *alkyabba*, pl. *alkyabbu*.

burnt, past part. *konanne*, fem. *konanna*, pl. *konannu*; spec. b. food, n. *kamzo*, *kanzo*; b. all over, adv. *kurmus**.

burrow, to *raraka*, *raruke*.

burst, v. tr. and intr. *fashe*, *pashe*; bursting out laughing *fashewa da dariya*; sounds of bursting (onomatopœic) *fus*; to b. open *tsiyayye* (K.).

bury, tr. v. *bizne*, *bisne*, *birna*, *bisa*, *bishe*, *binne**, *turbude*, *turumbude**; spec. to b. in the earth as locusts do their eggs *turbude*.

burying-place, n. see **burial-place**.

bush, n. spec. thorny b. *kwabodo*, *kaudodo*, *sarkakiya*; thick-foliaged b. used as food *sukuki**; b. in the sense of uncultivated forest land *daji*, *rukuki*; b. in sense of scrub or farm b. *jeji*, *kunchi*, *kumchi*.

bush-buck, lesser b. or 'harnessed antelope' (i.e. *Tragelaphus scriptus*) *mazo*, *ganjar*.

bush-cat, see **cat**.¹

bush-cow, or dwarf buffalo
bauna, pl. *hakane*, *baunaye*.

business, n. 1. (trade, commerce) *chiniki*, *shāgali*, pl. *shagulla* (S.), or *shagulgula* (K.), *bukāta*, *sha'ani*; to do b. *yin shāgali*; to do b. with *yin da*.

2. gen. (= concern) *bukata*; also, in neg. and interrog. sentences, *ruwa*, e.g. it is no b. of mine *ba ruwana* or *babu ruwana*, what b. is it of yours *ina* (lit. where?) *ruwanku*? go about your b. *ka tafi abinka*; minding one's own b. *sha'ani*; mind your b. *shiga sha'aninka*; he went about his b. *ya yi zamansa*.

3. (affair or thing) *abu*, e.g. a bad b. *abin mugu*.

bustard, the lesser b. *kadabkara*, *kadafkara*, *sokara**; the greater b. *tuji*.

busybody, *mai-kwarmato*.

but, 1. adversative conj. *amma*; *da* is at times found where the opposition is not (as with *amma*) explicit and logical, e.g. but are you able to do this? *da kana iya yin haka? fache**, *balshe**, *bari dai*.

2. exceptive prep. and conj. *sai*, e.g. a woman's entire body ought to be strictly concealed but the soles of

her feet and her eyes *jikin mache duk yi al'aura ya ke sai ko matakai sai ido*; those who love thee can but salute again *masowa naka sai kuma salmawa*; neg. there is no health in it, nothing but sickness *babu lafiya chiki nata sai chiwuta*; there is often an idiomatic ellipsis before *sai*, e.g. the whole street was nothing but water *dukan kasuwa sai ruwa*, nothing but blood *sai jini*; in this way is to be explained the phr. *sai lafiya*, i.e. nothing but well, i.e. quite well. The expr. *bamda* or *banda* may = English but, e.g. put nothing in the pot but meat *kada ku sa komi chikin tukunya bamda nama* where *sai nama* would be equally correct.

butcher, n. *mafauchi*, *mahau-chi*, pl. *mahauta*.

butcher, tr. v., i.e. to slaughter animals in technical sense *yin fawa*.

butcher-bird (shrike), *bambami*.

butchery, n. tech. (slaughtering of animals) *fawa*.

butt, intr. v. *kāra*, *yin kāro*, *tunkwiya*, *tunkuda*, e.g. the two goats are butting each

other *awaki su biyu suna tunkuda junansu* or *da juna*.

butter, n. 1. gen. whether animal or vegetable *mai*.

2. cow b. *main shanu, dunguli, dungule, turde*; a large leathern bottle for holding b. *giwan basa*.

butterfly, n. *bamota* or *bama-wuta, kwalkwala, kilikili, kilkili*; the expr. *litāfin Allah* (writing of God), or *dokin Allah* (God's horse) is often used to designate the butterfly; cf. *tadawal Allah, malam bude litafinka*.

butter-tree, n. the shea-butter tree (*Bassia Parkii*) *kaḍanya*; shea-butter, i.e. its thick butter-like oil, *main kaḍanya, main kade, or man kade*.

butting, n. *kāro, tūni, tunk-wiyi*.

buttock, n. *gato*.

button, n. *makubli* or *makulli*, pl. *makublai, mabantari* (K.), *mabantali* (S.), *maḥallen riga, anini**.

buy, v. *saya, sayi, saye, sai*; to b. and bring back *sayo*; to be bought *sayu*.

buyer, n. *mai-saye*, pl. *masu-saye*.

buying, *sayi*; espec. wholesale b. *fāja*; b. and selling *saye da sayarwa, or saye da sayaswa*.

buzz, n. *amo*; b. of bees *ḡugi, ḡogi*.

buzz, intr. v. *amo* or *yin amo*.

by, 1. prep. instr. (with) *da*, e.g. he was struck by an arrow *aka halbe shi da kibiya*.

2. prep. loc. (near) *kusa, kusa da, or kusa ga*, e.g. by the shore of the pool *kusa ga bakin gulbi*; (along by) *baya*, e.g. we walked by the town *mun yi yawo bayan birni*.

3. prep. distributive, e.g. by fours *fudu fudu*, by tens *goma goma*.

4. adv. (near) *kusa*.

by-and-by, *an jima* and *zuwa zuwa*.

byword, cf. her character became a b. *halinta ya zama sara*.

cackle, intr. v. *yin karkara*.

cackling, n. *kyarkyara, kirkira*.

cactus, a prickly *Euphorbia* with c.-like habit and milky juice *tinya, tunya, kyarana*.

cadger, *bakanchi, maichile, masha-chile*.

cage, n. *akurke, akurki*, pl. *akurkai, gidan tsuntsuwa*; a cage for fowl (a hencoop) *akurkin kaza*.

cake, n., c. of rice or guinea-corn *waina* (K.), *tsala, tsaliya* (K.), *tswala* (S.), *māsa* (Zaria);

c. of wheat flour and honey *fankasu*; c. of bean flour and oil *soto*; c. made from beans of the *dorowa* tree *daddawa*; c. of oil, honey and rice or wheat *tsatsafa*, *bankuru*, *bakuru*, *kosai*, *shashaka*.

calabash, n. *gora*, pl. *gorina*, *kwariya*, *burmi*, *gyandama*, *maburmi*, *muburmi*; spec. small c. *kumbu*; long-necked c. used as water-bottle *kurtu*, *kortu*; c. finger-basin *kwa-chiya*; c. strainer *rariya*; a small c. placed in a water pot to prevent water spilling when carried *magumki*, *gumkaruwa*.

calamity, n. (distress, adversity) *tsiya*, *masifa*, *mayāta*, *wahala*; a c. (a distressing or adverse thing or event) *abin mugu* or *mugun abu*.

calculate, v. (to compute, reckon) *yin kidaya*, *kilga*, *kirga*, *yin lisafi*.

calculation, n. 1. (act of computing or reckoning) *kidaya*, *kida*, *kididdiga*.

2. (sum or amount reached by c.) *kidaya*, *kida*, *kididdiga*. *lisafi*, the last commonly applied to accounts, bills, etc.; beyond c. (incalculable, innumerable) *sun fi kidaya*.

caldron, n. *tukunya*.

calf, n. 1. (young of large animal) *da*, connective *dan*, pl. *yaya* or *ya*, connect. *yayan* or *yan*, coll. pl. *diya*, connect. *diyar*.

2. (young of cow) *marāki*, fem. *marāka*, pl. *maruka* or *marukka*; spec. a young female c. *karsana*.

calf, n., i.e. of the leg *dambubu*, *tukatukai** (K.).

calico, n. *alkāmura*; white c. for making tobes *mahamudi*, *alawayo* (S.).

call, tr. v. (to summon) *kira*, *kīraya*, *kīraye*; to c. or summon to where the speaker is, and also simply to c. *kirawo*; to c. in the sense of to name *kīra suna*; 'called,' i.e. named or entitled is expressed thus: a man called Bube *wani mutum sunansa Bube*, a great man who was called the Madaki *baba ana che da shi Madaki*; calling out, verbal n. *kira*; one who calls to prayer *makiran salla*.

callous, *dakanta*.

calm, n. (absence of wind, still weather) *natsu*, *natso*, *natsuwa*, *nitso*, *nitsuwa*, also used fig. in the sense of relaxation or rest.

calm, tr. v. (to appease) *lallashi* or *lillashi*, *sanyaya*.

caltrop (plant), *tsaidau*, *tsidau*, *dayi*; water c. *gyadar ruwa*.

calumniate, v. *chim-baya*, *rada**.

calumny, n. *chimbaya*, *rada*.

camel, n. *rakumi*, fem. *rakuma*, pl. *rakumma*; the female c. *taguwa*, pl. *taguwai*, *taguwoyi*; spec. large male c. *amale*; a two-humped camel *aturkumami*, f. *aturkumama*; a running c. *jeraya*; the constellation of the C. *taguwa*.

camp, n. 1. (halting ground of travellers etc.) *zango*, pl. *zanguna*.

2. (in the military sense) *sansani*; camping-place, n. *wurin sabka* or *sapka*.

camphor, n. *kāfur*.

camwood, *majigi*.

can, auxiliary v. *iya*, also *samu*; he could not enter *ba ya samu ya shiga*; with passives a *iya* may be employed, e.g. it cannot be lifted *ba a iya a dauke shi*.

cancel, to c. an agreement *warware*.

cane, n. 1. *gora*, pl. *gorina*; spec. water-cane *burgu*; sort of bamboo c. *kwangi*, *kwagiri*; sugar c. *takanda*, *rake*.

2. (walking-stick) *sanda*, pl. *sanduna*, *kulki*.

cannibal, n. 1. *jan-maye*, *mai-chin mutane*.

2. c. people, or tribe *yam-yam*, *nyamnyam*.

cannon, n. *madafa**, *agwa*.

canoe, n. *jirigi*, *abara**, *jirgi*, pl. *jirage*; c. cover *rumpa*, *komi** (S.), *rumfa*; c. paddles *filafile* or *fulafule*; c. paddle used as a rudder *matuki*; a c. pole *gwangwala**, *kwangwala*.

canoe, to paddle a c., v. *tuka*, the participial n. of which is *tukawa*.

canter, n. *hammadanchi*.

canter, intr. v. *zugurubtu*, *jigeribti*, *jigribti*, *kwakkwafa*.

cantle, of a saddle *kwachiar baya*.

cap, n. *tagiya*; spec. a white c. worn inside fez *fūla*, pl. *fuluna*; a blue or black c. *fūla saki*; c. of red cloth with tassel (fez) *fuladdara*, *fulandara*, *faladara*; a c. with two flaps to cover the ears *hāḥal kāda*.

cape, made of palm fibre *kabido*, *kabudo*.

capsicum, *barkono*.

capture, tr. v. 1. (to catch or take, of prisoners, slaves) *kama*, *kankama*, *same*.

2. (to conquer, get dominion over a city or people) *chi*, e.g. he conquered the people, the

king was captured *ya chisu aka kama sariki*; to c. and bring back *chiwo*.

caracal, (lynx) *dage*.

caravan, n. *ayari*; the chief of a c. *jaji*; head-man of a c., who walks behind it *madugu*, pl. *madugawa*; guide or forerunner of a c. *jāgāba* or *shūgaba*; the tax paid by a c. for permission to travel *kurdin boda*, *fāto*, *fīto*; a collection of caravans *kāfar fatake*.

carcass, n. *gawa*, pl. *gawa-waki*.

card, to c. cotton *shība*.

cardinal-bird, the scarlet *mulufi*, *malufi*.

cards, playing c. *yaya**.

care, n. 1. (heed) *ruwa* in neg. and interrog. clauses, e.g. what c. of mine is it? *ina ruwana? hankali*, which also has the sense of forethought.

2. (anxiety) *matamache**, e.g. the cares of the world *matamachen duniyan nan*; see **sorrow**.

care for, v. (heed, regard) *waiwaya*, *kūla* or *yin kūla*, *tara*, *tsēre*; to c. for (to pay attention to and so beware of) *tuna*, *yin hankuri*; all of these verbs except the first govern an object by

means of prep. *da*, e.g. he cared nought for his reproof *bai kūla da foronsa ba*.

careful, adj. (heedful) *mai-hankali*; be c. ! *hātara*, *hūtara*.

carefully, adv. 1. (heedfully, prudently) *da hankali*.

2. (attentively) *sārai*, e.g. look c. *duba sārai*.

careless, adj. (imprudent) *maras-hankali*, *bizki*; (inattentive to work) *mai-lalachi*.

carelessly, adv. *babu hankali*, *da lalachi*, *da lalafanchi*, *da sakafchi*; to act c. through absence of mind *shagalchi*.

carelessness, n. 1. (want of care) *sakafchi*.

2. (indifference, idleness) *lalachi*, *lalafanchi*.

caress, n. *lalaba*.

caress, v. *yin lalaba*.

cargo, n. *kaya*.

carpenter, n. *māsassaki*, pl. *masassaka*; shop of a c. *masaka*.

carpet, n. *kilishi**.

carriage, *karusa**.

carrier, n. gen. *mai-daukan kaya*; spec. hired c. *dan alāro*; head or chief c. *sarikin alāro*; a trader who carries his goods on his head *dangurumfa*, *bojuwa*, *bujuwa*, *mai-kaya*; money paid to carriers *sufuri*, *sufurchi*; an epithet

applied to a carrier who keeps putting down his load *mai-ḡari*.

carriage, *māsai, mosai, mushe*.

carry, tr. v. *kai, shidi*, the latter constr. with *da*; to c. in *shiga da, shigo da* (lit. to enter with), nothing shall be carried tied up into the town of Zaria *ba a shigo da komi a birni*; to c. on (transact) *yi*; to c. off *tafi da*; to c. through (accomplish) *iyas, iyas da*.

cartridge, *harsa, harsashi*; c. case *kamsir, kurfi, kwanso, kwasfar harsashi*; see **bullet**.

case, n. (receptacle, cover) *gida*, e.g. needle-c. *gidan alura*; spec. leathern c. for holding a book *gāfaka, gūfaka*.

case, n. l. (state or condition) *zama*.

2. (event, thing) *abu*, e.g. a bad c. (i.e. a bad business) *mugun abu*.

cassava, *rogo*.

cast, tr. v. *jefa, jefi, jefo*; to c. aside *yas da, yadda, yashe*; to c. out (throw out) *jefa da, jefas, jefas da, jefsa*, jefshe**; (to expel as from the mind, the throne, etc.) *fidda, fita* with *da, fishe*, e.g. he was c. (or driven) out *aka fitad da shi* or *aka fishe shi*; to c. up (to reckon), *yin lisafi* to c. the

young *ḡari*; cf. *haifuwa ḡari* still-born; see **calculate**.

castigate, tr. v. l. (punish) *fallasa, pallasa*.

2. (beat) *buga, bubbuga*.

castigation, n. l. (punishment) *fallasa, pallasa*.

castor-oil, (plant) *zurma*.

castrated, *tauri**.

castration, *fidiya, pidia*.

casualty, see **accident**.

cat, n. *muzuru, muzulu, mazuru* m., fem. *kanwa* or *kyanwa*, pl. *kyanwuna, kyanwai, māge, mussa, mūsa*, pl. *mussoshi, mussai* (S.); spec. tortoise-shell or spotted c. *tsawarwara*; tabby bush c. *tsara*; civet-c. *jibda, māgen tantal, muzurun juda, muzurun tantal, kyanwartantal, tunkun jibda*; African palm civet or genet *madadashi*; wild c. *jimolo, baudari, tunku, wazagi* (S.); serval-c. *rabji, rabi*, robe*, inyawara*.

cataract, n. (or corneal ulcers) *hakiya* or *hekiya, tsauriya, tsauriya*.

catch, tr. v. *kāma, ruski, chāfa, chāfe, sarḡe*; to c. a cold, e.g. I caught cold *sanyi ya kama ni* (lit. the cold caught me); to c. up *chika da*; catching *chāfiya*; to c. intr. (of a fire) *haḡaka*.

caterpillar, hairy, n. *gizāka*, *gisaka*, *kisāka**, *tsutsa*, *gama-toro*; an edible c. *tsama*; a light green c. *wutan ganye*.

cat-fish, *gondo* (S.), *kulume*, *mari*, *kurungu*; electric c.-f. (*Malapteruruselectricus*) *min-jiriya* (K.), *mijiriya* (S.).

cattle, n. coll. *dabba* or *dabbo*, pl. *dabboni* or *dabbobi*; (cows) *shanu*; c. disease *bingiri*; humped c. *jāba-jāba*; c.-shed *garke*, *gerke*, *garge* (S.); a place for feeding c. *makiyaya*; a Fulani c. camp *rugga*.

caught, particip. adj. (of a fire) *gasashe*, fem. *gasashiya*, pl. *gasasu*; to get c. in falling *sage*.

caul, *rigar haifuwa*.

cause, n. 1. (origin or ground) *gutsu*, *sabābi*, *sanadi*; without c. *babu sabābi*.

2. (reason adduced in proof or explanation) *dalīli*, *sabili*, *hamzari*, e.g. they give a c. (i.e. a reason for confidence) and an excuse *su kan kawo dalīli da hujā*; hence often applied to texts from the Koran.

cause, tr. v. *sa*, *ba* or *bada*, *māida*, *yi*, *rataya**, *tāsāda**; these are construed as follows: I caused him to laugh *na ba shi dariya*, he caused me to fear *ya ba ni tsoro*, he caused

him to sleep *ya sa shi shi kwanche* or *ya māida shi shi kwanche*.

causeless, adj. *babu sababi*, *kakarai*.

caution, n. (prudent care) *hankali*.

cautious, n. *da hankali*; to be c. *yin hankali*.

cavalry, n. *barde*, pl. *barade*; c. with shields *garki* or *gari-kine*; collection of c. *kangar**.

cave, n. *kogo*, pl. *koguna*, *maraya**.

cease, intr. v. *daina* or *dena*, e.g. she did not c. *ba ta daina ba*, tr. she ceased crying *ta daina kuka*; the rain ceased *ruwa ya dauke*.

ceaselessly, adv. *kul yaushē*.

ceil, tr. v. *yāba*, *yābe*.

ceiled, particip. adj. *yababbe*, fem. *yababba*, pl. *yababbu*.

ceiling, *damren-guga*, *dauren-guga*.

celebrate, tr. v. (to praise, honour) *yin yabo*.

celebrated, particip. adj. *yababbe*, fem. *yababba*, pl. *yababbu*.

celebrity, n. *yabo*.

celestial, adj. *mai-sama*, spec. applied to God.

cement, (used in making roofs) *ḥabarkiya*, *katsi*.

cemetery, n., see **burial-place**.

centipede, n., a harmless c. *shanshani*, *sonsoni**, pl. *shan-shanu*, *aimaka* (S.), *daidaya*; see **millipede**.

centre, n. *tsāka*, *tsākiya*; spec. c. of the inside of thatch roof *kwando*.

certain, adj. 1. (assured, true) e.g. c. (i.e. true) words *maganatabbatachiya*; are you c.? *ka tabbata? ka tabbata* or *ka shaida*; to be c. *sakankanche*, *tābata*, *tābache*; to make c. *yin tabbas*, *wajabta*.

2. (one, some) *wani*, fem. *wata*, *wota*, pl. *wadansu*, *wansu*, *wasu*, *wosu*; cf. a 2; to express a c. person known but unnamed (= so-and-so) *kaza*, e.g. a c. person passed *mutum kaza ya wuche*.

certainly, adv. *da gaskiya*, *an che*, *hakika*, *lābudda*, *labuddi*, *tabbas*, *takar* (K.); c. is expressed also by means of *tabbata*, e.g. he is c. there *ya tabbata nan*, *babu shakka*.

certainty, n. *gaskiya*.

certificate, n. *lāya**.

certified, particip. adj. *shaidadde*, fem. *shaidadda*, pl. *shaidaddu*.

certify, v. *hakikanta*.

cesspit, n. *salga*, pl. *salgagi*.

Chad, pr. n. of lake, *Tsada* or *ruwan Tsada*; see **Benué**.

chafe, intr. v. (to feel irritated) *jin haushi*; he chafed at this *ya ji haushin wannan*.

chaff, n. *dusa* (K.), *dussa* (S.), *kaikai*, *soshiya*, *kona*; small piece of c. *tsinki*.

chagrin, n. *haushi*.

chain, n. *sarka*, *salka*, pl. *sarkuna* or *sarkoki*; coll. chains *sasāri*; c. armour *sulke*.

chair, n. *kujera*, *kushera**.

chalk, n. *aljibus*, *alzibus*; chalk or white earth used for bleaching thread *alli*.

chamber, n. *daki*, pl. *dakuna*; very small c. or closet *loloki*, pl. *lolokai*.

chamberlain, n. *madaki*, *madai*.

chamber-pot, *shāda*.

chameleon, n. *hawainiya* (K.), *hawaniya*, *hanwawa* (S.).

champion, *gamzo*.

chance, n., see **accident**, **opportunity**.

chance, impers. v., it chanced *ya faru*.

change, v. 1. tr. and intr. *sauya*, *sawaya*, *sawoya*.

2. tr. *maida*, *maishe*, *musaya*, *musayi*, *musaye*; to c. one's mind *sake shawara*, *sāke*, *saki*.

3. intr. *mayas da*, *rikida*, *jirkita*, the last referring to

any c. of position whether material or figurative; e.g. he changed his body *ya sauya* or *sawaya jikinsa*, I changed to a moslem *na sauya musulmi*, the king has changed (the value of) the Spanish dollar *sariki ya maida kurdin madafa*, my master changed my wages *ubangijina ya sake ladana*, I am changing into some creature or other *ina rikida wani abu*, I changed myself into a bird *na rikida tsuntsuwa*, they changed sides *sun swaɓa juna*.

change, n., e.g. of money *kwaro*, *chiko*; (alteration) *jirkita*.

changed, particip. *sauyaye*, fem. *sauyaya*, pl. *sauyayu*; *sakakke*, fem. *sakakkiya*, pl. *sakakku*; *rikidadda*, fem. *rikidaddiya*, pl. *rikidaddu*.

changing, participial n. *sakiwa*, *sauyi*, *jirkitawa*, for the application of the latter cf. *jirkita* under **change**.

chapping, e.g. of skin *fäso*.

chapter, n. (division of a book) *kai*, *sura**, pl. *surori**, e.g. the tenth c. *kai na-goma* or *sura ta-goma*.

character, n. 1. (disposition) *hali*, e.g. such is his c. *halinsa shi ke* or *halinsa ke nan*; *tabi'a*, *dabi'a*.

2. (good repute) *sunu*; he bears a high c. *sunansa nagari ne*; see **fame**.

3. to have a certain c. is expressed by means of the v. *tarika*, e.g. he is a quarrelsome c. (he is always quarrelling) *ya tarika faɗa*.

characteristic, n. *hali*, pl. *hālaye*; theft is a c. of the thief *sata hālin ɓarawo*.

charcoal, n. 1. *gawayi*, pl. *gawaye*, not used of burning c. for which cf. 2.

2. burning c. *garwashi*, pl. *garwashoski*.

3. charcoal-tree, a small tree *kiriya*, from which is made smith's c. *garwashin kiriya*.

charge, v. 1. (to load) *chika* or *ɗora*, e.g. they have charged their guns *suka ɗora bindiga*.

2. (to command) *hakumche*, *hakumta*.

3. (to rush on, to attack) *faɗi* (*bisa*, *bisa ga* or) *a bisa*.

charity, n., see **alms**.

charm, n. 1. gen. whether written or of any other kind *māgani*, *lāya*, pl. *lawaye*, *layu*; *hatumi*, *katumi**, *sakatu**, *bara*, *talili*; *sunan Allah* (lit. the name of God), this is used of various charms

which are written on a smooth board, the ink from which is washed off and swallowed.

2. spec. a c. to promote a successful deal *tsārāka*; stone c. for woman's neck *kandu* or *kandun ido*; c. against injury in war *layan sabani*; an inverted c. placed in a field as a charm against thieves *kwanda*, *kunda*, *tsāfi*; love charms *tsibbu*, *mantawa**; c. to render anyone invisible *lāyar zana*; c. to ward off arrows *sha bara*, *lāyar sabani*; injurious c. *sammu* or *sammo*; see also *tira*.

charmer, snake-, n. *gardi*, pl. *gardawa*, *turde*, pl. *tur-dawa*.

charms, 1. to write c. *tsubbu*; one who writes c. *mai-tsūbbu*; one who utters deadly c. *maita*.

2. (female attractions) see **beauty**.

chase, n. (hunting) *farauta*.

chase, v. 1. (to hunt) *yin farauta*.

2. (to drive away) *kore*.

chaste, adj. *tsari*.

chattels, *urula*.

cheap, adj. *da araha*, *da arha*; it is c. *shina da araha*; a c. sale *gwanjo*.

cheapness, n. *araha*, *arha*.

cheat, n. 1. (fraud) *kura*, *riba*, *rikichi*.

2. (one who cheats) *machi kūra*, pl. *machiya kūra*; *mai-chinkura*; *mai-riba*, pl. *masu-riba* or *mai-riba da kura*; *mai-zambachi*, *mai-zambata*.

cheat, v. *chin kura*, *chin riba*, *rikiche*, *rinta*, *zambache*, *zambata*, *sāfa* (S.), *zantara*.

cheating, n. *kura*, *hayinchi*; see **prec**.

check, v. 1. (reprove) *kwaba*.

2. (hinder, restrain) *hāna*.

cheek, n. *kumchi*, pl. *kumatu*; hair on the cheeks *saje*; a man with fat cheeks *dan kumatu*.

cheer, v. *bada murna*, *yin murna*.

cheese, n. *chukumara*, *chuku*.

cheetah (or hunting leopard), *rabbi*, *gundumau**.

chew, v. tr. *tamna*, *tona*, *tauna*, *tsuke*, *tūke*, e.g. we are chewing kola-nut *muna tamna goro*.

chewed, particip. *tamnanne*, fem. *tamnanna*, pl. *tamnannu*.

chewing, n. *tamna*, *tsiko* (K.), *tsuku*.

chew-stick, (i.e. name of trees) *marke*, *marike*, *tafashiya*.

chicken, n. *dan tsāko*, *tsiyako*, pl. *yan tsāko*.

chief, n. *bagare*, pl. *garewa*,

baba, e.g. he is their c. *shi ne babansu*, also in sense of a c., a great man; *sariki*, often in the sense of head or president of any body, trade etc.; *ido* (lit. eye) is used in poetry thus, behold Bello, chief over his kingdom *duba ga Bello idon malki nai; tunari**; see under *fadawa*.

child, n. 1. (son or daughter) *da*, connect. *dan*, fem. *diya*, pl. *yaya*, *yayaye* and *ya*, connect. *yan*.

2. (young person) *yaro*, pl. *yara*.

3. a very young c., an infant up to one year of age *jariri*, *jarili*, *yarili*, *jinjiri*; spec. c. carried on a woman's back *bumbu*, *goyo*, *goiyo*; a c. which dies soon after birth *dan wabi*.

4. with c., see **pregnant**.

childhood, n. *yarinta*, *yananchi* (K.), *yarantaka* (S.), *kurichiya*, *kuruchiya*.

childishness, n. *halin yaro*, *halin kankanta*, *kuruchiya* or *kurchiya*.

chill, n. *funturu*, especially that felt at night.

chillies, *barkono*.

chin, n. *hāba*, pl. *hābohi*; double c. *maroro* or *malolo*; the lower part of the c. *leke* (S.).

China, n. geogr. *Sin**.

chip, to c., e.g. with a hammer *kwarsana*.

chisel, n. *kurufi**, *furufi**.

choice, *zabe*, *zabi*, *'zabantaka*, *zabanchi*.

choke, tr. and intr. v. *māküre*; to cause to c. *sumanche*, *sunanche*.

choking, due to swallowing anything, n. *mākūra*, *kwāra**.

choose, v. *zaba*, *zabe*; spec. to c. out one or more pieces of anything (to select) *wari*.

chosen, 1. pass. v. *zabu*.

2. particip. *zababbe*, fem. *zababba*, pl. *zababbu*.

Christian, a, n. *annasāra*, also used as coll. pl. Christians; to become a C. *nasaranta*.

Christianity, n. *addin an-nasara*.

church, i.e. a place of worship, n. *masallachi*, pl. *masallatai*.

churn, v. *burka*, *burga*, *tunk-wiya nono*.

churning, *tuguwa**.

cicatrice, n. *tambo*, *tabo*.

cigarette, stump of a *guntun taba*.

cinders, n. *garwashi*, pl. *garwashoshi*; *garwashin wuta*.

circle, n. *bukāri**, *kawanya* (K.).

circling, of a bird over its prey *jewa*, *shawāge*.

circuit, to make the c. of, tr. v. *kewaye, kewayi, yin kewaye*; see under **round**.

circumcise, v. *yin kāchiya* or *yanke kāchiya, sālasād da* (S.).

circumcision, n. *kāchiya, sala-suwa, sha*.

circumspectly, *dubanan dubanan, lekānan lekānan*.

cistern, large, n. *bingi, kurkūd-dufi, kunduddufi* or *kudud-dufi*; a c. for collecting rain-water *kwiya, kuyaka*.

citizen, n. *dan-gari*, pl. *yan-gari*.

city, n. *birni*, pl. *birane* or *birnuwa*, used of large and walled towns, while *gari*, pl. *garuruwa, garuruka* and *garigaru*, is applied to less important and to country towns.

civet-cat, n. *jibda, juda* (K.), *magen tantal*; frankincense obtained from the c. *turare*.

civil-war, *basasa*.

claim, n. *alhaki*, e.g. the c. of one defrauded.

claim, tr. v. (to demand as one's own) *nema*, e.g. I claim my own *ina nema abin nawa*; to claim a debt *bim bashi*; cf. *bi*.

clamour, n. (loud outcry) *kururuwa, dūmi, surutu* (S.).

clamour, v. (to cry aloud) *yin kururuwa*.

clan, n. *dangi*, pl. *dangogi*; *iri*, pl. *irare*.

clang, the c. of metal on metal *kyang*.

clap, v. (to strike the hands together in applauding etc.) *tāfa* or *yin tafi* (K.), *yin tabi* (S.), *ban hannu*.

clapping, *tafi, tabi* (S.).

clarify, by straining, tr. v. *tachi*.

clasp, n. *kugiya*.

clasp, v. (to embrace) *rungume*.

claw, n. of an animal, *akaifa, dagi*.

claw, to *yayaga*; see **scratch**.

clay, n. *yimbu, yumbu, yambu*, e.g. they are built of c. *an gina su da yimbu*; a lump of c. *burugushe** or *burbushki**; a yellow c. used as a dye for women's faces *dāla*; white c. *karmatako, karmantako* (K.); a hard c. soil *kekuwa*.

clean, adj. 1. gen. *sārai*, of wheat *chari* or *tsari*.

2. (ceremonially and so also morally c., pure) *halal, halas, tsari* or *chari*.

clean, tr. v. e.g. with water *darwaye, dariwaye**, *kwāla, kwarkware* (S.); of the hair, garments etc. *tsabta*, cf. *wanke*; (to scrape off, c. off) *gogi, goge*; to c. from husks *surfe, surfa*; (to render c.) *yin sarai*,

māida, sarai, gyarta; to c. the teeth *kwalkwale*; to c. raw cotton *shība*.

cleaned, particip. *gyartache*, fem. *gyartatta*, pl. *gyartattu*; *wankakke*, fem. *wankakka*, pl. *wankakku*; c. from husks etc., of rice, *shanshere, surfaffe*.

cleaning, of cotton *shībi*.

cleanliness, n., of the person, clothes etc. *tsabta, tsapta*.

cleanness, n. *karari*; esp. in a religious or moral sense *tsarki, tsalki*; cf. seq.

cleanse, tr. v. (of the heart) *tsarkaka* or *charkaka*.

clear, adj. 1. (of liquids, the sky etc.) *da tachi, tangarai, tangaran*; the sun looks like clearing *gari yaishirinsarari*.

2. (manifest, plain) *zahiri, sārāi, kwarai*.

3. (pure, irreproachable) *tsari* or *chari*.

clear, tr. v., to c. ground before ploughing, *sāsabe*.

clear, to make, tr. v. (to explain) *waye*, e.g. this matter is difficult, I wish you to make it c. to me *abin nan da wuya ina so ka waye mini*.

clearing, c. ground for sowing *zafa* (S.).

clearly, adv. (manifestly, obviously) *sārāi, kwarai*.

clearness, *tachi*.

cleave, tr. v. (to cut with a blow) *sare*.

cleave to, to, intr. v. *rike, like, rika, kakkafe, riki, dāfe*.

clerk, *akawu*.

clever, adj. 1. i.e. in an art or profession *gwani, goni*, pl. *gwanaye, gwannai*.

2. gen. (astute or cunning) *shaitan*, i.e. as c. as Satan.

cleverly, adv. (cunningly) *da wayo*.

cleverness, n. 1. (in an art etc.) *gwaninta*.

2. gen. *azanchi, budi, hiki-ma, fahimta*.

click, made with tongue or teeth, a sign of vexation *kwafo, kyache* (S.).

climb, v. *hawa* or *hau*, e.g. he climbed the hill *ya hawa dutsi* or *ya hawa bīsa dutsi*.

clitoris, *filaniya, tsele*.

cloak, n. *alkyabba*, pl. *alkyabbu, riga**.

cloak, tr. v. 1. (to put on a c.) *sa alkyabba*.

2. (to conceal) *rufe, rufi* or *rife*.

clock, n. *sa'a, lotu*, loto**. Hausas who are acquainted with clocks express 'o'clock' thus, three o'clock *sa'a uku*; half past eight o'clock *sa'a takwas da shashi*; *karife* is

also used in describing the time, as the hours are often marked by beating iron, thus, what time is it now? *karife nawa ne yanzu*; it is two o'clock *ya yi karife biyu*.

clogs, wooden *dan garafai* (S.).

close, v. 1. tr. *sāda*; to c. a door, box etc. *rufe, rufi* or *rife, like*; to c. the fist *tan-kwashe*; to c. a hole *done, danne, dāne*; the door is closed (also in fig. sense) *an rufe kofa*.

2. to c. with, used of a bargain or agreement *yarda*.

close by, adv. *kusa, daura da, dubbara da, dabda, dafda, dabrada*.

closed, particip. (fastened up) *girkakke*, fem. *girkakkiya*, pl. *girkakku*; cf. phr. the road is c. *hanya ta mutu*.

closet, *bayan gida, makewaye*; (small room) *loloki*, pl. *lolo-kai*.

cloth, n., spec. names of stuffs are: blue c. *shudi*; blue, shiny c. *turkudi*, pl. *turkudda*; c. formed of blue and white strips *keke*; native blue or black c. with silk inwoven *ridi*; black striped c. from Ilorin *bunū*; a black and white women's c. *zalwani*; a coarse white c. *gwado*; a c.

with white stripes *gwanda*; a white c. with red stripes *gorori* (K.); a black and red c. *kudi*; a c. with alternate strips of two colours *luru*; a variegated c. *zaura, zawara* or *idon zaura*; variegated c. used for turbans *barmushi*; a kind of velvet c. *yapki, karamiski, kadamiski*; a red c. *shāli*; a whitenative c. *alfinti, dimi**, *zauwati*; a c. that has no seam in it *liwāsa*; woollen c. *mulufi* or *malufi*; a brocade c. worked with gold inside *dibajo*; (a piece of c. used in various senses and spec. = Engl. 'a cloth') a loin c. *bante, banche*, pl. *bantuna*; a shoulder c. *lēki*; a small piece of c., a c. *kalkafi*; a woman's c. *zāne*, pl. *zannuwa* or *zanna, gyauto* (K.); c. gusset in a tobe *shiga*; a strip of c. *zugu*; a piece of c. made of about twenty strips *wawa*; a roll of c. *turumi*; long strip of c. *ausagi*; a single thickness of c. *palle*; a double thickness of c. *ribe, riḡi, rubi*; a narrow strip of c. *fari*; a blue pepper and salt pattern c. *zabako, saki, swaki*; a narrow silken line in c. *ḡarage*; a breadth of c. between two seams *chiki*; a professional

c. hammerer *mubugu*, *mubugi*, *mabugi*; see also *barbaro*, *hamakuku*, *mai-sanda-a-chi-goriba*.

cloth-measure, n. cubit *kāmu*; 8 *kāmu* = 1 *zāne*, the last = about 15 ft.; a short length of cloth *kyalle*.

clothe, tr. v. *sitira*, *sutura* and *sitirta*, *tufata*, *tufasad da*; *sa* (lit. to put on or upon), e.g. to put on one's clothes *sa riguna*; e.g. the brokers who have made unjust profits shall be clothed with garments of fire *dillalai fa masuriba da kura a sa ma su riguna wuta*.

clothes, n. (i.e. clothing) *tu-fuwa*; coll. *tūfa* as well as its pl. *tūfafi*; *riguna*; spec. beautiful c. *sutura*, *sitira*, *haiba**, *abin rufa*; fine, expensive c. *kambi**; old c. *keso*, *tsumma*, *ragga* (S.).

clothing, n., e.g. fine c., beautiful c.; cf. prec.

cloud, n. *haḅaki**, pl. *haḅaka*; special names are: moving c. *gilgije*, *girgije*, *girigiji*; small white, still clouds *lumshi*; a c. that produces a shower *zirnaniya*, *jītau*; clouds coll. *gajimare*, *gashimare**; to rise in clouds like smoke *turnike*; the dust

rose in clouds *kura ta turnike*.

cloudy, adj. expr. by *da* with prec., e.g. *da lumshi*.

cloven, particip. *rababbe*, fem. *rababba*, pl. *rababbu*.

cloves, n. coll. *kanumfari*, *kanunfari*, *hanchin kaḁe* (S.).

club, n. *gwami*, *guduma*, pl. *gudumai*; a c. for throwing *kere*.

coal, n., see **charcoal**.

coat, n. 1. *riga*.

2. c. of mail made of cloth and padded with cotton, wool, etc. *lifidi*; a white cloth c. *gwado*.

coaxing, *lallāshi*, *rarrashi*.

cobra, (Naia nigricolis) *ku-machi*, *kumurchi*, *kwamachi*, *kwamarchi*, *sarikin machizai*.

cobweb, *zaren gizo*, *tautauchi*, *yana*.

cock, n. 1. (male of poultry) *zakāra*, pl. *zakāru*; *mai-chara*, *mai-chara*.

2. to express precisely the male of birds *miji* or *namiji* (hen *mache*) must be used where the gender is not denoted by different words.

cockroach, n. *kyankyaso*, *ka-fata*.

cocoa-nut palm, *kwakwa attagara*.

coerce, tr. v. 1. (restrain) *hăna*.

2. see to force.

coffee, n. *gahanwa, gahwa*.

cogitate, v. *tuna*, the obj. of thought is constr. with *da* or *ga*.

cogitation, n. *tunane*.

cohabit with, v. *gamu da mache*.

coiffure, a helmet-shaped c. worn by women *kitso*.

coil, intr. v. *năde*; intr. and refl. to c. up *năđu*.

cold, n. 1. *đări, sanyi, sansan-ya*; I feel the c. or I feel c. *ina jin đări*.

2. (catarrh) *đări, mājina, masassara**, *mura, sanyi*, e.g. I have caught c. or a c. *đări* (or *sanyi*) *ya kama ni*; a man with a c. in the head *mai-shako* (S.).

3. spec. c. felt at night *funturu*.

4. the c. season *funturu*.

cold, adj. *đări, da đări, da sanyi*; it is c. *ya yi đări*; e.g. c. water *ruwan đări, ruwan sanyi, sanyin ruwa*, they are c. *suna da đări*; to be stiff with c. *sandare*.

colic, *tsamki*.

collapse, v. to *afka, auka, abka*.

collapse, I collapsed *na fadi reran*, or *na fadi warwar*.

collar, n., spec. a padded cloth collar used in war to protect the back of the neck *dagumi*; to seize a person by the c. *dagume*.

collar, to make a *kalmāsa, kalmisa* (S.), *kalmashe*.

collar-bone, *alan gaba, alan kafađa*.

collect, v. 1. tr. *tāra, tarshe, jibche, jibta*; spec. to c. a debt *biyo bashi, đauki bashi*.

2. intr. *taru, an tara*.

collected, particip. *tararre*, fem. *tararra*, pl. *tararru*.

collection, n. (of men and things) *taro* or *taru*, pl. *torori*; *tsibi*; *chushe*.

collector of taxes, n. *jakāda**, *jekāda**.

colloquy, n. *zanche*.

colour, n. *launi*, pl. *launoni, launoka, rini* or *rina, jinsi* (S.); blue c. *shuni* or *juni**.

coloured, particip. *tūrarre**, fem. *tūrarra**, pl. *tūrarrru**.

colt, n. *đan dukushi* or *đan dukushi*.

comb, n. *masarchi, mashachi, matsefa, matsefi, masoshi, shata*.

comb, c. of a cock *tsoro*.

comb, tr. v. *gyarta, tsefe, tsatsefe, shata* or *shache, tsěfi*, e.g. I am combing the hair of my head *ina shata gashin kaina*.

combing, *tsīfa*.

come, intr. v. *zo* ; (used with pronominal forms ending in *na*) *zuwa, zaka* ; *tafo* or *taho**, e.g. c. to me *zo* or *tafo ma ni*, but when used to invite attention or cooperation *yaka*, fem. *yaki*, e.g. c. ! let us sit down and converse together *yaka mu zamna mu yi zanche tare* ; we came to a city *mu-ka zaka ga wani birni*. Some idiomatic combinations of c. with preps. etc. are : to c. about or to c. to pass *faru* ; to c. at *isa, ishe, iske* ; to c. back *darwo, dawayo, komo, birkito* ; to c. by or acquire, obtain *samo* ; to c. down *shida, shide, sabka* ; to c. in *shigo* ; to c. out *fito* and (with pronominal forms ending in *na*) *firfitowa* ; to c. out from *fito* ; to c. quickly *sheko* ; to c. to *gabato* ; c. here to me *gabatoni* ; to c. towards *iso, jirgo* ; to c. up *taso* ; to c. up with *tarda, taras da*.

comfort, n. 1. (satisfaction) *dadi, dadin zuchiya*.

2. (consolation) *hankuri, hakuri, hankura* or *hakura, sanyi* or *sanyin zuchiya*.

comfort, tr. v. *bada hankuri, sanyaya**, e.g. he comforted them *ya bada ma su hankuri*.

comfortable, to feel, intr. v. *jin dadi, jin dadin zuchiya* ; he felt c. *rai ya kwanta*.

comforted, to be, (feel consoled) *jin sanyi*, I am c. *zuchiyata tana jin dadi*.

coming, participial n. *zuwa, zowwa, zakuwa* ; c. back *ko-mowa* ; c. here *tafowa* ; they are c. here *suna tafowa*.

command, n. (order) *hakumchi, hukumchi, abin hakumta, abin hakumchi, kaliye, umarni*.

command, v. *hakumta, hakumche, yin umarni, umarche*.

commander, n. (leader, chief) *baba*, e.g. tell me the name of their c. *ka fadi ma ni sunan babansu*.

commandment, n., see **command**.

commence, v., see **begin**.

commend, see **approve of**.

commission, 1. a c. to purchase *saftu, sabtu, sautu, sako, dolashi*.

2. broker's c., see **brokerage**.

3. (order) *izni*.

commit, v. 1. (to do, to perpetrate) *yi*, he committed theft *ya yi sata* ; one who commits adultery *mai-yin zina*.

common, adj. 1. (shared in

by all) *na duka*, e.g. their common good fortune *arziki na su duka*.

2. (defiled) *haram*.

companion, n. *kama*, pl. *kamannu*, *aboki*, *dan-uwa**; a c. of the same age *tsara*; a play c. *taubashi*, *abokin wasa*.

companionship, n. *tsaranche*, *gūfi* (S.), *abuta*.

company, n. *taro* or *taru*, pl. *tarori*, *jama'a*; in c. (together) *tare*; in c. with *tare da*.

compare, v. 1. gen. *misalta*, *kwatanta*.

2. to c. by measuring *gwalgwada* or *gwargwada*, *gwargwado*.

compass, iron, n. *bukari**.

compass (mariner's), for points of see *kusuruwa*.

compassion, n. *tausai* or *tausayi*, *jāje*, *jaijaito**, *jinkai*, *sauna*; to feel c. *jin* (or *yin*) *tausayi*.

compassionate, the, (of God) *errahimi**.

compel, v. *yin tilas*, *sa tilas*, *tilasa*, *tilas da*, *dolata*, *tan-kwasa*, *yin wofi*, e.g. you c. me *kana yin tilas* or *kana sa ni tilas*, I was compelled to work *an sa ni tilas aiki*, I compelled the fellow *na tilasa mutum*, I was compelled *an tilas da ni*, if he refuses c.

him *idan ya ki a sa shi tilas*; see **compulsion**, **force**.

compensate, to *ramka*.

compensation, *ramko*, *rāmu-wa*.

competition, *takara*.

complain, v. *kururuta*, *kai k̄ara*.

complainant, *mai-kawon k̄ara*, *maḡari*.

complaint, n. 1. (loud expression of grief, pain, etc.) *kururuwa*.

2. (sickness) *chiwo*, *chiwuta* or *chuta*.

3. (a grievance, a cause of c.) *k̄ara*; and so

4. (accusation, a legal term) *k̄ara*, *sara**, *abin sara*.

complaisance, *bajinta*; to comply with *yin bajinta*.

complement, n. *chiko*, *abin ch̄-kawa*, *yayalwachi**, *kishiya**.

complete, adj. 1. *chikakke*, fem. *chikakka*, plur. *chikakku*, *fāfafa*.

2. (of number) *ba gaira*, e.g. a c. hundred *dari ba gaira*, lit. a hundred without deduction.

complete, tr. v. *gāma*, *hāda**, *īda*, *k̄arasa*; (to bring to an end) *ḡare*.

complete, to be, intr. *chika*; cf. seq.

completed, to be, *chika*, *ḡare*;

often used at end of compositions, stories, etc., e.g. the song is c. *waka ta chika*.

completely, *atattare, kap*.

completion, n. *chikawa*; note of c. placed at end of composition *iyaka*.

compose, tr. v. 1. (of an author) *wallafa, yi*.

2. (to settle or decide a dispute) *sada, raba*.

comprehend, v. (to understand) *yin fahimta, ji*.

compress, tr. v. *matse, matsi, mache, dankara**.

compressed, to be, intr. and pass. *matsu*.

compulsion, *abin tilas*; under c. *tilas, da tilas*; it was a case of c. *wofi ya shiga*.

compute, v., see **calculate**.

comrade, n. *kama**, pl. *kamannu**, *aboki*, pl. *abokai, abokin wasa*.

conceal, tr. v. *rufe, rufi* or *rife**; *boye, boyi*, intens. *bobboye, jiche* (S.), *kifa* (K.), *sulla*; *kawaichi*, e.g. a crime; to c. oneself, to hide *boya* or *boye*, also with *kai*, e.g. he concealed himself under the leaves *ya boye kansa daga kalkashin sansami*; to c. oneself (of lying in wait) *fake*.

concealed, particip. *rufaffe*,

fem. *rufaffa*, pl. *rufaffu*; *boyayye*, fem. *boyayya*, pl. *boyayyu*.

concealment, n. *boya, boyewa*; c. of defects in goods offered for sale *tadilisi*; place of c. *maboya, wurin boyewa*; see **ambush**.

concede, tr. v. 1. (to agree to) *yarda*.

2. (to yield up) *bari, bar*.

conceit, *fadin kai, hini* (S.), *homa* (K.), *tashin kai, fariya*; see **pride**.

conceive, tr. v. 1. (of thought) *tammaha, tamaha*.

2. (of the female sex) *haifu, samu chiki*.

concern, n., see **affair and business**.

concerned about, be, v. *kula* constr. with direct acc. or with *da* or *ga**; *ruwa* used with subst. v., e.g. you are not concerned *babu ruwanka*.

concerning, prep. *bisa ga*, with prons. *gare*; *da, saba da, sabad da, sabaddo* or *sabo da**, *gami da, game da*.

conciliation, *saduwa*.

concoct, to c. a story *damre magana*.

concord, n. *saduwa*; see **agree**.

concubine, n. *sadaka*, pl.

sadāku, wahaya (a neglected wife or c.), *bora**; *kwarkwara, kwarakwara, makubliya, mutumniya**.

condemn, tr. v. *kāda, bāda laifi, laifa*, kūsanchi*.

condemnation, n. *kayaswa, kyazwa, kaye, alhaki, lalata*, the last quite general = perdition.

condition, n. (state) *zama, zamanchi*.

condition, to come into a, or state *zama, zam* (S.).

condolence, (on any misfortune other than death) *jaijaito*; c. in bereavement *ta'aziya**.

conduct, n. (habit) *tsabi'a, dabi'a*; letter of safe-c. *watikal* (or *wasikal*) *lamuni*.

conduct, tr. v. (to lead, bring) *kai*.

cone, the form of a c. *zallo*; c.-shaped *da zallo*.

coney, (Klip-Das), see **cony**.

confectionery, n. *allewa, alewa*.

confer, v. 1. (to consult together) *yin shawara*.

2. (give, bestow) *ba, bada*.

conference, *kuchi*, pl. *kuche-kuche*; see **talking**.

confess, v. *yin furuchi, yin furchi, yin huruchi, banya, dauki laifi*.

confession, n. *furuchi, furchi, huruchi*.

confidence, n. (reliance, trust) *amāna, aminchi, aminchewa, dangana, saduda, shaduda**; to have c. in *dangana, dogare, saduda*, e.g. I have c. in... *ina dangana da...*; we have c. in thee *mu dogare ka*; to betray c. *chinye amana, chin amana*; to justify c. (to be trustworthy) *yin aminchi*.

confine, n. (boundary) *iyaka*.

confined, adj. (narrow) cf. *kumchi*; to be, v. (of women) *haifu*.

confirm, to *tabbache*.

conflagration, n. *gobāra, turnuka*, e.g. prov. *gida biyu maganin gobāra* two houses are a provision against a c.

conflict, n. *faɗa, fama, yaɓi*.

conflict, intr. v. *kāra, yin kāro*, e.g. this conflicts with that *wannan ya yi kāro da wanchan*.

confluence, n. of rivers, *magangami, magāma*.

confounded, to be, v. *damu*.

confuse, tr. v. (to confound or perplex) *dāme, dāma, rikita, shirɓata*.

confused, to be, v. *damu, sha kai*; he was c. *ya sha kansa*.

confusedly, adv. *damai, marbika**.

confusion, n. *damasa*, *marbika**, *damuwa*, *kirmiche* (S.), *rigima*, *shirḡache*, *purmutsi* (K.).

congeal, intr. v. *chībaru*, e.g. my blood is congealed with the cold *jinina ya chibaru sabad da dari*, *sandare*.

congratulate, tr. v. *barkata*, *gaishe*, *gaida*.

congratulation, *barka*.

congregate, intr. v. *taru*.

congregation, n. *jama'a*.

conjecture, to *kintata*; see **suppose**.

conjoin, tr. v. *gama*.

conjuring, *rikirkida*.

connections, n. coll. *dangi*, *danga* or *dagi*, pl. *dangogi*, *kabila*.

conquer, tr. v. 1. (to acquire by war) *chi*.

2. (to overcome) *i*, *i ma*, *yin nasara*, *yin nasarchi*, *kāda*, *kāshe*.

consciousness, n. *tunane* (a particip. form), pl. *tunannu*, is used substantively for thought or consciousness.

consent, n. *yarji*.

consent, v. *yarda*, *bada yarji*, *izni*, *karḡa*, so, e.g. do you c. ? I do *kana so ? ina so*.

consequence, n. 1. (effect), e.g. in c. of this *don wannan*,

domin wannan, *don haka*, *sabad da wannan*.

2. (importance), e.g. it is of no c. *babu komi*.

consider, v. 1. gen. *tsokachi* and *yin tsokachi*, *tuna* and *tunane* with *da*.

2. (of a council, deliberation) *yin shāwara*.

consideration, n. (deliberation) *shāwara*.

consolation, n. *hankuri*, *hankurchi*, *hankura*, *hakura*, *hakuri*, *sanyin zuchiya*.

console, tr. v. *bada hankuri*; to be consoled *jin sanyi*.

consort, n. 1., see **companion**, **comrade**.

2. (of married people) *namiji*, *miji*, fem. *mata*.

conspiracy, to form a, v. *gama**.

conspire, intr. v. *yin baki daya*.

constancy, *nāchi*, *nachiya*.

constant, adj. *da nāchi*.

constantly, adv. *ko yaushē*, *kullum**, *kul yaushē**, *tutul*, *tutur*.

constellation, see **star**.

constrain, tr. v. *tilasda* (S.), *tilasa* (K.); see **compel**, **force**.

construct, tr. v. 1. gen. *yi*.

2. spec. of roads *gina*.

consul, n. *gunsul**.

consult, v. 1. intr. (to deliberate) *yin shawara*.

2. tr. v. *yin shawara* constr. with *ma*, *ga*, *da*, e.g. I am going to c. you *za ni yin* (or *in yi*) *shawara da kai*, *shawarta*, *shawarche*.

consultation, n. *shawara*, *roshi**.

consume, tr. v. 1. (used of fire) *lasa*, *lashe*, *kona**, *kone**.

2. (generally) *chi*, *chi da*, *chanye*, *chinye*.

contain, tr. v., see **hold**.

contaminate, tr. v. *yin ka-zamta*.

contemn, *kyale*, see **despise**.

contemplate, tr. v., see **consider**.

contemplation, *māḍai*.

contempt, n. *reni*; an expression of c. *wus*, *wush*; *tsaki*; see **despise**.

contemptuous, adj., see **proud**.

contend, tr. v., see **fight**, **strive**.

content, adj. *kosashe*, pl. *kosassu*; to be c. *koshi*.

content, tr. v. *kosada*, *kosasda*.

contention, n. (disputing) *hanyaniya*, *haniya*, *haya-haya*, *muhawara**, *musuwa*; see **strife**.

contentment, *kwanchiyar hankali*.

contents, (that which is contained) *abin chiki*.

contest, n., see **contention**.

continually, adv., see **constantly**.

continuance, n. *tabbata*, *tabbatawa*, *dawama*, *duma*, *dinga*, *nāchi*, *nachiya*, *zama*, *zaman-chi*; long c. *tsawa*, *tsawanta*.

continue, intr. v. *dawama*, *duma*, *dāḍa*, *daḍi*, *tabbata*, *tabbache*, *dunga*, *kāra**; to c. to exist *kashi**, *kashe**, *kasanchi*; phr. we c. giving thanks *muna dāḍa godiya*; I c. travelling until evening *ina yini tafiya*; they continued thus *suka kāma haka*, he continued crying *ya kāra kuka*.

continuing, *mai-dawama*, *mai-tabbatawa*.

contract, n. *wahabi*.

contract, tr. v. 1. (a disease) *tarda*.

2. to c. the face *damre fuska*.

3. intr. v. (to shrivel up) *yin yaushi*, *yin yoshi*.

4. (to make an agreement) see **agree**.

contradiction, *gardama*.

contribution, n. (e.g. of food) *tarbache*.

contrivance, n. *dabāra*, *du-bāra*, *dibāra*, *chimi**, *wayo*, *waya*, *abin wayo*.

contrive, v. *wayo, wayau*.

control, tr. v., see **restrain**.

convalescence, n. *rangwame*.

convalescent, be, intr. v. *jīn*
or *yīn rangwame, yīn dama,*
wartsaka.

convenient, adj. *sawaba**,
daidai; see **fit, suitable**.

conversation, n. *bātu, zanche*,
pl. *zantatuka, zanzanche, fira,*
hira, tādī, kūrğa (S.), roka*
(Z.), *tankaŭa, zantawa*; hum
of c. *ḍumi**.

converse, intr. v. *tanka, tamka,*
bāta, yīn bātu, yīn zanche,
yīn magana, yīn tādī.

conversing, part. *tankaŭa,*
zantawa.

converted, be, intr. v. *sauya*,
e.g. he was c. from heathenism
to Islam *ya sauya da arna*
musulmi.

convey, tr. v., see **carry**.

convict, n. *ḍan sadaka*.

convince, tr. v. (satisfy by
evidence) *hakikanta*.

convolvulus, a species of
awarwaro, fārin gamu, kafi-
boka, yaryadi, yambururu,
duman kada, yako.

convulsions, n. *mijiriya,*
minjiriya, misiriya.

cony, *agwāda, rema**.

cook, tr. v. *dāfa, dāfe*; c.
without water *tuya, soya*;
cooking *dāfuwa*; to c. meat

with hot stones *sulala*; a
fire for cooking *wutar gāshi*.

cook, n. *mai-dāfi, mai-dāfuwa,*
sarikin wuta.

cooked, be *nīna (S.), nūna*
(K.); c. part. *dāfāfe*; c.
without water *soyayye, fem.*
soyayya, pl. soyayu; well
c. *ninanne, pl. ninannu,*
nunanne, pl. nunannu, tap-
*shi, tafshi, tabshi**; c. food
dāfau.

cooking, *gāshi, dāfuwa*; c.
place *madāfa, wurin dāfa,*
wurin dāfuwa; c. place on
which a pot is set *murufu*;
a c. pan *algīdiri, alkīdiri*;
a c. pot with holes pierced
at the bottom *madam-*
bachī, madamfachi.

cool, adj. *sanya, shanya, da*
sanyi; c.-headedness *sanyin*
hali.

cool, tr. v. *sanya, shanya*;
intr. v. *fuche, huche*.

cooled, part. *sanyayye*.

coop, n. *akurki, pl. akurikai,*
kurki, akurikin kaza.

copaiba, tree *maje, kadaura*.

coping stones, *kalankuwa*.

copper, n. *jan karife* (lit. red
iron), *gachi*; girdle made of
c. *tagula*, tugula**.

coppersmith, the c. bird *ma-*
kwabkwafi.

copy, tr. v., see **imitate**.

copy, to c. a drawing etc.
sifata, sifanta.

coral tree, *majiriya.*

cord, n. *siliya*, pl. *siliyu* or *siliyoyi*; *igiya*, pl. *igoyi* or *igiyoyi*, *yagiya* (S.); a c. to tie trousers round the waist *kubaka.*

coriander seed, *ridi, lidi*; oil made from c. s. *main ridi*; a plant resembling c. *yauḍo, yodo* (S.).

cormorant, *madunḍumi**, *kazar ruwa.*

corn, n. *hatsi*, (wheat) *alkama*; a grain of c. *kwaya*; guinea-c. *dawa*, q.v. *tsaba* (S.); Egyptian c. *masara* (see **maize**); a tuft of c. *geza*, pl. *gezuna*; an ear of c. *kube*; a pit for storing c. *tsunjiya*; to rub or grind c. *tushē, niḳa, daka*; reaped c. laid in rows *sankache, sangache*; a bunch of c. *ḱurāsa* (S.); c. stalks *karandafi* (S.); a woman who sells c. *almuda* (S.), *maauniya, alkwararo* (S.).

corn-stalk, tip of *sullai, siliya.*

corner, n. *kusuruwa*, pl. *kusurwoyi, sukuruwa, sukurwa*; c. of a fence *dungu, lungu.*

corporal, *mai-igiya biu*, lit. the owner of two stripes.

corpse, n. *gāwa*, pl. *gawawaki, mushe, matache*, fem. *matachiya*, pl. *matattu, mamachi.*

corpulence, *kauri, kabri, kosa.*
corpulent, *da kauri, ginshimi, tunturum*; to be c. *kabrara*; see **fat**.

correct, tr. v. (punish) *foro, horo**, *wahalshe.*

correct, adj. *daidai, dēdē, naḱwarai*, fem. *ta-ḱwarai, sārāi, sosai, ainin*; it is c. *ya yi daidai.*

correctly, adv. *daidai, sosai, ḱwarai, sārāi*; to count c. *ḱilga sārāi.*

cost, n. (price) *kurḱi*; what does it c.? *kurḱinsa nawā?* its c. *kurḱinsa, an tayansa, tamaninsa.*

costly, adj. *da tsada*; to be c. *yin tsada.*

cotton, n. *kada*; c. before it has been spun *abduga, auduga*; spun c. *abawa*; white c. for sewing *silili* (K.), *silale* (S.); small piece of twisted c. *shusiya*; seeds of c. plant *an-guriya*; silk c. tree *rimi*; c. from silk c. tree *kaderi*; a bow string used in cleaning c. *laḱe* (S.); a pin used in pressing c. (so called from a resemblance to the *bīda* snake) *ḱan bīda*; a c. farm *garge* (S.); to press c. seeds out of the pods or to roll c. *gurje, gurza*; intertwined c. staples *hāḱan zare*; to clean

raw c. *shīḥa* ; to clean or prepare c. by drawing it out (on the *masāḥi*) *sāḥi*, *yin sutu* ; a white c. brocade *samasadowa* ; for various sp. of cotton see *bakatuka*, *yat-sauri*, *yatabshi*.

cotton-wool, *sāḥi*, *tafa**.

couch, n., of a king or judge, *karāga*.

cough, n. *tari*, *twari*, *toari*.

cough, intr. v. *yin tari*.

council, n. *fāda*, *roshi**, *magan-tawa*, *magantirwa* ; to hold a c. *yin fadanchi*.

councillor, *bafāde*, pl. *fadawa* ; *mafada*, pl. *mafadawa* ; *mafaje* (K.).

counsel, n. *dabāra*, *dubāra*, *dibāra*, *wayo*.

counsel, tr. v., see **advise**.

count, tr. v. *yin kīdaya*, *kilga*, *ķirga*, *yin lisafi*.

count, n. *kīdaya*, *lisafi*.

countenance, n. *fuska*, pl. *fuskoki* or *fuskuna*.

counterfeiting, (coin) *tsira-riya*.

country, n. *kāsa*, pl. *kāsashe*, *kāsaisai*, *gari*, pl. *garuruwa*, *garigari* or *garigaru* ; uninhabited c. *jeji*.

coupling, of animals or birds *barbara* ; of horses, camels etc. *baye*.

courage, n. *mazakuta*, *maza-*

kunta, *mazakunchi*, *tasiri* (S.).

courageous, adj., see **brave**.

course, n., the c. of the world *taki-takin duniya*.

court, n., c. of a king *fāda*, *wurin shawara*, *fage*, *kindigaye* ; c. yard *dandali* ; c. of justice *fagachi*, *fakache** ; to appear in c. *hālara* or *hallara*.

courtiers, n. *fadawa*.

courting, n. *bazaware**, *shiriy**.

cover, n., c. of a book *bango*, pl. *bangaye*, *banguna*, *tadarishi* ; dish c. made of grass *faijai*, pl. *fiyafai* or *fayafayai* ; see **covering**.

cover, tr. v. *rufe*, *rufa*, *rufi*, *rife*, *yāne*, *yin sutura*, *suturta*, *turbude* ; to c. up a hole *done* ; to c. (i.e. to conceal) *jiche* (S.), *kīfa* (K.) ; to be covered *rufu*, *rurrufu* ; to c. (used of horses, bulls, etc.) *yin baye*, *hawa*.

covered, part. *rufaffe*, fem. *rufaffa*, pl. *rufaffu*.

covering, n., e.g. a blanket *bargo*, *mayafi*, *sutura*, *sitira*, *mayāfi*, *marufi*, pl. *marufai* ; *rufa*, *rurrufe* ; the c. of a door *kyauze* ; c. of skins *tunku* ; c. for a horse *mashimfidi*, pl. *mashimfida* ; temporary c. for the night *sayi*, pl. *sayoyi*.

covet, tr. v. *shahawa*, *yin guri*, *yin kãri*; the coveted horse *dokin kãri*.

coveting, n. *hadama*.

covetous, adj. *da rowa*, *mai-rowa*, *makwadaita*, *mai-kawazuchi*, *marowachi*, *da mada*.

covetousness, n. *rowwa*, *rowa*, *kawazuchi*, *tsumulmula* (K.), *zowari*, *zwari*, *zari*, *makwa-daichi*, *madda*.

cow, n. *sãniya*, pl. *shanu*; bush-cow or dwarf-buffalo *bauna*, pl. *hakane*; a black and white c. *nordi*; an old c. the mother of the herd *sayi* (S.); an old lean c. *guzuma*; c.-shed *turken shanu*; a c. tied up by the feet *dunguli*; cow-hide *kilago*, *kilabo*, pl. *kilagai*.

coward, n. *matsorata*, *matsorachi*, *lalafa**, *mairaki*.

cowardice, n. *matsorachi*.

cow-bird, or ox-pecker, *charki*.

cowhide, n., see **cow**.

cow-itch (*Mucuna pruriensis*), *karara*.

cowry shell, n. *ijiya*, *wuri*, pl. *kurdi*, *kudi*, *kawara* or *alkawara*, *yaya*; a large c. s. *gandi*, *sarmadawa*; a bag containing 20,000 shells *kesu*, *kwaroro*, *kwororo*; a large skin bag for cowries *jika*; a grass bag for holding cowries *kwasabro*, *kwasauro*;

a small c. s. *ago*; gambling games played with c. s. *dãra*, *chacha*, *modi*; a faked c. s. used by gamblers, made by joining two shells together so that the lips or back are always exposed *godogo*; a girdle made of c. s. *kiribi*; a c. s. with a hole in it *kuruman wuri*; a blocked-up c. s. with hole at back filled up *likakken wuri*; to throw c. s. in the game of *chacha*, *sãba*, *sãbi**.

crab, n. *kãguwa* (K.), *kwãguwa* (S.), pl. *kagunai*, *kwagunnai*.

crack, intr. v. *tsagu*; to c. or open (used of a wall) *dãre*.

cracking, of the skin under the toes, *kudumbiya*, *kumbudeya*.

crackling, of fire *babaka**.

craft, n. *wayo*.

crafty, adj. *da wayo*, *mai-wayo*, *mai-sane*, *shaitan**; to be c. *hilata*.

crackle, see **starling**.

cram, tr. v. (stuff) *dora*, *dura*.

cramp, n. *mijiriya*, *mijirya*, *minjiriya*, *misiriya*.

cramped, to become, e.g. with cold *sãge*, *gãge*, *kãge*.

crane, crested c. or crown-bird, n. *goraka*, *gauraka*, *garmaka* (S.), *gamraka*.

crawcraw, n., see **crowcrow**.

crawl, intr. v. *rarrafe*, *rubda* (or *rufda*) *chiki*.

crawling, n. *jan jiki*, *rarrafo*.

crazy, *tababbe*, see **lunatic**.

crease, to *tākura*, *takure*.

create, tr. v. *halitta*, *talitta**, *halichi*.

creation, *halitta*.

creator, n. *mahalichi*.

creature, n. *halitta*, *dabba*, *dabbo*, pl. *dabbuna*, *dabbobi*; creatures *talikai**.

credit, n. *bashi*, pl. *basusuka*; one who wants to buy on c. *mai-bashi*; cf. idiom it is to a man's c. *ya chika mutum*.

creditor, n. *mai-bada bashi*, *mabachi*.

creed, n. *imanchi*.

creep, intr. v. *rarrafe*, *sanda*, *sanduwa*, *kurda**; to c. like a cat stealthily *baya-baya**.

cress, water c. *lafuwa*; common or garden c. *labsur*.

crest, of a bird *tukku*, *tukkuwa*, *tsoro*, *zanko*, *tuntu*.

cricket, n., large burrowing c. *gyare*; a small species of c., *tsanya*.

crier, n. (one who cries aloud or proclaims) *babbam bade*, pl. *bambadawa*, *dan ma'abba*; (one who calls to prayer) *mai-kiran salla*, *ladan*.

crime, n. *zamba*, *janaya*.

crocodile, n. *kāda*, *kādo*, pl. *kādōdi*, *kāduna* or *kadunduna*.

crocodile-bird, (black-headed plover) *ladinkogi*, *jakin gulbi*.

crooked, be *fandare**, *lan-kwashe*; of a tree to grow c. *kantare*.

crooked, a *karkache*.

crookedness, *karkāta*.

crop of a bird, n. *maroro*, *malolo*, *kururu*, *barōro*.

cross, (or crossing) n. *gilme**, pl. *gilmomi** or *gilmomi**; a c. *gilmen itache**; c. beam on top of doorway *āzara*.

cross, tr. v. *gilma*, *ketare*, *etare*, *swaba*, *sāba*, *yin ketara*; capable of being crossed *ketaruwa*; it cannot be crossed *ba shi ketaruwa*; to make to c. (i.e. to ferry over) *ketare da* (S.), *ketaras da* (K.), *ketarshe* (before a pron.); to c. intr. *ketaras*.

crossing, n. *ketara*, pl. *ketareketare*.

crossing, part. *ketarewa*.

cross-legged, to sit, intr. v. *tamatela*, *tamataila*, *gijirta*, *ginchira* (S.).

cross-ways, n. *mararraban hanya*.

crouch, to *lābe* (S.), *raḥe* (K.), *raḥa*, *rabke*, *rafake*, *tākura**.

crow intr. v. *yin chāra*, *yin*

- kaḱaruko*, yin *kuḱaruku*;
cock-crow *chāran zakara*.
- crow**, n. species of, *shimkake*;
white-backed c. *hankāka*, pl.
hankaki or *hankaku*.
- crowbar**, *dāgi*.
- crowcrow**, n. (disease) *kaikai*,
kazuwa; a herb supposed to
cure c. *kaskawani*.
- crowd**, n. (of people) *gayya*,
taru, *masu-tariya*, *runduna*,
purmitsi, *kirmitsi* (S.).
- crowding together**, *purmutsi*.
- crowing**, n. *chāra*, *kaḱaruko*,
kaḱarako, *kuḱaruku*, *kiki-rikyi*.
- crown**, to *nāde**.
- cruel**, adj. *muni*, *maketachi*.
- cruelly**, adv. *da mūni*.
- cruelty**, n. *keta*, *mūni*, *zafin rai*.
- crumb**, n. *burugushe*, *burbushi*,
bulbudi, *barbaḱi*, *gutsura*, pl.
gutsure, *diḱḱiga*, *marmashi*.
- crupper**, (of a saddle) *jabaya*,
jakūturi.
- crush**, tr. v. *matse*, *matsa*, *latse*,
laze, *murjeki*, *murtsuki*, *murtsekyi*, *kumtata**, *kuntata**.
- crust**, a dried c. *kaṁzo*, *kanzo*.
- cry**, n. *kuka*, pl. *koke-koke*;
kuwa, *muriya*, pl. *muriyoyi*,
kira, *tsawa*, *tsuwa*, *sowa*; loud
c. *ufu*, *ihu*, *tsuwa tsuwa*, *kururuwa*, *rakaḱi*, *rakwato* (Z.).
- cry**, intr. v. (cry out) yin *kuka*,

- yin *kurūruwa*, yin *tsawa*,
rubsa (*ruḱsa*, *raḱsa* or *rapsa*),
kuka; raise a c. *dora kira*;
c. for joy *guda*; c. wares for
sale *talla*, pl. *tallata*; there
was a c. of fire *ana ta rigimar gobara*.
- cubit**, n. *kāmu*, *sabi*, *zira'i**.
- cuckoo**, lark-heel c. or crow
pheasant *ragon maza*.
- cucumber**, African c. *kur-zunu*.
- cucurbita**, n., see **gourd**.
- cud**, chewing the c. *tūka*.
- cultivate**, tr. v. *noma*, *nomi*,
nome; cultivated land round
a town or village *karkara*,
karikara.
- cultivator**, n. *manomi*, pl.
manoma.
- cummerbund**, *mulufi*, *malufi*.
- cunning**, n., see **craft**.
- cup**, n. *tāsa*, pl. *tāsoshi*, *gora*,
pl. *gorina*, *kwariya*, *koko*;
a large c. *shintali*, *sintali* or *shantali*, pl. *shintalai*.
- cup**, to yin *ma wani kafo*.
- cupboard**, n. *loloki**, pl. *lolokai**.
- cupping**, n. yin *kafo*, *jiniya*.
- curb**, n. *mūdu*.
- curdle**, to *daskāra*; to cause
to c. *daskāre*.
- curds**, n., of milk *guntsari*.
- cure**, tr. v. *warkadda*; to be

cured *warke*; the fool is incurable *mahaukachi ba shi warkewa*.

cured, part. *warkakke*, fem. *warkakkiya*, pl. *warkakku*.

curl, intr. v. (used of a snake) *tākura*.

curls, a woman's c. *dauri*, *taura*.

current, (of a stream) *igiyar ruwa*.

curse, n. *la'ana*, *wada*, *wadda*.

curse, tr. v. *wa mugunta*, *la'anta*, *la'ane la'anchi*, *zage*, *ḡachi*, *ḡami* may you be cursed! *tir*, *uss*, *ush*.

cursed, part. *la'ane*, fem. *la'ana*, pl. *la'anu*.

curtain, n. (made of fibre and let down in front of a doorway) *tsaiwa*, *bunu*, *arsabari*, *zabori*, *kyauwe*.

cuscus, n. *kuskus**, *kuskus**.

cuscus-grass, *jema*.

cushion, n. *laferu*, *leferu*, *laheru*, pl. *laferai*; c. placed on a donkey *akumari*.

custodian, *mai-riko*.

custom, n. *ada*, *al'āda*, *ta'ada*, *tāda* (S.), pl. *tadodi*, *sabo**, *hanya**, pl. *hanyoyi**, *hāli*, pl. *hālaye*.

cut, tr. v. *yanka*, *yanke*, *sare*, *keta*, *farke*, *yin saisaya* (or *sosaya*); c. into small pieces *sassabe*, *yanyana* (K.), *yan-yanka*, *fāfa*, *girtsa*; c. into

strips *reḡe*; c. round *shankumbu*; c. down *kaḡe*; c. cloth *shifṭa*, *shifche*; c. with a hoe *shema*; c. down the harvest, *girbi*; one who cuts off the hands of thieves *birgiji*.

cut, part. *yankakke*, fem. *yan-kakka*, pl. *yankakku*; *sararre*, fem. *sararriya*, pl. *sararru*.

cuticle, *fiska*, see *skin*.

cutlass, n. *takobi*, pl. *takuba*, *tama*, *tagomas*, *tamogashi*, *adda*.

cutting off of hands (a punishment for thieving), *yankan hannu*.

cutting-up, *yanyane*.

cylinder, c. on which thread is wound for use in shuttle *kwarkwaro*.

cymbal, a kind of *kuge*.

dagger, n. *cheru* (S.), *kanga**, *wuka**.

daily, adv. *kowache rana*.

dainty, he is d. over his food *shina da taran* (or *tadan*) *abinchi*.

dais, *tugufa**.

dam, for catching fish *laḡuni*.

damage, n. *ḡarna*, *taskāro* (S.).

damage, to *ḡarnata*.

damp, n. *daushi*, *damshi*, *laima*, *rīma* (S.).

damsel, n. *yarinya*, *buduruwa*.

dance, n. *rawa, lela, zariya, dawara*; a d. performed by young men *ḡauta, lela*; an inspired d. *bori*.

dance, intr. v. *yin rawa, taka rawa, raya, wūra, yin zariya, tsalle, birkida*.

dancer, a *dan foto*.

dancers, e.g. those possessed by a spirit *masu-bori, masu-boli*.

dancing, *tsalle, zariya*.

dandruff, n. *toto, totau, tautau*.

danger, n. *hatsari* (K.), *hadari* (S.), *abin tsoro*; a dangerous place *wurin tsoro*.

dangle, to *wo lilo*.

daring, adj., see **brave**.

dark, adj. *da dūfu*; phr. it is d. *ya yi dūfu* or *rana ta dushe*.

darkness, n. *dūfu, dūfuwa, dushewa*; utter d. *dūfu kirin*.

darn, to *yin lalaftu*, see seq.

darning, *lalaftu, lalaptu, lalabtu, laplaptu**.

dart, n. *hankaltilo, hargi, margi*; a d. used for catching fish *hāgu, zāgo*.

darter, (the name of a bird, Plotus) *kazaruwa, māḡundumi*.

dash together, tr. v. *gwabra, gobure*.

date, n. (tree and fruit) *dabino*; desert d. *aduwa*; a bunch of dates *zaraba**; dates tied up in a mat *lubiya*; a species

of dark coloured d. *zabiya*, pl. *zabiyoyi*.

date, n. (time of an event) *yayi, zamani**, *lokachi**, *wo-kachi**.

daub, tr. v. *yāḡa, yāḡe, damfara, shafa**, *shafe**.

daubing, *yāḡe*, pl. *yāḡe-yāḡe*.

daughter, n. *ḡiya* (S.), pl. *yam-mata* (for *yan-mata*), *ya* (K.).

dawdle, intr. v. *yin tsaiko*.

dawdling, n. *fatarā, tsaiko*.

dawn, n. *wayewa, assuba, fudowa, fudawa*; the first glimmer of light before the d. *alḡifir, alfijir, jijiḡi, jijiḡf, jibjib*; let us start before the d. *mu yi jijiḡi*.

dawn, intr. v. *waye*; the day dawns *gari ya waye* or less commonly *Allah ya waye*.

day, n. (the time from sunrise to sunset) *rana, ran* or *ra*, pl. *ranuka, ranukka* or *ranaku*, used as masc. or fem., *wuni*; a day's work *wunin aiki*; (twenty-four hours) *kwana*, pl. *kwanaki* or *kwanukka*; to-day *yo, yau*; to stay at a place for a d. *yini*; three days ago *wanshekaranjija*; the d. before yesterday *shekaranjija*; yesterday *jija*; the following d. *rana mai-zakuwa*; to-morrow *gobe, kashēgari* (Kats.),

wanshekare (S.) ; the d. after to-morrow *jibi* ; the d. after the d. after to-morrow *gata* ; the d. after *gata*, i.e. the fifth d. *chitta* ; some d. or other *ko ba dade* ; the last d. *ranan gobe* or *ranan kiyama* ; the d. on which *randa* (a shortened form of *rana da*) ; every d. *kowache rana* ; all d. *rana duka* ; the d. on which a child receives its name *ran suna*. When d. is used with ordinal numbers the singular form is usually employed, thus : three days *rana uku* or *kwana uku* ; to do a thing every d. *dimanta*. The days of the week are : Sun. *lahadi* or *ladi*, Mon. *litini*, Tues. *talata*, Wed. *laraba* or *larba*, Thurs. *alhamis*, Fri. *aljimu'a*, *jumma'a*, *jummu'a*, *aljimma*, *jimma'a* or *jimmu'a*, Sat. *assubat*, *assabat* or *assibit*.

dazzle, tr. v., to d. the eyes *makamche* ; the lightning has dazzled thine eyes *walkiya ta makamche ka*.

dead, adj. *matache*, fem. *matachiya*, pl. *matattu*, *amache*, *mamachi*, fem. *mamachiya* ; a d. body *mushe*, *gawa*, pl. *gawawaki* ; (that which has died of itself) *guba* ; see **die**.

deaf, adj. *kuruma*, *kurma*, pl.

kurumai ; d. and dumb *bebe*, pl. *bebaye*.

deaf, be, intr. v. *kuruma*

deafness, n. *kurumchi*, *karumta*, *bebantaka*, *tosuwa* (S.).

dealer, a corn d., fem. *maau-niya*.

dear, adj. (costly) *da tsāda* ; to be d. *tsadanta* ; (beloved) *masoyi*, fem. *masoya*, pl. *masoyu*, *lele*, *abin kamna** ; to be d. *yin tsāda*.

dearness, n. (high price) *tsāda*.

dearth, n., see **want**.

death, n. *mutuwa*, *machewa*, *rasuwa*, *jinkiri**, *mata**, (lit. last sleep) *makarin barchi* ; a natural d. *mutuwar Allah* ; sudden d. *saukin mutuwa* ; the angel of d. (lit. he who separates) *marabiwa*.

death-watch, (insect) *gunda*, *gumda*, *kichichiya*.

debt, n. *bashi*, pl. *basusuka*, *ramche*, *ranche* ; to pay a d. *biya bashi* ; to get into d. *chi bashi* ; to recover a d. *biyo bashi*, *bim bashi* ; surety for payment of a d. *lamuni*, phr. he is in my debt *shina da bashina* or *ina bin sa bashi*.

debtor, n. *mai-chin bashi*, *mai-karban bashi*, *mai-daukan bashi*, *mabachi*, *mabarchi* (K.).

decapitation, *kunkurus*, *kurunkus*, *kurungus*, *kungurus*.

decay, to *ruḃa*, *riḃa*.

decayed, *ruḃabbe*, pl. *ruḃabbu*.

deceit, n. *munafuchi* (S.), *manafuchi*, *munafichi* (K.), *munafuki*, *barkwanchi*, *riki-chi*, *hañchi*, *wayo*, *lābo**, *ruḃi**, *yaudara*, *algus*, *algusu*, *algushi*, *rigingini*, *zankam* (K.); (lit. two hearts) *zuchiya biyu*.

deceitful, adj. *marikichi*, *mai-rigingini*, *mai-zalumchi*, *mai-algus*, *mai-algusu*, *azzalumi*, *maruḃe*, *mai-ruḃe*, pl. *maruḃa*, *mai-yaudara*.

deceitfully, adv. *da zalumchi*; to treat d. *yin zalumchi*; to act d. *rikiche*.

deceive, tr. v. *ruḃa*, *ruḃi*, *ruḃe*; *chuchi*, *chuche*, *yaudara*, *shamata*, *shamache*, *zantara*, *hāge*.

deceived, be, v. *ruḃu*, *ruḃe*.

deceived, part. *ruḃadḃe*, fem. *ruḃadḃa*, pl. *ruḃadḃu*.

deceiver, n. *maruḃe*, *mai-ruḃe*, see **deceitful**.

decide, tr. v. (of a judge) *raba*, *yanka shari'a*, *yanka magana*.

deck, to *sitirta*, *suturta*.

declaration, e.g. before a judge, *biyayya*.

declare, tr. v. *hadichi*, *labarta*, *habarta*, *fada*; d. openly *bayāna*, *bayēna*, *chashe*; d.

positively *furuchi*, *furchi*, *hurchi*, *hurta*.

decline, v. (grow less) *karkāta*, *rage*; the day declines *rana ta tawaya*, see **decrease**; (refuse) *ki*, *kiya*.

decorous, adj., see **becoming**.

decrease, n. *rāguwa*.

decrease, tr. v. *rāgi*, *rāge*, *tawaya*, *tauwi*; intr. v. *ragu*, *tawaya*, *tawayo*, *tauwi*, *tauwe*, *kasas da*.

decree, n. *ajali**.

deed, n., see **act**.

deep, adj. *da zurfi*, *mai-zurfi*; a d. place (usually with water in it) *gulbi*, pl. *gulabe*.

deer, n., see **antelope**.

defect, n. *lāhani*, *aibi*, *aibu*; see **blemish**.

defence, *kāriya*, *datsiya**.

defend, tr. v., see **guard**.

defer, tr. v. *fāsa*.

defiance, *tamanya*, *tamayya* (S.).

defile, tr. v. *tozarta*, *kasanta*, *kazamtad da*; see **pollute**.

defraud, tr. and intr. v. *chin kura*, *chin riba*, *sāfa* (S.), *zantara*; one who defrauds *maizamba*, *mai-chin kura*; see **cheat**.

defy, to *harzuḃa ga*, *hasala ga*.

degradation, *kanḃanchi*.

degrade, to *maida baya*.

dejected, see **disheartened**.

delay, n. *fāshi, yauchi, dadewa, indainda, jinkiri*; without d. *babu fashi*.

delay, intr. v. *yin fāshi, yin yauchi, wanzu, dada*; to d. to deliver a message *ida labari*; he delays to come *ya yi nauwa* or *ya yi yauchin zakuwa*; to d., tr. *fāsa*.

deliberate, intr. v. *yin shawara*.

deliberately, adv. *da gangan*.

deliberation, n. *shāwara*, pl. *shawarori, shawaruna, shāwarwara*; place of d. *wurin shāwara*.

delicacy, a *abin marmari*.

delight, tr. v., see **please**.

delirious, adj., d. persons *masu-bori, masu-boli, yan-bori*.

deliver, tr. v. (give over) *bada, bashi, yarda*; (save) *cheto, cheche, tsiras da, tsirad da, tsarda, chira, kwache, kwashe*.

deliverance, n. *cheto, tsiraro, machechiya, tsira, fansa, pansa, hansa*.

delivered, be, v. *haifu*.

deliverer, n. *machechi*, pl. *macheta*.

demon, n. *aljan, aljani*, fem. *aljana*, pl. *aljannu* or *aljinnu, jinnu*; *bori*, pl. *borurūka, borurūwa*.

demonstrate, to *yin tabbas*.

demonstration, *gaye*.

denial, n. (dispute in which something is denied) *gar-dama, musu, jayaiyya*.

deny, tr. v. *musu, hana**, *ki*.

depart, intr. v. *fīta, rāsu, rabu, harā*.

departure, n. *fīta*.

deposit, n. *amāna, karo, lamuni**; to steal a d. *chin amāna*; those who steal a d. *masu-taḥin amāna*; a place in which to d. anything *maaji*.

depression, a *kwāri, kware* (S.).

deprivation, n., e.g. of goods *wofi*.

depth, n. *zurfi*; he got out of his d. *ruwa ya sha kansa*; it is out of a man's d. here *ruwa ya shake mutum a nan*.

depute, to *wākala*.

deputy, *māmayi, na'ibi*; see **regent**.

deranged, a person, n. *mai-wauta, mahaukachi*; to act as one d. *yin raurawa*.

deride, tr. v. *yin ba'a, ba'a, zunda, yin zunde*.

derision, n. *ba'a, zunde, zumde*.

descend, intr. v. *shida* or *shida, shide, shido, jida, sabka, sapka*; descend! *jido*.

descendants, *zuri'a*.

desert, n. (i.e. a solitary place) *dāwa, daji, sabra**, *saura**, *hamāda, jeji*.

desert, (worthiness) *chinchinta*, *chanchanta*.

deserter, n. (in war) *kazum*.

designedly, adv. *da gangan*.

desire, n. 1. (wish) *so*, *kamna**, *marādi* (S.), *murādi* (K.), *fata*; eager d. *kwalama* (K.), *kagāra*, *marmari*; desires *zuchiya**, *nafsi**, *koḍai*, *kwadai*; evil d. *shawā*, *sha'awa*, *gūri*.

2. (the thing wished for) *abinso*, *maradi*, *muradi*, *guri*, *nūfi*, *nūfe*; he accomplished his d. *ya chika haḍama*.

desire, tr. v. *so*, *nūfe*, *nūfi*, *yin kagāra*, *yin fāta*; to burn with d. *kona*, *kuna**, *kone*, *kwadaye*, *lamiranta*; intr. v. direct the d. *maida kamna*.

desist, intr. v. *daina*, *dena*, *bari*, *bar*.

desolate, to make d. *yin kaḍaita*.

desolation, n. *kango*, pl. *kangogi* or *kanguna*; *afko*, *kaḍaita*, *riṣḥawa*, *riṣḥawa*, *ruzgawa* (S.), *rubzawa* (K.).

despair, to *fida zuchiya*.

despicable, adj., see **despised**.

despise, tr. v. *rena*, *kyale*, *yin tsantsani*, *tarsa**.

despised, part. *renanne*, fem. *renanna*, pl. *renannu*, *kas-kastache*, pl. *kaskastu*.

despising, part. *renawa*, *reni*; the d. of advice *renin wayo*.

despoil, tr. v. (in war) *yin buruntu*, *chin ganima*.

destiny, n. *ajali*, *jinkiri*, *ku-dira*, *kudura*, *kadara*, *rābo**.

destitute, one who is, n. *gande*, *gindau*, *gyande*, fem. *gyandu-wa*, pl. *gyandaye*, *fanko*, *mat-siyachi*, pl. *matsiyata*, *mayun-wachi**, pl. *mayanwata**, *komaro*, *karare*; cf. *rashi*, *maras*.

destroy, tr. v. *bāta*, *bāche*, *bachi*, *bātas*, *halāka*, *afka*, *fāsa*, *ḥanna*, *yakuta*, *chi**.

destroyed, be, v. *lalache*, *gur-bache*, *yakuche*, *yamutse**; about to be d. *mai-afkawa*.

destroyed, part. *bātache*, fem. *bātachiya*, pl. *bātattu*.

destruction, n. *afko*, *halaka*, *lalata*, *ta'adi*, *ta'ada*, *bātachi*.

detain, tr. v. *riko*, *tsaida*, *tsai-she*, *tsayas da*, *tsēre*, *hana*.

detect, tr. v. (e.g. in a fault) *ritse*, *rutse*.

detention, *riko*.

deter, tr. v., see **prevent**.

determined, one who is d. *mai-daurin anniya*.

detour, to make a d. *zaga*.

devastate, tr. v. *yin afko*, *yin kaḍaita*, *waso*.

developed, i.e. full-grown *gawurtache*, fem. *gawurtachiya*, pl. *gawurtatu*; *kasaitache*.

deviate, intr. v. (from a straight course) *bauda*, *baude* used

with *hanya*; *ratsa*, *yin ratse*; causing to d. *baudewa*.

deviation, *ratse*, *ratsowa*.

device, n. *hila*, *fila*.

devil, n. *shaitan*, *shetan*, *shaitani*, *iblis*, *ibilis*; see **demon**.

devoid of, see **without**.

devour, tr. v. *rida*, *chinye*, *chanye*, *chingi*, *hadīye*, *rushe* (K.).

dew, n. *rāba*; a drop of d. *ḍigar rāba*.

dialect, *yare*, *halshe**.

diarrhoea, n. *gūdawwa*, *gūdun-daji*, *zawo*, *zawayi*; a medicine for d. *filasko*.

dibble, (hoe) *sungumi*.

dice, n. *kuri'a*, *karen chacha*; a throw of d. *jefan kuri'a*; to cast d. *yin modī* (cowrie shells are generally used instead of d. for purposes of gambling).

dictation, writing from d. *shibta**.

die, intr. v. *mache*, *machi*, *mutu* (this is seldom used except to denote the past tense), *rāsu*; d. a natural death *yin mushe*.

differ, intr. v. *yin dabam*, *yin daban*, *yin bambam*.

difference, n. *dabamchi*, *bambamchi*, *bambanta*, *barambaran*; what is the d. between this and that?

minene bambamchin wannan da wanchan? or *ina marabin wannan da wanchan?* there is no d. *ba su bambanta*; differences (points of variance) *tsakankani*.

different, adj. *dabam*, *daban*, *dabam dabam*; d. from *da-bam da*, *dabam dāga*, *bambam dāga*; a d. sort *iri dabam*.

differentiate, to *bambanta*, *yin dabam*.

difficult, adj. *da wuya*; it is d. to know all things *abin duniya da wuyan sani*; it is too d. for me *ya buwaye ni*, *ya faskare ni*, *ya faye ni*, *na kasa* or *ya fi karifina*.

difficulty, n. *wuya*; with d. *dakyat* (S.), *dakyal*, *dakyar* (K.).

dig, tr. v. *gina*, *gino*, *tona**, *haka*; d. in the ground *fudā*, *turbude*, *yasa*, *yashe*, to dig a new well *gina rigiya*; to dig out or clean out an old well *yasa rigiya*; d. up land *kartu*, *kirta*; d. with a hoe *shera*, *hira* (S.); d. holes, e.g. for planting trees *bīsa*, *būshe*.

dignified, adj., a d. person *datijo*.

dignity, *mutumchi*.

diligence, n. *koḳari*, *himma*, *kwazo*, *anniya*.

diligent, be, intr. v. *yin anniya*, *maida himma*, *maida kōkari*; be d. ! *ku bada kōkarinku*.

diligent, adj. *da kwazo*, *mai-kwazo*.

diligently, adv. *da himma*, *da anniya*.

dim, to be, intr. v. *dindimi*, *dundumi*; to become d. *dushe* or *dishe*.

diminish, see **decrease**.

dimness, n. *dushewa*, *dishewa*; d. of sight *makamchi*, *ham-ḥarakwai**.

dip, tr. v. *tsoma*, *soma**; d. under water *nuta*, *nutse*, *nutsa*; to d. the head in water *yin kunduma*.

dipping, (e.g. of meat in soup) *tsomi*.

direct, adj., e.g. a d. path *hanya sosai*.

direction, *sassa*, *bige*, *guge*, *waje*.

directly, adv. *yanzu*, *ko yanzu*, *nan da nan*.

dirt, n. *gwiḥa*, *gwiḥa*, *gwiḥi*, *dauda*, *kazāmi*, *kazamta*, *kazanta*.

dirty, adj. *da dauda*, *kazami*, fem. *kazama*; to make d. *yin dauda*.

disagree, intr. v., see **quarrel**.

disagreement, n. *sabani*, *swaḥani* (S.), see **discord**.

disappear, intr. v. *gurbache**, *rutsa**.

disappointed, be, intr. v. *kal-mashe zuchiya*.

disapproval, a gesture of d., the hand being extended and all the fingers pointed forwards, *ambola*, *dakuwa*.

disaster, see **misfortune**.

discern, tr. v. *ji**, *gane*.

discernment, n. *basīra*.

discharge, tr. v. 1. (fire off) *buga*, *halbi*, *harbi*.

2. (send away) see **dismiss**.

disciple, n. *almajiri*, fem. *almajira*, pl. *almajirai*.

discomfort, n. *maḳo*.

discontent, an exclamation of *gasa*.

discontented, adj. one who is d. *matsiyachi*, pl. *matsiyata*.

discord, n. *fasadi*, *fasada*, *kīyayya*, *swabani*, *rikichi**, *fusuma*, *gardama**; see **dispute**.

discount, n. *jāra*; a special d. *la'ada*; what d. is allowed? *ina rangwame?*

discourage, tr. v. *sake fuska* (lit. to change the face).

discover, tr. v. *kaga*, see **find**.

discussion, n. *maganta*, *magantawa*, *magantirwa*; to hold a d. *yin maganta*.

disdain, tr. v., see **despise**.

disease, n. *chiwuta*, *chiwo*.

disgrace, n. *walakanchi*; see shame.

disgrace, tr. v. *falasa*, *fallasa*, *palasa*, *kumyata*.

disgust, n. *kyama*, see dislike.

dish, n., a large wooden d. *akushi*, *akoshi*, pl. *akussa*, *jemo*; a flat d. made of plaited grass *taitai*; d.-cover (made of plaited grass) *faifai*, pl. *fiyafai*; the knob which forms the top of a d.-cover *tuku*, *tuntu*, *tsoro*, *tukkuwa*.

dishearten, tr. v. *kariya zuchiya*; phr. you d. me *ka kariya ma ni zuchiya*, I am disheartened *zuchiyata ta bachi*; see discourage.

dishonour, n. *kankanchi*, *kumya**.

dishonour, to *kaskasta*, *kuskunta*.

dislike, n. *haushi*, *kiyayya*, *kiyeya*, *kyeya*, *kyama*; see hate.

dislike, tr. v. *ki*, *kiya*, *yankan kamna*, *tsangwama*; they d. him *suna jin haushinsa*.

dislocate, to, a bone gule.

dismay, n., see fear.

dismount, intr. v. *shido*, *sabka*, *shida kasa*, *jida*; see alight.

disobedience, n. *kinji*, *kiwuya*, *shishige*, *tayazwa*.

disobedient, he is d. *shi ne mai-kangara*.

disobey, tr. v. *ki ji*, *tayas*.

disperse, tr. v. *kawas da*, *watsa*, *ware*, *walwache*, *warwatse*; disperse! *ku waru*.

dispersed, *wararre*.

displease, tr. v. *bata zuchiya*; this displeased him *wannan ya bata zuchiya*; see distress.

disposition, n. (temper) *hali*, pl. *halaye*; good d. *farin jini* (lit. white blood); bad d. *bakin zuchiya* (lit. blackness of heart); *lalata*, *kafirchi*, *mugun gashi**.

dispute, n. *gardama*, *sababi*, *subabi*, *binchiki*, *fusuma*, *swabani*, *tsalmi*, *tsarmi*.

dispute, intr. v. *yin gardama*, *yin kokanto*.

disregard, tr. v. *rena*, *kyale*, *shamuke*; see despise.

disrespectful, d. language or 'contempt of court' *ashar*.

dissemble, intr. v., see pretend.

dissent, intr. v., express d. by turning the head away *kauda kai*, *girgiza kai*.

dissimulation, *riya*.

dissolute, adj., see profligate.

dissolve, 1. tr. v. *narke*.

2. intr. v. *narku*.

distance, n. *nesa*, *nisa*, (aloofness) *nesanta*; to place at a d. *nesanta*; to keep a d. from *nesanchi*, *nisanchi*; a

measure of d. (as far as the eye can reach) *jetaka**; I saw him from a d. *na hange shi dāga nesa*.

distant, adj. *dāga nesa, da nesa, nesa*; d. from *nesa dāga*.

distinct, adj., see **different**.

distinguish, to *kebe, keḥanche, keḥanta, rarrabe*; it was impossible to d. between *ba a rarrabe*.

distorted, *amurgude*.

distrain, to *wāshe*.

distress, n. *nawāya, wuya, wahala, matsiyachi, matsiyata, tsananta*.

distress, tr. v. *tsananche, sa wahala, dawainiyasda, dawainiyashe, nawāya*; that which causes d. *abin da wuya*.

distressed, be, v. *fargaba, fargaba, matsu, masu, jin wahala*; I was d. *na gamu da nawaya*.

distribute, tr. v. *rāba, rābas da, rābas* (without obj.), *kawama*.

district, n. *gari**, *wuri**, *gunduma* (S.).

distrust, to *farga**, *tsangwama*.

ditch, n. *ganwa, wuriya*.

dive, intr. v. *nutsa* (K.), *nuto* (S.), *nutse, nitso, ninkāya, auka*.

divide, tr. v. *rāba, rābi**, *ra-bas da, rarrabi, rarraba, kāsa*; to d. in half *bāra*.

divided, be, intr. v. *rābu, warwari, wawari*.

divided, part. *rababbe*, fem. *rababba*, pl. *rababbu*; *marar-raba*.

divination, *duba*.

diving, n. *nūta*.

division, n. *rābo, rābu*, pl. *raberabe*; *mararrabi*; the dividing point of two roads *mararrabin hanya*; d. of a town (within the walls) *shiya, unguwa*, pl. *unguwai* or *unguni**; d., i.e. allotted portion, *fasali*.

divorce, n. *sakewa, shiki, yayi**.

divorce, tr. v., d. a woman *shika, saki, kore* all followed by *mahe*.

dizziness, *jiri*.

do, tr. and intr. v. 1. (act) *yi aiki*.

2. (accomplish) *yi, i, yiwa, iwa, yiwo, iwo, wa, aiki*.

3. (succeed) *yi*.

4. to do a thing once *tāḥa*.

5. to labour at *aikata*; phr.

it is done *an yi shi*, it does (i.e. it is satisfactory) *ya yi*; I never did so *ban tāḥa yin haka*; can it be done? *shi yiwu?* it cannot be done *ba shi yiwuwa*; which way did he go? *wanne waje ya yi?* *na yi* I did, is often contracted into *nai*.

doctor, n. *mai-māgani*, *attabibi**, *likita**; a quack d. *boka*, pl. *bokaye*.

dog, n. *kāre*, f. *kāriya*, pl. *kar-nuka*, *auzu*; house d. *kāren gida*; wild hunting d. *kyalkechi*, *karkechi*, *kyarkyechi*, *kirikinji*, *kilikinji*; a mad d. *mahaukachin kāre*.

dollar, n. *dāla* (usually applied to the Austrian Maria Theresa d.), *riyali*, *liyar*, *madafa**.

dominion, n., see **kingdom**.

done, part., see **do**.

donkey, n. *jaki*, fem. *jakanya*, pl. *jakai*, *jakkai* or *jakuna*; d.'s pad *lāheru*, *laferu*; for names of various species of donkeys, see **ass**.

door, n. *koḡa*, pl. *koḡofi*, *koḡuna* or *koḡai*; *koḡal gida*, *gambu*; doorway *bākin koḡa*; a mat made of grass or reeds let down in front of doorway *tufaniya*, *arsabari*, *askuniya*, *maruḡin koḡa*, *tsabore*, *zabore*, *bunu*, pl. *bunai*, *kyauḡe*, *tsaiwa*, *tsawayā*; a d. made of corn stalks *kwadaḡe* (S.); d. post *kwabrin koḡa*, *kulkin koḡa*; pole or bar to keep the d. shut *mataushin koḡa*, *madogara*, *gagarabado*; doorkeeper *sarikin koḡa*; a d.

made of palm planks *kyauḡen kyami*.

dot, n. (e.g. the d. placed above or below a letter) *gūda* (S.); the large d. placed below the line to denote the sound *e yamalā**, *imala**.

doubt, n. *zuchiya biyu* (lit. two hearts), *tambaba*, *kokanto*, *tantama*, *zulumi*, *zalumi*, *zato*, *shakka*; without d. *babu wawa*, *babu shakka*, *babu shak*, *babu tambaba*; an expression of d. *wai*.

doubt, intr. v. *yin* (or *da*) *zuchiya biyu*, *yin tambaba*, *yin tantama*, *yin shakka*, *hasashi*, *hasashe*.

dough, n. *gaya*.

dove, n. *kurchiya*, pl. *kurāche*, *kurchiyoyi*; ring d. *wala*, pl. *walu*, *aguwa*; red-eyed d. *hasbiya*, *hazbiya*; bronze-winged d. *garda*; long-tailed African d. *bardo*; a rock d. *jāba dutsi*.

down, adv. a *ḡasa*, a *ḡas*; to put d. *sako*.

down, n. (of birds) *sabon gashi*.

dowry, n. *gāra*, *baiko*.

doze, to *gyangyadi*, *yin angaje*.

drag, tr. v. *janye*, *jaye*; see **draw**.

dragon-fly, *masu**.

drain, (ditch) *wuriya*.

drake, n. *zakaran dumya*, *sa kaza*.

draw, tr. v. *ja*, *jajaya*, *kak-kare*, *karkare*; to d. forth or out *fisge*, *fizge*, *fusge*, *fishshe*, *zara*, *taḃe*, *taḃi*, *sakatta*, *sakache*; to d. towards oneself *jawo*, *zaro*; to d. after one *jaku*; d. a line or a furrow *kirta*, *karta*; to d. strokes *zāna*; to d. a sketch *sifata*, *sifache*; to d. out *saḃule*; d. a sword *zara*, *zari*; to d. the foot on the ground *murjekki*, *mur-tsiki*; to d. water *jan ruwa*, *gugana*, *ḃēbe ruwa*, *ḃēbo ruwa*, *ḃauka ruwa*; to d. near *dūno**; to d. back *jayi*; to d. out, e.g. from water *tsamo*.

drawer, n. *akodi**, *sanduki**, *sanduki**.

drawing, (sketch) *sifa*.

dream, n. *mafulki* (S.), *mafarki* (K.).

dream, intr. v. *yin mafalki*.

dregs, n. *gwiḃa*, *gwiḃi*.

dress, n., gorgeous d. *daraja*; see **clothes**.

dress, tr. v. (put on clothes) *sa*; d. leather *jemi*; d. meat *feda nama*.

dressed, part. (prepared) *gyar-tache*, fem. *gyartatta*, pl. *gyartattu*.

dresser, n. (of leather) *majemi*, *mai-jima*.

dried, part. *keḃasashe*, fem. *keḃasashiya*, pl. *keḃasassu*, *busashe*, *busheshe*, *bushebushe*, *sanyaye*, *shanyaye*, fem. *shanyaya*, pl. *shanyayu*; dried-up tree *kalun itache*, *kwaurin* (or *kwabrin*) *itache**.

drill, to d. soldiers *birga*.

drill, of soldiers *rawa**.

drink, n. *abinsha*; a d. made of honey, pepper and water *betso*, *baiso**; a d. made with flour, etc. *koko*; an intoxicating d. made from guinea-corn *giya*; drinking-water *ruwan-sha*.

drink, tr. v. *sha*, *shawo*, *shanye*, *shanya*, *shaya*; to d. greedily *ḃirki*; to give to d. *shadda*, *shayad da*, *shayas da*; it is undrinkable *ba shi shayurwa*.

drinking, n. *sha*, pl. *shaye-shaye*.

drippings, e.g. from trees *ruwan ganye*.

drive, tr. v. (d. away) *kōra*, *kōre*, *koro*, *famfare*, *i ma*, *iza*, *ije*, *yin artai*; d. to a distance *nesanta*; d. away in disgust *kaḃasta*, *kusḃunta*; d. out *fishshe*, *fishshe*.

driver-ant, n. *kwarkwasa*, *kwalkwasa*.

driving, n. (away in war) *artai*, *kōra*.

droop, to *lanḃwasa*, *lanḃwashe*.

drooping, *lanḡwaso*.

drop, n. *ḡiga*, *ḡugo*, pl. *ḡugogi*, *ḡāso*, *ḡarso*, *tarfi*; a d. of dew *ḡugon raba*.

drop, tr. and intr. v. 1. (pour out by drops) *tarfi*, *tarfa*, yin *ḡarshi*; it is dropping *yana ḡiga*.

2. (let fall) *saki*, *tsaga*, *kubche*.

3. intr. v., see **fall**.

dropping, n. *ḡigo*.

dropsy, n. *fāra*.

dross, n. (scum of metals) *kashin tama*, *kwam makera*.

drought, n. *farin yunwa*, *fari**, *firi*, *furi*.

drown, tr. v. *gangante**, *nitsa-she**; intr. v. *nitso*, *sha ruwa*; he was drowned *ya sha ruwa*.

drum, n. *kīda*, *kīdi*, *kalango*, *kurkutu* (S.), *kuntukuru**; a large d. *ganga*, pl. *ganguna*, *banga*, *dundufa*, *gangami*, *jāmi**; a small d. *bishi*; a d. shaped like an hour-glass held under the arm, covered with skin in front but open behind *kotso*, *koso*, *jauje*, *juje*; a d. made out of a gourd *talle*; a d. with pointed bottom carried in a royal procession *tambari*; a stringed d. open at one end *kuriya*, *kwuriya*; the sound of a d. *was**, *girib*; large d. used

by a king *tajini*; see *tafashe* (S.).

drum, intr. v. yin *kīdi*, yin *wargi**, *kankada*, *kīda*.

drummer, n. *makidi*; a mounted d. *masarchi*.

drumming, n. *kīdi*, pl. *kīde-kīde*; (accompanied by dancing) *kīdin dambe*, *garaya*.

drum-stick, *makidi*, *makadi*.

drunk, to be yin *maye*, *bugu*; particip. *bugage*.

drunkard, n. *mashayi*.

drunkenness, n. *hajijiya*, *maye*.

dry, adj., see **dried**.

dry, 1. tr. v. *kekāshe*, *kekasa*, *bushe*, *sanya*, *shanya*, *kāfe*; put out to d. *sanyato*, *jibe*; to d. in the sun *ḡāri**; to d. meat before a fire *kyafa*, *kyapa*.

2. intr. v. *shekare*; to d. up (used of a well) *kāfe*, (wither or d. up as water) *tsotsa**.

dryness, *kekāsa*.

dry season, n. *rani*.

duck, n. *kazan yariba*, *agwa-gwa*; small water d. *jalili*; African tree d. *kirinjijiya*; comb of a d. *ḡani*.

duck, v., to d. the head *kauche kai*.

dumb, (d. and deaf person) *bebe*, pl. *bebaye*.

dum-palm, n., see **palm**.

dun, to d. a person for debt *bi*.

dung, n. *kāshi*, *taki*, *artai*, *najasa*, *najasu*, *gaitsi*, *toroso*, *taroso*, *tutu*, *tsura*, *tsula* (S.); d. of cows or camels *kandilu*; d. hole *salga*, pl. *salgagi*, *sarga*, *salanga* (Zanf.), *bayan gida**, *kwarkware*; d. hill *jujai*, *jibji*, *birbizo*, *bizo* (S.).

dungeon, n. *kurkuku*, see **prison**.

duration, *matsayi*.

during, prep. *chikin*, *a*, *da*, *ga*, *muddar ransa* d. (or all) his life.

dust, n. *kura*, *toka**, pl. *to-kuna**; d. storm *guguwa*, *holoko*, *huluku*.

dwarf, n. *wadā*, fem. *wadaniya*, pl. *wadani*, *kūru*.

dwel, intr. v. *zamna*, *zauna*.

dweller, n. *mai-zamna*.

dwelling, n. *mazamni*, *ma-zauni*, *wurin zamna*, *shigifa*, pl. *shigifu* or *shigifofi*.

dye, n. *rīna*; a black d. *kwaloko**; a reddish d. *galura*; a yellow clay used as a d. for women's faces *dāla*; a red d. *majigi*.

dye, tr. v. *rini*, *rina*, *yin tabsa*, *tūra*, *yin tūri*; d. pit *mārīna*, pl. *mārīnai*, *karofi* (K.); a place where clothes are beaten when being dyed

mabugiya; owner of a d. pit or dyer *mārīni*, pl. *ma-surini*.

dyed, part. *rinanne*, fem. *rinanna*, pl. *rinannu*, *tūrarre*, fem. *turara*, pl. *turaru*.

dyeing, *tabsa*, *tausa*, *tūri*, *turanta*, *yanayi*.

dyer, n., see **dye**.

dysentery, n. *gudun daji*, *gudun dawa*, *zawo*, *anago*, *ana gudawa*, *atuni*; medicine for d. *domashi*.

each, pron. adj. *kowanne*, fem. *kowache*; e. of us *kowan-nenmu*; e. of them *kowan-nensu*.

eager, adj. *da kwarāka*.

eagerness, n. *kwadayi*, *koḍai*, *kwada**, *kwarāka*; see **desire**.

eagle, n. *jisasa* (K.); crested e. *angulun kwakwa*; white-necked e. *gagāfa*.

ear, n. *kunne*, pl. *kunnuwa*; hollow behind the ear *geto*, *gato*; wax in the e. *kwanyan kunne*, *daudan kunne*; to erect the ears *kere*; to turn back the ears *lāfe*; e. of corn *kube*, *zangarniya*, *zangarko*; e. of *gero* cooked for eating *tumu*.

early, adv. *wūri*, *da wūri*, *dauri*; very e. *wūri wūri*; e. in the morning *sassafe*,

fudowa, fudawa, tangarai, assuba; e. or an e. start *samako, sammako*.

earnest money, n. *amāna**, *shigam biya*.

earth, n. 1. (the world) *duniya*.

2. (soil) *kāsa*, pl. *kāsashe, kāsaisai, turḡaya, turḡa* (S.); very hard e. *tsandauri*.

earthquakes, *raye-rayen duniya*.

earth-worm, *tana*, pl. *tanu*.

earwig, *tsatso*.

easily, adv. *babu wuya, ba da wuya ba, sannu**, *da sauḡi*.

east, n. *gābas, gābaz**; one who comes from the e. *bagabasi*.

eastward, adv. *gabachi*.

easy, adj. that is easier *ya fi sauḡi*; see **easily**.

eat, tr. v. *chi*; to e. greedily *chanye, chinye, rushe* (K.), *ginsu, gundura, yin hamfude, hamfuḡi, gamba, chingi, dagwiya*; to snatch in order to e. *rida*; anything to e. *abinchi*; plenty to e. *zari, zowari, jibgi, lashe*; that which is good to e. *tutushi*; to give to e. *chida, chishe* or *chiyad da*; eating a little at a time *chiye-chiye*; cf. prov. to eat a little at a time is better than to eat up all at once *chiye-chiye ya fi chainyewa*; eating in secret

ḡurmusu; one who hides himself in order to e. *mai-ḡurmusu*.

eavesdrop, to *lāḡe*.

eavesdropping, *rafake*.

ebony-tree, *kainya, kaiwa*.

echo, n. *kuruwa, koguwa**, *jeji ya amsa*.

eclipse, n., e. of the moon *husufi* (Ar.), *kamunwata, dushewa*; e. of the sun *kusufi*.

ecstasy, n. *hawka, hawkachi**.

edge, n. *ḡauye, ḡowi, ḡawachi**; (of stream) *refe, ḡayen ruwa*; (of a knife) *kaiḡi*; (of a sword) *bāki*; (of cloth) *lafe, laji; madaji*, chinkai**.

edged, adj. (sharp e.) *da kaiḡi*.

educate, tr. v. *yin reno**, *foro**.

education, n. *lādabi, karātu**.

effective, *mai-anfāni*.

egg, n. *ḡwai (ḡwoi), ḡwan kaza*, pl. *ḡwanyaye*; e. shell *kwasfa, kwasta*, pl. *kosfofi, kwasfofi; ḡambori, ḡamḡaroki, ḡawon ḡwai*; a bad e. *dunge*; yolk of e. *ḡwabduwa, ḡwabdua, ḡwanduwa*; a hen laying eggs *daḡwalwa*; to lay eggs *kanya ḡwai, aje ḡwai, ajiye ḡwai* (K.).

egg-plant, *gauta, yalo*.

egret, *zarḡi, zalḡi*; the great white e. or heron *farin zarḡi*; little e. *balbela, badbila, bilbila*.

Egypt, n. *Masar*, *Mazar**; the inhabitants of E. *masarawa*.
eight, adj. *takwas*.
eighteen, adj. *goma sha takwas*, *ishirin biyu babu*.
eighth, adj. *na-takwas*, fem. *ta-takwas*; one e. *sumuni*.
eighty, adj. *tamanin*.
either, adj. *ko*; e.... or *ko...* *ko*; *walau**.
elaeis guineensis, n. (= oil palm) *kwakwa*.
elapse, intr. v. (of time) *shige*; see **finish**.
elasticity, *yauki*, *yabki*.
elbow, n. *kusuruwan hannu*, *sukuruwan hannu*, *diddigin hannu*, *gwiwar hannu*; from the e. to the shoulder *damtse*, *damchi*, pl. *damatsa* or *damutsa*.
elder, e. brother *wa*, pl. *yeye*; e. sister *ya*.
eldest, adj. *babba**, *ḍan fari*.
elect, tr. v., see **choose**.
elephant, n. *giwa*, pl. *giwaye*; a young e. *parma*; male e. *toron giwa*, *toro*; trunk of e. *hannun giwa*; tusks of e. (i.e. ivory) *hakorin giwa*, *haurin giwa*.
elephantiasis, n. *gugi*, *makulashe*.
eleven, adj. *goma sha ḍaya*, *sha ḍaya*.

eleventh, adj. *na-goma* (fem. *ta-goma*) *sha ḍaya*.
else, see **other**.
emaciated, part. a *rame*, *ramamme*; see **lean**.
emancipate, tr. v. *yanchi*, *bada ḍiyauchi*.
embankment, *lābuni*.
embark, intr. v. *hau jirigi*.
embarrassment, *fulako*, see **shame**.
embezzlement, *hañchi*.
embrace, tr. v. *runguma*, *run-gūme*.
embroider, tr. v. *yin sharaba*.
embroidered, (e.g. trousers) *mai-surfani*.
embroidery, n. *tindumi*, *sharaba*; e. on a shirt *algaba*, *aska*; e. on front of a tobe *kunkun-gaba*, *gudungaba*, *mumbari*.
embryo, *tāyi* (S.).
emerald, n. *zumurruz**.
emetic, n. *katala*.
emir, n. *amiru*, *amiri*.
emperor, n. *sultan*.
emphasize, to *karfafa*.
employment, *safara* (S.).
emptiness, n. *wofi*, *yofi* (S.).
empty, a place that is e. *kango*, pl. *kangogi* or *kangaye*.
emulation, n. *kīshi*, *kishiya*, pl. *kishiyoyi*, *gāsa*.
enable, tr. v., see **help**.
encamp, intr. v. *shida*, *shide*, *sapka*, *sabka*, *sauka*.

encampment, n. *sansani*, *zango*, *wurin sabka*.

enchantment, *sihiri*; see **sorcery**.

encircling, n. *keway*, *kewayo*.

enclosure, n. (for cattle, etc.) *garke*, *garge* (S.), *sayi*; see **fold**.

encompass, tr. v. (e.g. a town in war) *rize*.

encounter, tr. v. *gama da*, *gamu da*, *tariye*.

end, n. *kāre*, *karko*, *maḳari*, *maḳare*, *ḳarshe*, *makoma*; (boundary) *iyaka*.

end, 1. intr. v. *kāre*, *tsaya*, *tsayi*, *mutu**, *yamutse*; come utterly to an e. *ḳarḳare*.

2. tr. v. *wanya*, *wanye*, *wanyi*, *kāre*; (e. conversation) *yanke magana*; the affair is ended *ya kare*.

endeavour, n. *koḳari*.

endeavour, intr. v. *yin koḳari*; one who endeavours *mai-koḳari*.

ending, *ḳarewa*, *ḳarko*, *tukewa*.

endurance, *tasiri* (S.), see **courage**.

endure, 1. tr. v. *jimri*, *daure*.

2. intr. v. (suffer) *dauri*; (continue) *yin ḳarko*, *daḳa*, *dadi*.

enduring, part. 1. (lasting) *daḳewa*, *matabbāta*.

2. (suffering) see **patient**.

enemy, n. *abokin gāba*, *maḳiyi*, pl. *maḳiya*, *mai-ḳinji*, *magabchi*.

enfranchise, tr. v., see **free**.

English, adj. wherever the word is known the form *Ingliz* or *Ingilis* borrowed from the Arabs of N. Africa is used; an Englishman would be *mutum Ingilis*.

engrossed, to be e. in anything *shagula*, *natsu*.

enjoy, tr. v. *sha**, *chi**; to e. the shade *sha inuwa*.

enjoyment, n. *murna*, *abin murna*; see **joy**.

enlarge, tr. v. *faḳaḳa*, *yin girma*.

enmity, *gāba*, *zaman*.

enough, n. *da ya isa*, *buss*, *kul*; to have e. *ḳoshi*; one who has eaten e. *ḳosashshe*, pl. *ḳosas-su*; it is e. *ya isa*, *ya ḳoshi**.

enquire, see **inquire**.

ensign, n. *tuta*, pl. *tutochi*.

enslave, tr. v. *maida bawa*, *bautad da*; to be enslaved *shiga bauta*.

ensure, to *wajabta*, see **certain**.

entangle, to *nanade*, *dāne**, *jiche* (S.), *kīfa* (K.), *surmuḳa*; to become entangled *sarḳe*.

enter, tr. v. (go in) *shīga*; (come in) *shīgo*; cause to e. *shīgas da*.

entice, tr. v. *ruḳe*.

entire, adj., see **complete**.
entirely, adv. *kap*; see also *faye* and *fi*.
entrails, *yan chiki*.
entrance, n. (aperture) *kofa*; e. room (e.g. to palace) *dan-dali*.
entrap, tr. v. *yin haƙo*, *yin tarko*.
entreat, tr. v. *biko*, *roko*.
entrenchment, n. *kagara*, *kagaruwa*, pl. *kagaru*, *sansani*.
entrust, tr. v. *bada*, *yin sabtu*, *danka*.
enumerate, to *lisafta*, *lisafta*, *lasalta*, *lisabta*, *lisanta*.
envy, n. *keta*, *kɪyaiya*, *kishi*, *kishiya*, *hāsada*, *haushi*.
enwrap, *duntsa*, *duntse*.
epilepsy, n. *falfada* (S.), *farfada* (K.), *farfaɗiya*.
equal, adj. *sosai*, *daidai*, *tangam*, *tangas*; to make e. *daidaita*, *yi ya*; to be e. *isa*; a thing which is e. to *abin gamawa*; this is e. to that *wannan ya yi ya wunchan*.
equal, (fellow) *tsāra*, pl. *tsarare*.
equality, *sauwi*.
equivalent, n. *wato**, *watau**.
erase, tr. v. *yin maimai*, *shāfa*, *kankara*.
erect, tr. v. *tashe*, *tada*.
err, intr. v. *manta*, *manche*, *kuskure*, *sabo*.

errand, n. *sako*.
error, n. *mantuwa*, *kure*, *sabo*.
eructate, to *yūnkūra*.
escape, n. place of e. *wurin tsira*.
escape, intr. v. *fichi*, *furche*, *tsira*, *gudu*, *kurchi*, *kurche*, *kubche*, *subuche*, *subiche*.
escort, n. *rakiya* (S.), *rāko* (K.), *kūto*.
escort, tr. v. *yin rakiya*, *rāka*, *rāki*, *rāke*, *roma**.
espy, to *hanga*, *hangi*, *hange*, *hango*; I espied him afar *na hange shi dāga nesa*, he was the first to e. me *ya hango ni*.
establish, to *tuturta*, *kafa*.
established, part. (firmly fixed) *tabbatachche*, fem. *tabbatachchiya*; *kāfaffe*, fem. *kafaffiya*, pl. *kāfaffu*.
esteem, n. *hasafi*.
estimate, tr. v. *kauwama*, *kawamata**, *kimanta*.
estrangement, n. *rabuwa*.
eternal, adj. *hal* (or *har*) *abada*.
eunuch, n. *babā* or *babani*, pl. *babānni*, *laihi*, *marmāta*.
euphorbia, n. *kumkumiya*, *fidda-sartse*, *kyarana*, *tinya*.
European, n. *ba-Ture*, pl. *Turawa**.
evade, to *zūke*.
even, adj. 1. (smooth) *da samtsi*.
 2. cf. e. or odd *chika ko mara*.

even, adv. *ko* ; e. now *ko yanzu*.

evening, n. *mareche, maraiche* ; *yamma* ; late e. *almauru, almuru, magarub, magariba, mangariba, lisha*, cf. under *rana* ; in the e. *da mareche, da yamma* ; phr. I continue travelling till e. *ina yini tafiya*, it is e. *mareche ya yi* ; to depart in the e. *maraita*.

eventually, adv. *yauyau, yo-yo*.

ever, adv. 1. (at any time) *da-dai, taḅa*, e.g. have you ever seen him ? *ka tāḅa ganinsa* ? have you ever been to Sokoto ? *ka tāḅa je Sakwato* ?

2. (for ever) *tutul, tutur, tutu, tutuk, tutut, hal* (or *har*) *abadā*.

everlasting, adj. *matuturchi, madawami**, *matabbatawa**.

every, adj. *duka, duk, kullum** ; everyone *kowa, kowanne*, fem. *kowache*, pl. *kowāḍanne*, see Gr. p. 18 ; everything *duka komi, dukachin komi, komi* ; e. day *kowache rana* ; e. morning *kullum safe* ; e. night *kullum dare*.

everywhere, *koīna*.

evil, n. *abin mugu, ḅannai, mugunta, shara, shariri, gaya**, *swaḅo, zunufi* ; *zunubi**, e. desire *sha'awa* ; e. disposition *lalata, mugunta*,

kafarchi, kafirchi ; e. thought *bākar zuchiya* ; e. spirit *ibilis* ; e. speaking *annamimi* ; e. principle existing in the world *duniya** ; e. doer *mai-swaḅo* ; to e. intreat *kan-ḅanta*.

evil, adj. *mugu*, fem. *mugunya*, pl. *miyagu, mummun** ; see **bad**.

ewe, n. *tumkiya*, pl. *tumāki*.

exact, adj. *sarai*.

exactly, *rab, rap* ; it fits e. *ya kama rab*.

exactly, adv. *tangas*.

exaggerate, *gina waiwai, yal-wata labari*.

exalt, tr. v. *ḍaukaka, ḍaukake, maida girma*.

exalted, part. (epithet applied to God) *ta'ala, maḍaukaka*.

examine, tr. v. *dandana**, *dandani** ; see **look at**.

example, n. *koyi, nūni, koko-ya** ; his e. *kokoyansa*.

exceed, tr. v. *buwaya, buwaye, fi, zoḅa* (S.) ; *dada** ; e. in strength *gargara, gagara*.

exceed, to e. in (have much of) *yawaita*.

exceedingly, *ainin*.

excel, intr. v. *faye, ḍāra* (S.), *yin fifiko, gota, girme* ; to e. in size *gofa* ; who excelled the other ? *wanene ya fi wani* ?

excellence, n. *fiyayya, fiyayye, fiko, kayatazwa, kwari*.

except, adv. *sai, sai dai, sai ko*.

excess, n. *abinda ya faye, yawa*.

exchange, tr. v. *sake, yin musaya, furfura, furfuri*.

exchange, in exchange for a *bākin, maimakin, sābad da*.

exchange, to (barter) *furfuri*.

excitement, n. *karāya*.

exclamation, n. (expressing astonishment or incredulity) *hūba, hāba, kaiya, kāsa*; (expressing doubt or grief) *wai*; words used as an e. *maganar zuchiya*; e. of annoyance *kash, gasa*; e. denoting exultation *woho, oho*; (expressing pity or disgust) *asha, hasha*; (e. to attract attention) *ihu, uhu, ufu, yeho*; e. of welcome *māraba*; see also *oho*; an e. used in driving sheep *us, as*; e. of despair *wayuniya**; e. of pleasure *yauro*; see **indeed**.

excrecence, e.g. a swelling *gūda* (S.).

excuse, n. *huja, yarji**, *hamzari, hanzari*; a poor e. *gajeren hamzari*; he made e. *ya yi sāne*.

excuse, tr. v. *gafara, yin gafarta*; phr. e. me *ba ni yarji, gafara*.

executioner, n. *hauni* (K.).

exercise, n. to take e. (by walking) *yawo, wasa jiki*; (by riding) *kilisa*.

exhausted, part. *sumamme*; e. land *semu** (S.).

exhibit, tr. v. *nuna, nuni, gwada, goda*.

exhort, tr. v. *gargada, galgada, wajabta*.

exhortation, *gargadi, galgadi*.

exist, intr. v. *kashi, kashe, wanzu*; see **be**.

expand, 1. tr. v. *shimfida, shinfida*.

2. intr. v. *yalwata, yin auki, yin abki, habama**.

expansion, *auki*.

expect, tr. v. (to await with expectation) *jira*; (to anticipate) *tamaha, tammaha, yin tamaha, yin zache*.

expectation, *halamu, zache, zāto*; unfulfilled expectations *tumanin warabūka*.

expectorate, intr. v. *tofi, fesa, furja*.

expedition, military *debe, sa'ati*.

expel, tr. v. *kora, kore*.

expense, n., see **cost**.

expensive, adj. *da tsada*; phr. it is too e. *ya fi tsada* or *ya faye tsada*; to be e. *yin tsada*.

experienced, part. *gwani, goni*, pl. *gwanaye*.

expert, adj., see *prec.*

explain, tr. v. *waye*, *nuna*, *nuni*, *hadichi*, *yin fassara*, *fasalta*, *habarta**; phr. e. it to me *ka gāya ma ni*, *ambato ni*.

explanation, n. *wayewa*, *nunawa*, *fassara*, *fassaranta*, *azanchi*.

extend, tr. and intr. v. *yalwata*, see **expand**.

extended, be, intr. v. *miku*.

extensive, *tafkeke**, *tabkeke**.

extent, n. *matsawa*, *matuka*; see **limit**.

extinguish, tr. v. *bishe*, *biche*, *kufuli**.

extract, tr. v. *jawo*, *fisge*, *fizge*, *fusge*, *fishes*, *fishshe*, *fushe*; to e. juice etc. *tatsa*.

exult, intr. v. *yin rāha*.

exulting, n. *rāha*.

• **eye**, n. *ido*, pl. *idanu*, *idanduna*, *idanuwa*; eye-ball *kwayar ido*; e. socket *gurbın ido*, *gulbın ido*; pupil of e. *ijiyar ido*, *matsokachin ido*; eye-brow *gira*, pl. *girare*; e.-lashes *kain ijiya*; ridge over the e. *kashin ido*; e.-glass *madubin ido*; mucus from the e. *kwamtsa*, *kwamtso*; diseases of the e. *hakiya*, *hakanya*, *chizara*, *shawora*; cataract in the e. *tsauriya* or *tsawariya*; medicine for the eyes *korino*, *fidili*, *giwa-kamba*; a man

with deep-set eyes *mai-kwarmin ido**; a man with only one e. *mai-ijiya na gūda*, *mai-kishin ido*; a blemish in the e. *lahani*; watery e. (i.e. desire) *ruwan ido*; evil e. *kandu* or *kandun ido*; one with evil e. *maye*, fem. *mayya*; to put the evil e. on anyone *jifa wani da ido*; e. witness *shaidan ido*; to have dim eyes *dindimi*, *dundumi*; to look with eyes nearly shut *yin kan̄kanin ido*.

eye-brow, *gira*, pl. *girori*, *girai* or *girgira*.

fable, n. *tatsuniya*, pl. *tatsuniyoyi*, *misali*, *almara**, *fira**, *gātana*.

face, n. *fuska*, pl. *fuskoki* and *fuskuna*, *huska**; to f. towards the speaker *gabāto*; to f. in a given direction *fuskanta*; f. to f. *fuska biyu*; to fall on the f. *fad̄i jiche*; he looks one straight in the f. *idonsa kirikiri ne*.

fade, intr. v. *fafe*, *fofe*, *yaushi*, *yin yaushi*, (used of cloth) *kwaki*.

fading, adj. *kwaki*.

fading away, part. *kwāke*.

fail, intr. v. (decay) *rasu*; (f. to keep a promise) *kuskure*,

kurkura; (fall short of) *kāsa*, *gāza*; f. to get *tābe*, *tāfe*; f. to understand *rudī*; cf. he failed me in nothing *ba ya kāsa ma ni komi ba*.

faint, adj. *sumamme*.

faint, intr. v. *yin suma*, *jīn suma*, *suma*, *gaji*.

faintness, n. *suma*, *jiri*, *kumallo*, *falfada* (S.), *farfada* (K.).

fair, adj. *kyau*, *da kyau*, *mai-kyau*.

faith, n. *aiman*, *imani*, *aminchi**; the faith of Islam *musulumchi*; see **believe**.

faithful, adj. *yardaji*, *salihī**, pl. *salihai**, *mummuni*, fem. *mummuna*; the f. *amintattu*.

faithfulness, n. *aminchi*.

fakir, *wali* (Ar.), *waliyi*, pl. *waliyai*.

falcon, n. *shafo*, *shaho*.

fall, n. *fāduwa*, *saraya*.

fall, intr. v. *fādi*, *fāda*, *yin saraya*, *kucha**, *sako*; f. down before anyone *rusuna*, *run-suna**; f. in (used of a well) *gabche*, *gache*, *gwabche*, *abka*, *burme*; make to f. *goche ma*; f. upon *falma*, *farma*, *parma*, *haye*; f. in with *tsayi*, *tsaya*; to let a thing f. *fāda da*; to f. in price, *yin goino**; to f. out with *sha bambam*.

falling, part. *fāduwa*; f. into ruin *rushewa*; sound of f. glass *kilin kilin*, *kirin kirin*; f. in of a well *burma*.

false, adj. *mara-gaskiya*; to spread f. news *kwarmato*, *chinewa*, *tsinewa*; it is f. *kariya ne*; f. witness *shaidan zur*.

falsehood, n. *kariya*, *kariya-chi*, *zur*.

falsely, adv., to swear f. *yin kafara*.

falsify, to *kirfa*.

fame, n. *yābo*.

familiarity, *sabo*.

family, n., members of f. *iyali*, *uma**, *dangi*.

famine, n. *yunwa*, *farin yunwa*.

fan, n. *fifiche*, *mafuchi*, pl. *mafilfichi* (S.), *mafifichi*, *mafirfichi* (K.); (made of woven grass) *faijai*, pl. *faya-fai*; f. made of ostrich feathers *figina*, *figini*; (made of palm leaves) *giginya*, pl. *gigangani*, *giginyoyi* or *giginai*; (for winnowing) *bakache*, *matankadi*, *rereya*, *rairaiya*.

fan, tr. v. *fifita*, *fēta*, *bakache*; one who fans *mai-bakache*, *mafechi*.

fancy (supposition) *usuwasi*.

fanning, *fifitā*, *fitara*.

far, adj. *da nesa*.

far, adv. *nesa*; as far as *har*, *hal*, *har ga*, *tun*, *tun da*; to place f. off *nesanta*.

farewell, n., to bid f. *yin ban kwana*, *yin salama*; an expression of f. *sai wata rana*.

farm, n. *gona*, pl. *gonaki* or *gonakai*, *karkara*, pl. *karkarai*; farming *aikin gona*; owner or cultivator of a f. *mai-gona*; a farm lent by a master to a slave *gayauna**; a f. labourer who works for wages *kwadigo*, *dan kwadigo*; f. work *noma*; farming in one place and living in another *nomijide*.

fashion, n. (mode, custom) *hali*, pl. *halaye*, *yayi*; rings were the f. *ana yayin mun-daye*.

fast, n. *azumi*; the f. month *labaran*.

fast, intr. v. *yin azumi*.

fasten, tr. v. (e.g. with nails) *kafa*; (tie) *damre*, *balla*.

fastened, part. *kafaffe*, (closed) *girkakke*, fem. *girkakkiya*, pl. *girkakku*.

fastening (or loop), *maḡalli*.

fat, n. *kiba*, pl. *kibobi*, *kitse*, *kiche* (S.), *maski* (S.), *kauri*, *kabri*, *gwabi*; f. of meat *mai*.

fat, adj. *da kiba*, *da gwabi*, *mai-gwabi*, *da kauri*, *da kabri*, *ginshimi*, *da taiba*,

tunturum; one who is f. *mai-tumbi*, *mai-gato*, *mai-jiki*, *kutumba*, *gandi*, fem. *gandiya*; to grow f. *yin kiba*, *taiba*, *yin tiriniya*; to fatten *kibata*.

fate, n. *jinkiri*; see **destiny**.

father, n. *uba*, pl. *ubanne*, *ubannai* or *ubanni*, *bābā*; father-in-law *suruki*.

fathom, *gāba*.

fatigue, n. *gajiya*, *gajewa*, *gajiyawa*, *gayara*.

fatigued, to be f. *gaji*, *yin gajiya*.

fatness, n. *taiba*, *tiriniya*.

fault, n. 1. (defect) *aibi*, *aibu*, pl. *aibobi*.

2. (offence) *laifi*; f. finding *bimbini*.

favour, n. *alhēri*, *tagomashi*.

favourite, *dan tatangi*; f. wife *mowa*.

fear, n. *tsoro*, *tunzura*, *dimauta* (S.), *tunzuruwa**, *razāna*, *gizo**, *falgaba*, *fargaba*, *raki*; to cause f. *bada tsoro*, *tsoratad da*, *tsorata*.

fear, tr. and intr. v. *jin tsoro*, *razāna*, *rāzani*, *tsantsanta*.

feast, n. *buki*, *biki*, *idi*, *laiya*, *adaras**; to make a f. *yin buki*.

feasting, part. (esp. used of marriage f.) *wasan buki*.

feather, n. *fikafike*, *fiffike*, *fika-fiki*, pl. *fikafikai*; *fukafuki*,

- pl. *fukafukai*, *gashi**; a wing f. *kili*.
- fee**, n. (paid by recipient of a royal present) *tukuichi*, *takwichi*; market f. or the commission paid to a broker in the market *lada*; a court f. *ijara*, *ujera**.
- feeble**, adj. *kumāma*, *maras-karifi*.
- feebleness**, n. *kumamanchi*.
- feed**, 1. tr. v. (to supply with food) *chida*, *chishe*, *kiwata*, *chisad da*, *chiyar da*.
2. intr. v. (to eat) *kiwo*.
- feeding**, *chima*.
- feel**, tr. v. to perceive by touching *ji*, *taḡa*; to feel or grope for *lalabe*, *lalaba*; to be affected *ji*; to f. about whilst searching *fāfake*, *māmare*; to f. anything in order to test its weight *jinjini*; to f. afraid *jin tsoro*.
- feint**, n. (pretended attack) *zanzoma*.
- fell**, tr. v. (to cut down) *sare*.
- fellow**, n. (partner, match) *kama*, pl. *kamannu*; *tsara*, pl. *tsarare*; a f. traveller *maraki*, *marako*.
- female**, n. (of human beings and animals) *make*, pl. *māta*; phr. male and f. *wane da wanche*.
- female**, adj. *ta-mata*, *ta-mache*.

- fence**, n. *damfāmi*, *darni*; a f. round garden *danga*, pl. *dangogi*; a f. made of stalks or thorns to keep in sheep, etc. *shinge*, *shingi*, *shimgi*, *shimge*, pl. *shimgaye*.
- fencing**, n. (a game) *sharo*, *takai*.
- fern**, hare's spear f. *mashin zomo*; elk's horn f. *dafaddu*.
- ferry**, to f. across *yin fito*, *ketarad da* (S.), *ketaras da* (K.), *ketarshe* (before a pron.).
- ferryman**, n. *sarikin ruwa*, *maketari*, *mai-fitō*.
- festival**, n. *sallata*.
- fetch**, tr. v. *kawo*, *zo da*; see **bring**.
- fetish**, a f. spot *matsafa*.
- fetters**, n. *malwa*, *mulwa* (S.), pl. *mulwoyi* (S.); *māri*, pl. *maruruwa*, *maluluwa*, *gigar*, *sarka*, *dilka*.
- feud**, a blood-feud *tarna*.
- fever**, n. *masassara*, *zazzabi*, *jante*, *janti*, *gyante*, *mura*; I have fever *jikina ya yi dumi*; a f. which occurs when the guinea-corn is ripe *chiwo na sabon dawa*.
- fever**, to have f. *yin zazzabi*.
- few**, adj. *kāḡan*, *kanḡane*, fem. *kanḡanuwa*, pl. *kanḡana*, *kanana*, *tsaraurau*, *kīma*.
- fez**, n. *fūla*, *wula**, *fulan dara*, *fulad dara*, *tagiya*.

fibre, n., f. of palm tree *kaba* ;
a f. used for making rope
tsaiwa.

field, n. a cultivated f. *fili*, pl.
filaye ; *fako*, pl. *fagaigai* ;
gona, pl. *gonaki* or *gonakai* ;
a barren f. *sabra*, *saura* (Z.) ;
a very large f. *karkara*, pl.
karkarori.

field-mouse, *gyabji*, *gyauji*.

fierce, adj., to be f. *haukache*.

fiercely, adv. *da kangara*, *zafi*.

fifteen, adj. *goma sha biyar*
(or *biyal*) *sha biyar*.

fifteenth, adj. *na-goma* (fem.
ta-goma), *sha biyar*.

fifth, adj. *na-biyar*, fem. *ta-
biyar* ; one f. *humusi*.

fifty, adj. *hamsin*.

fig, n., f.-tree *itachen baure* ;
f. fruit *baure* ; for other
species of ficus see *chediya*,
gamji (S.), *ganji* (K.), *durumi*,
kawuri or *kawari shirinya*,
uwar yara, *wa*, *rubiya*.

fight, n. *fāda*, *fama*, *kokuwa*,
kokowa, *yaki*, *jayaya* or *ja-
yaya*, *sabuwa*.

fight, intr. v. *fāda*, *yin fāda*,
yin fama, *yin kokowa*, *yin
jayaya*.

file, n. *zarto*, *darto**, *maga-
gari**.

file, tr. v. *gurjago*, *gurzago* ;
to f. a sword *yin akaras*.

fill, tr. v. *chika*, *yin fal* ; to

f. full *chikakka* ; to f. up a
hole *turbude* ; phr. fill them
up *kawo chikonsu*.

filled, part. *chikakke*, fem.
chikakkiya, pl. *chikakku* ; to
be f. *chika*.

filling, part. *chikawa*.

filter, n. (usually in form of
small basket through which
water is strained out) *marari*,
abin rāga, *maregi*.

filter, tr. v. *rare*, *twatsa*, *tatsa*,
tache, *rēge* (S.) ; one who filters
mai-rarewa.

filtering, *rāga*, *tachewa*, *tata*.

filth, n. *dauda*.

filthiness, *janaba*.

filthy, adj. *da dauda* ; to be f.
yin najasa.

fin, (of a fish) *kāfa*.

finch, a species of, with grey-
blue plumage and red tail
sisita ; black-headed weaver
f. *shaida* ; fire f. *baiwar
Allah* ; widow f. or Whydah
bird, or widow weaver *za-
laidu*, *zulaidu*.

find, n., e.g. treasure-trove
galala.

find, tr. v. *samu*, *same*, *sami*,
sama ; try to f. *tuske*, *tuski* ;
to f. out (discover) *kaga* ; to
f. and bring *samo*.

fine, n. *tara*, *taro*.

fine, l. adj. (thin, delicate)
laushi, *da taushi*.

2. (beautiful) *da kyau* ; very f. *kālo kālo* ; very f. thread *arafia*.

fineness, *arafichi, rabshi, roshi, taushi*.

finger, n. *yātsa*, pl. *yātsosi, yātsu* ; the little f. *autan yatsa, dan kure* ; middle f. *yatsan tsaka* ; f.-nail *farchi, farche, kambari, kumba*, pl. *kumbuna* or *kumbai, danuba*.

finish, n., see **end**.

finish, v. *kāre, karki, wanya, wanyi, wanye, gāma, gūma, tuka, tuke, ida, shide*.

finished, part. *kafaffe*, fem. *kafaffiya* or *kafaffa*, pl. *kafaffu* ; phr. it is f. *ya kare, ya tsaya tammāt** ; he f. speaking *ya yi magana ya kare* ; the month is f. *wata ya mutu*.

fire, n. *wuta*, pl. *wutaitai, wutache* ; fire-place *murufu, murfu* ; a f. which has burnt down *rufushi, rubshi, rabchi** ; restoration of a dying f. *gwamin wuta* ; to light a f. *fura wuta, hasa wuta* ; to catch f. *chin wuta* ; make a large f. *gāsa* ; to strike f. with a flint *kyastu wuta* ; to miss f. (of a gun) *fasa, yin kariya* ; to f. a gun *halbi* (or *buga*) *bindiga* ; a f.-swallower *kumuria*.

fire-brand, *bakin wuta*.

fire-finch, *baiwar Allah*.

fire-fly, n. *dimin dawā, make-surwa, mai-kesurwa, mai-kyasuwa*.

firewood, n. *itachen wuta, kirari, kirare*.

fireworks, n. *wasan wuta* ; (display of) *wowo*.

firmament, n. *hawā**, *samā**.

first, adj. *na-fari*, fem. *ta-fari*.

first, adv. *na-farko, da farko, da fāri, tukun, tukuna* ; to be f. to do anything *wada*, I am the f. to come *na wada zuwa*.

fish, n. *kīfi*, pl. *kifaye, kifofi* ; mud- or lung-f. *gaiwa* ; electric cat-f. *minjiriya, miji-riya, misiriya* ; large f. from which oil is obtained *gini, zau* ; a kind of dog-f. *karāya* ; a shell-f. *kumba**, pl. *kumbuna** ; a flat f. with reddish snout *kūma* ; cat-fish *ragon ruwa, tarwada, mari, kurungu, gwando* (S.), *gartsa* (K.), *kulme* ; sting-ray *kunāmar ruwa* ; a f. with a belly like a frog *talibamban* ; thread-fin *abokin taru*, Nile perch *giwar ruwa* ; cichlid perch *karpasa, karfasa, karpashe, gargaza* ; tiger-f. *tsage, kawara, shambana* ; mormyr *lulu, dan sariki* ; a f. like a salmon *faliya, fariya* ;

for other species of f. see under *gargaza*, *ḡaramchi*, *bana*, *bodāmi*, *dummi*, *hariya*, *ishi*, *kuku*, *milgi*, *rajiya*, *silla*, *sololuwa*, *yauni*; f. bones *ḡayan kifi*; a hand-net for catching f. *koma*, *homa*, *foma*; a spear for catching f. *hagu*; a f. trap *murumuru*, *sankuja* (K.), *sankiya*; wicker-work snares for catching f. *tsatsara*, *sasasara*; a cord or stalk on which f. are carried *lēshi*.

fish, tr. v. *sunta*, *sunche*, intr. *yin fatsa*, *kama kīfi*; f. with small hand-net *su*.

fisherman, n. *masunta*, pl. *masu-su*, *ḡan fatsa*, *masunchi*.

fishing, *sunta*; a place for f. *masunta*.

fishing-basket, *suru*.

fishing-hook, *ḡugiya*, pl. *ḡugiyoyi*, *fatsa*, *ḡugiyar fatsa*.

fishing-line, *igiyar fatsa*, *mam-mari*, *marimari*, *murumuru*, *murimuri*.

fishing-rod, *itachen fatsa*.

fissure, e.g. in stick or rock *gebe*.

fist, n., to close the f. *tunkushe*; to strike with the f. *ḡan-ḡwasa*, *ḡanḡwashe*, *naushe*; see **box**.

fit, n. (fainting f.) *gamata*, *falfada*.

fit, to, cf. it fits exactly *ya kama rab* (or *rap*); that which is fitting *sawaba*.

fit, adj. *da ya kamata*, *sawabe**, *sawaba**.

fitting, be, intr. v. *kamata*, *ḡamshe*, *gama**.

five, adj. *biyar* (K.), *biyal* (Kats.), *biyat* (S.); f. thousand *hamsa**, q.v.

fix, to f. a tax *yanka ḡandu*; to f. a price *yanka kurḡi*; see **fasten**.

fixed, to be f., e.g. in a tree *rungūma*.

flag, n. *tuta*, pl. *tutochi*.

flame, n. *halshen wuta* (lit. tongue of fire), *balbalniya*.

flap, v., to f. the wings *fuffuka*, *fiffika*.

flapping, e.g. of wings *fuffuka*, *pupuka*.

flat, a f. place without trees *kanga*; he fell f. *ya faḡi kita*.

flatten, tr. v. *nāna*.

flattened, part. *nananne*, *na-nake*.

flattery, n. *kirari*, *lallashi*, *ban magana*, *godo*, *yin godo*, *ma-abanchi*.

flavour, n. *ḡarḡi*, *zaḡi*, *zazza-ḡa**; the nut has a good f. *ḡyada tana da ḡarḡi*.

flax, n. string made of f. *kirtani*.

flay, tr. v. *fēda, fede, fīda, fīde, fige*, figi*, saba, sabē.*

flying, *rīda.*

flea, n. *tunkwiyo, tunkwiya, chichifi*; pite pite f. *tsando, kūma.*

flee, intr. v. *gudu, guje, furche, tsire, yin chīri, fūffika, fūffuka, tunzura, sukuwa, suka, sukwani, ruga, rugo*; a place to which to f. *wurin gudu*; to make to f. *rauga*; see **drive away**.

flesh, n. *nama*, pl. *namomi, namuna*; uncooked f. *nama danye*; (bush-meat) *naman daji*; cooked f. *dāfau.*

flight, n. *gudu, guduwa, chīri, fartat**; to put to f. *bada janfi**.

flint, n. *kyastu, ketu, kyetu*; f. in a f. lock gun *damishi, kan̄kara, dutsim bindiga*; to strike fire with a f. *kyastu wuta*; f. and steel for striking a light *masabi, masebi.*

float, used by fishermen, made of twigs *karu.*

flock, n. *garke, garge* (S.), pl. *garkuna.*

flog, tr. v. *fyada, fyade, doke, buga, yin kurfu, yin būlāla, fīade.*

flogging, n. *kurafu, kurfu, karfu*, fyādi, kāshi.*

flood, n. *rigyawa, chikōwa, chichikōwa, tabki, malala*.*

floor, n. 1. (for threshing) *masussuka.*

2. to stamp down a f. *dābe.*

florin, *fataka*, pataka*.*

flour, n. *gāri*; the coarse f. which is separated from the finer f. of wheat *tsāki*; f. mixed with water *taliya*.*

flourish, intr. v. *yalwata.*

flow, intr. v. f. quickly *tumbudu*; to f. together *saje.*

flower, n. *fūre*, pl. *furanyi, furaye*; a plant with a thistle-like flower which grows in cultivated fields (*Vernonia perrottetii*) *burzu.*

flute, n. *algaita, algaitu, sarewa, sheshe* (K.); a reed from which flutes are made *kusumburuwa.*

fly, n. (common house f.) *kuda, kujē*, pl. *kudaje, kudaidai*; horse f. *gwarje, bōbuwa, barbaje, damisan dawaki*; a piece of leather placed on horses' eyes to keep off flies *furtali, futali*; fire-fly dimin *dawa*; sand-f. *fīfilwa, filfilwa, kyafirfita, kiyashi, kudān garke*; a large horse f. *makafon kuda*; dragon-f. *masu*; a large biting f. *tsanji.*

fly, intr. v. (of a bird) *shawage, jawagi*.*

foal, n. *dukushi*, fem. *dukusa*,
pl. *dukusai*, *dan dukushi*.

foam, n. *kunfa*, *kumfa*, *kumpa*.

foam, to *yin kunfa*.

fodder, *kansuwa*, *kyasuwa*; see
grass.

foetus, of animals *tāyi*.

fog, n. *hāzo*, *kāsashi*.

foggy, adj. *da hazo*.

fold, n. (for sheep, etc.) *garke*,
garge (S.), pl. *garkuna*, *turke*,
pl. *turāku* (K.), *turuka* (S.),
rugga; cutting folds of cloth
kirfawa.

fold, tr. v. (cloth, etc.) *nimka*,
linke, *yāfa*, *yāfo*, *kunsa*,
kunshe, *lauya*, *tākura*.

folding, (the arms) *buku*;
f. cloth *rībiye*.

foliage, n. *ganyen itache*.

follow, tr. v. *bi*; f. a path *bi
hanya*; to f. in the direction
of the speaker *biyo*; following
(esp. used of loyalty to a
patron) *biyeya*, *biyawa*.

followers, n. *masu-bi*.

folly, n., see **foolishness**.

fond, adj. to bef. of *yin marmari*.

fondling, n. act of f. *lalaba*,
taushe.

food, n. *chima*, *chimaka*, *abin-
chi*, *tuwo**, *jībi**; much f.
machiya; f. shared in com-
mon *chiyāya*; a calabash
full of f. *kaḅaki*, pl. *kaḅuka*;
remains of f. *sanso*, *sudi*,

marmashi; to gather f. for
the poor *tarbata* (S.).

fool, n. *wawa*, pl. *wawaye*,
hauka, *magagachi*, *afalalu*,
badada, *bada-bada*, *dolo*, *gaḅo*,
hamsoro, *limota* (S.), *loto*, fem.
lotuwa; *mai-wauta*, *marwauta*,
mahaukachi, fem. *mahau-
kachiya*, pl. *mahaukata*;
foolish talking *badagula*, they
talked foolishly *sun yi bo-
bawa*; a f. who pays without
counting *ba-turen chacha*.

foolish, *da wawa*.

foolishness, n. *wawanchi*,
hauka, *mabuya*, *barkwanchi*;
foolish talking *badagula*;
tawa, *gaga* (S.).

foot, n. *kāfa*, pl. *kafafu*, *kafofi*,
kafuna; a f. regarded as a
measure of length *tāki*, pl.
tāke-tāke, *tāki-tāki*; a foot-
print *sau*, *sawu*; foot-rings
munduwayen kāfa; sole of
f. *tafin kāfa*, *mataki*, pl.
matukai; tendons of f.
matsarbaje (S.); on f. *a kāfa*;
a f. soldier *dan-ḅasa*, *sa'ati**.

footman, e.g. a man who
walks in front of a chief's
horse *zāgi*, pl. *zagagi*.

footstool, *mataki*.

for, l. prep. (for the sake of)
domin, *don*; for his sake
dominsa; see **account of**;
(in view of) *ga*.

2. conj. (because) *fa, zama.*

forbearance, n. *hankuri, hankura, hakura, hakuri.*

forbid, tr. v. *daḱile, hana.*

force, n. *tīlas, karifi*; by f. *da tilas, tilas, dole, doli*; to use f. *yin tilas, tilasa (K.), tilasda (S.)*; phr. I was forced to go *na tafi tilas* or *wajibi ne na tafi.*

ford, n. *mahayi, maketari, mashigi.*

ford, to *hayi.*

forearm, n. *gāḅa, kusun-hannu, bauni (S.), pl. baunukka.*

forefather, n., see **ancestor.**

forefinger, n. *manuni.*

forehead, n. *goshi.*

foreign, adj. *ajami**; f. (i.e. unintelligible) *bobawa, bau-bawa, pl. bobayi*; f. speech *bauchi.*

foreigner, n. *Ture*, ba-Ture*; that which pertains to a f. *turanchi.*

foresight, *tānadi (S.).*

foreskin, *loḅa, sulli.*

forest, n. *rukuki, daji, dāwa*; dense f. *kurmi, kurumi, kumchi*.*

forethought, n. *hankali, tādadi (S.).*

forge, n. (anvil) *maḱera*; worker at a f. (blacksmith) *maḱeri, mai-kīra, pl. mukira, maḱeri.*

forge, tr. v. *kīra.*

forget, tr. v. *manche, shāgala da, yin mantuwa, manta.*

forgetfulness or forgetting, n. *mantuwa, sakafchi.*

forgive, tr. v. *yafe, yafe ma, gafarta, yin gafara, yarda*; f. *me ka yi mini gafara.*

forgiveness, n. *gafara, gafarta.*

fork, n. (iron toasting f.) *rino, rinu*; the f. of a bifurcating stick *gōḱa, gwafa*; a stick with a f. in it *itache maigōḱa.*

forked, adj., a f. stick *shishiniya (S.), shushiniya (K.)*; a f. iron stick on horse's neck *kasagi.*

forlornness, n. *kewa, kiwa.*

form, n. (shape) *kama, supa*, sifa.*

former, adj. *naḱari*; the f.... the latter *wanchan...wanchan.*

formerly, adv. *ḱazu, daḱari*; in former times *na dā*; as in former times *kaman na dā.*

fornication, n. *shakalichi, fasi-kanchi.*

fornicator, n. *mashakalchi, shakali, bambagi, mai-fasikanchi.*

forsake, tr. v. *bari, bar.*

forthwith, adv. *nan da nan, ana nan, ko yanzu.*

fortunate, adj., it was f. *ya yi arziki*; to be f. *yin daula*; see **lucky.**

fortune, n. (prosperity) *arziki*, a man of f. *mawadachi*, pl. *mawadata*; good f. *gamon-katar*.

forty, adj. *arba'in*.

forward, adv. *gaba*; to move a little f. *guso*, *gurguso*.

foster, f. mother *uwal rufi*; f. child *dangana**; one who fosters *tallafi*, *gona*; to act as a f. parent *tallafa*, *taulafa*.

foul, i.e. to make muddy *gurbache*.

foundation, n. *gato*, *gindi*; f. of a wall *tushi*, *tushiya*.

founded, part. *kāfaffe*, fem. *kāfaffiya*, pl. *kāfaffu*.

fountain, n. *maromaro*, *mar-maru*.

four, adj. *fudu*, *hudu* (Zanfara), *puḍu* (Daura), *arba'a**, *arba**; by fours *fudu fudu*; four each *furfudu*.

fourteen, adj. *goma sha fudu*, *sha fudu*.

fourth, adj. *na-fudu*, fem. *ta-fudu*; f. day *chitta*.

fowl, n. *kāza*, pl. *kaji*; speckled fowls *wakewaken kaji*; a f. plucked for cooking *shikir-kita**; a place where fowls are kept *akurki*; a f. laying eggs *dakwaluwa*.

fox, n. long-eared f. *nyanyawa*, *yanyawa*.

fracture, *kariya*, *karaya*; see **break**.

fragment, n. *gutsura*, pl. *gutsure*, *guntu*, *guntun abu*, *fara* (S.); f. of broken pots, etc. *sakaina*, *tsingaro* (S.), *katanga*.

francolin, see **partridge**.

frankincense, n. *turare*; small box for f. *ḍan lulu*; a tuber from which f. is made *kajiji*, *gajiji*; f. tree *hano*, *ararra-bi*.

fraud, n., see **deceit**.

free, adj., one who is f. *ḍa*, *ḍiya*.

free, tr. v. *bari*, *bada ḍiyauchi*, *yanchi*, *yantas*, *yauta ḍa*, *ḍiyanta*, *yanta*, *kwankwanche*, *sāka*, *yin sāki*, *sawanta*.

freed, part. *bararre*, fem. *barar-riya*, pl. *bararru*.

freedom, n. *yanchi*, *ḍiyauchi*, *ḍiyanchi*, *ḍiyantaka*, *sāki*, *sawani*; a certificate of f. *laya*, *layan ḍiyauchi*; f. given to a slave on the death of his master *mudābar* (S.), *madabar*.

frenzy, n. *wāhami*, *hauka*.

frequent, adj., see **often**.

frequent, tr. v. (visit often) expressed by use of *kan* with verbs meaning to go to; he frequents the place *ya saba da wuri*.

fresh, adj. *sābo*, fem. *sābuwa*, pl. *sababbi*; applied to plants, etc., fem. *ganye**, *ḍanye*, *ḍanya*, pl. *ḍanyu* or *ḍanyoyi*.

Friday, n. *aljimma*, *aljimmu'a*, *jumma'a*, *jummu'a*, *jimma'a*, *jimmu'a*.

fried, part. *soyayye*, fem. *soyayya*, pl. *soyayyu*.

friend, n. *aboki*, fem. *abokiya*, *abuya*, pl. *abokai*, *abokanai*, *kawa*; *masoyi*, fem. *masoya*, pl. *masoyu*; *maso*, pl. *masowa*; *tsara*, *kama*, pl. *kamanu*; *ḍan-uwa*, pl. *yan-uwa*; *zumu*, fem. *zumunya*, *juna*, *amīni**, *shibi**, *sahabi**, *dangi*, *danga*, pl. *dangogi*; *maḳwabchi*, pl. *maḳwabta*; friends *tsarare*; my friends *yan-uwana*.

friendship, n. *abuta*, *zumunchi*, *zumunta*, *halin aboki*, *shiriya*, *ḍan-daḍi-daḍi*.

fright, n. *tunzuru*, *tunzuruwa*, *tsoro*.

frighten, tr. v. *tsorata*, *bada tsoro*, *yin ruba*, *burga*; to f. or be frightened *firgita*, *firgiche*, *razana*.

fringe, *giraza*, *geza*; a f. for horses' eyes *hutali*, *jutali*, *furtali*.

fro, going to and f. *yauchi*, *zāgo*; to go to and f. *zazzaga*, *zazzage*, *kai da kawo*.

frog, n. *talibambam**, *kwado*, pl. *kwadḍi*, *kwadodi*; small dark coloured f. *warnu*; an edible f. *burdudugi*, *burtutiki*; tree f. *tsumbe*; bull f. *kozo*.

frog-spit, or cuckoo-spit, *kumfa*, *kakas*.

from, prep. *dāga*; (when followed by the personal pronouns) *dāga gare*; *tun*, f. birth *tun haifuwa*; f. within *dāga chiki*; f. afar *dāga nesa*.

front, n. *gāba*, pl. *gābobi*, *goshi*; in f. *a gāba*; in f. of *gāban*; to go in f. *tsaitse*; go in f. *ku chi gāba*; he got in f. of us *shi ya riga mu*.

front, to *doshi*, *dosa*, *doso*; he fronted them *ya doshe su*.

frontier, *iyaka*; a f. town *kain iyaka*.

froth, n. *kunfa*, *kumfa*; f. skimmed off in making bread, etc. *ḳulli*, *ḳullu*; f. at mouth of a dying man *dafara*.

frown, intr. v. *ḍamre fuska*, *yin baḳin* (or *bakar*) *fuska*, *jirkita fuska*, *murtsuka fuska*.

frowning, n. *harāra**.

fruit, n. (of trees) *ḍan itache*, *ḍiyan itache*, *yayan itache*; (of grains, etc.) *ḳwara*, *ḳwaya*; the f. of the earth *ḍiyan ḳasa*, *yan ḳasa*.

fruitful, adj., an epithet applied to corn *mai-ido*.

fruitless, adj., e.g. f. toil *aikin wofi*.

fry, tr. v. *soya*.

frying, *suya*.

fuel, n., see **firewood**.

fugitive, n. *gujaje*, *mai-gudu*, *korarre*, pl. *korarru*; *maguje*, *maguji*, pl. *magudane*, *maguda*.

Fulah, pr. n., a F. native *ba-Fillache*, *ba-Fillata*, *ba-Fillatana*, *Fulata*, pl. *Fillani*, *Fulani*; the F. language *Fillanchi*, *Fulatanchi*; the F. people *Fulbe*.

fulfil, to *chika*; to f. a promise *chika alkawali*.

full, adj. *chikakke*, fem. *chikakkiya*, pl. *chikakku*; a *chike*, fem. a *chika*, pl. a *chiku*; (f. to the brim) *fau*; see **complete**.

fulness, n. *yayalwachi*.

funeral, n. *biso*; lamentations at a f. *makoki*.

fungus, a club-shaped f. which grows on ant-heaps *tumukun suri*.

funnel, *mazurari*.

furbish, tr. v. (e.g. a sword) *kuda*.

furrow, n. *kwäri*, pl. *kwaruruwa*, *kwäre* (S.), *rumaniya*; to draw a f. *karta*; furrows on the cheeks *karrara maya* (S.).

further, adj. (= more distant) *mafi nisa*.

future, adj. (= that is to come) *mai-zuwa*; in f., adv. *zuwa gäba*.

gadfly, *bobuwa*, *bubu* (S.).

gag, n. *majanga*.

gain, n. *riba*; unlawful g. *kūra*, *riba*, *harāmiya*; to make unlawful g. *chin riba*, *chin haramiya*, *chin kūra*.

gall, n. *maḍachi*, *saifa*, *dwatana*, *ruwan dwatana*; g. bladder *matsarmama*.

gallant, *mai-ḍauki*.

gallantry, n. *ḍauki*.

gallop, n. *suka*, pl. *sukaikai*; at a g. a *sukwane*.

gallop, intr. v. *yin sukuwa*, *sukuwa*, *sukaya*, *sukayo*, *sukani*, *sukwani*; a place for horses to g. *masukwani*, *fage*.

galloping, a place for g. *masukwani*.

gambler, n. *bakanchi*, *ḍan chacha*; see *ba-turen chacha*.

gambling, n., a game for g. *chacha*, *alfowa*, *dära*, *modi*; to throw down money in g. *yin wasa da kurḍi*; see *mu-zuru*.

gambol, *kiriniya*, *tsalle-tsalle*.

game, n. *wargi*; games played by children *karkachi*, *dare gäre*, *gyauga*, *lambe* (S.), *lai laya*, *langa*, *shillalo*, *tulatuki*, *ubulunguwi*, *runfuki*, *wäha*.

dokin wuya, *zure*, *izgili*; g. played by fortune-tellers in order to discover secrets *dirka*; a g. played with cowry shells *dara*; a gambling g. *chacha*; a call to join in a g. *shu*, *shiyo*, or *shiyu*; a wrestling g. *gumaza*; a fencing g. *takai*, *sharo*.

game, n. (food) *naman daji*.

gaol, see **prison**.

gap, e.g. between two teeth *wishiriya*.

gape, intr. v. *yin hamma*.

gaping, n. *hamma*.

garden, n. *danga*, pl. *dangogi*; *lambu*, pl. *lambuna*, *aljanna**.

gardener, n. *mai-gona**.

gargle, n. *wanken makoshi*.

gargling, n. *kurkura*.

garlic, n. *tafarnuwa*, pl. *tafarnai*; *taparnuwa*.

garment, n. *riga*, pl. *riguna*; old garments *tsumma*, pl. *tummoki*, *keso*, pl. *kyassa*, *ragga*; see **clothes**.

garner, n. (a place for storing grain) *rufogo*, *rafoniya*, *rumbu*, *rufewa*.

garnished, part. *gyartache*, fem. *gyartachiya*, pl. *gyartattu*.

gasp, intr. v. (for breath) *yin fuka*, *shesheka*, *shasheka*; one who gasps *mai-fuchi*.

gasping, n. *haki* (S.), *shashaki*.

gate, n. *kofa*, pl. *kofofi*; gateway, see **doorway**.

gather together, l. tr. v. *tara*.

2. intr. v. *taru*, *gayya*.

gathered, part. *a tara*, *a taru*, *tararre*, fem. *tararra*, pl. *tararru*.

gathering, n., e.g. of people before a king *kindigaye*; see **assembly**.

gaze, n. *kallo*, *tsokachi*.

gaze at, tr. v. *kallo*, *tsokachi*, *chokachi*, *dauro*, *doro**, *nuri**, (generally in a bad sense) *yin zuru*.

gazelle, n., see **antelope**.

generosity, n. *baiwa*.

generous, adj. *da kara*.

genii, n. *jinnu*; see **demons**.

gently, adv. *sanu*, *sannu*, *lako-lako*, *sako-sako*.

genuine, adj., g. money *kurdi tsaba*.

Germany, pr. n. (used in North Africa) *Bursiya*.

gesture, a g. expressing disapproval *ambola*, *dakuwa*.

get, tr. v. *samu*, *same*, *sami*, *sama*, *samo*; g. out! *je ka*, fem. *je ki*; g. along *ku yi ta tafiya*.

ghost, n. *fatalwa*, *magiro*.

giant, n. *gazaguru*.

giddiness, n. *gigichi*, *jiri*, *hanani*.

giddy, adj. phr. I am g. *kaina*

- shina kewayewa* or *ina jin jiri*; to be g. *gigita*; to make g. *dāme, dāma*.
- gift**, n. *kyauta, kaya*, pl. *kaya-yaki, abin gaisuwa, baiko*; free g. *alheri*; g. given to conciliate *tsaraba*, see **bribe**; gifts coll. *baiwa*.
- gimlet**, n. *berīma, mararaki*.
- gin**, n. (for animals) *tarko*.
- gin**, n. (a spirit) *baraza, barasa*.
- ginger**, *chitafo, chitan Afo*.
- giraffe**, *rakumin daji, rakumin dāwa*.
- gird**, tr. v. *damre, daure, dam-ra, yin damāra, darmi**.
- girded**, part. *damrarre*, pl. *damrarru*.
- girdle**, n. *damarichiki, damāra, maḍamrin chiki, tamantaka**; a g. made with copper *tagula, tugula, tagura*; a g. of cloth *taraya*; a woman's g. *gyauto, dan gyauto, jigida*; a woman's g. of beads *tsakiya, kwātana*; a g. of cowries *kiribi*.
- girl**, n. *yarinya*, pl. *yam-mata, diya*; a young g. *tantabara*.
- girth**, n. (of a horse) *bauji*; a g. strap *majayi, kaitaro*.
- give**, tr. v. *ba, bāda, bashi, bayas, baya**; to g. back *bayas da*; to g. up *bayas, bayar, sallame, bāda, bashi, yarda bashi**; to g. alms *yin sadaka*.
- giver**, n. *mai-bada, mabaya**.
- gizzard**, of a bird *kundu*.
- glad**, to be, intr. v. *yin farin-chiki, yin (or jin) murna*.
- gladden**, tr. v. *bada (or sa) murna, faralta*.
- gladiolus**, a wild *rimana, ru-mana*.
- gladness**, n. *farin-chiki, murna*.
- gland**, *kaluluwa*.
- glass**, n. *mādūbi*; a dish made of g. *tamgaram, kwachiya**, pl. *kwachaye*; a looking-g. *mādūbin ido, matsokachi*; the sound of falling g. *kilin kilin, kīri kīri, girin-girin*.
- glean**, tr. v. *kālāta, yin kāla, rore, yin saura (or sabra)*.
- gleaning**, *roro*.
- gleanings**, n. (of a harvest) *kāla, saura**.
- glorious**, adj. (of God) *jalla**.
- glory**, n. *daraja, darajiya, girma**.
- glove**, n. *rigar hannu*.
- glue**, n. *danko**.
- glutton**, n. *mai-loma, machi*, pl. *machiya, mai-rida, mafā-lashi, mai-kwaraka*.
- gluttonous**, *zwari*.
- gluttony**, *mayin chi, zwari, zari*; see **greed**.
- gnash**, tr. v. *tamna haḳori*.
- gnashing**, n. (of teeth) *tsukun haḳori*.

gnaw, to *chisga*, *chizga*, *gur-gura*.

go, intr. v. *taji*, *je*, *zaka*, *zatsa**, to be about to go *za*; to go round a place *ziyara*, *zaga*, *zagi*; to go before *gabāta*, *gabāche*; to go forth *fita*; to go away *kau*; to go constantly to a place *shishiga*; to go as far as *tusga*, *tusge*; to go with a person *tare*; to go to meet *tariye*; go out of *fita*; to go by night *bi dare*; to go after a wife in order to bring her home *biko*; phr. go on with what you are doing *yi ta yi*.

goat, n. *akwiya*, *akuya*, *akwuya*, pl. *awaki*; he-goat *bunsūru*, pl. *bunsūrai* or *bunsūraye*; a young g. *burguma*; a long-haired species of g. *buzuruwa*; a speckled g. *gitsawa* (S.), *gwalande*; a vicious g. *watsatsi*, fem. *watsatsiya*; old lean g. *guzuma*; a castrated g. *tabre*, *taure*; beard of a g. *rairo*, *rero*; a g. in milk *karduwa*.

goat-sucker, see **night-jar**.

God, pr. n. *Allah*, the plural *allohi* is used of idols.

going, part. *tafiya*; they are g. *sunatafiya*; a g. away *maraita**.

gold, n. *zinariya*.

gonorrhoea, *chiwon sanyi*, *masuna*, *fyauka*.

good, adj. *nāgari*, fem. *tāgari*, pl. *nāgargaru*, *mai-kyau*, *kyau*, *kekyawa*, *salih*; phr. g. or bad *fari ko baki*; g. used as an exclamation *to*; g. morning *sanu da safe*, *sanu da rana*; g. evening (on parting) *sai da safe*, (on meeting) *sanu da dare*; good-bye for the present *sai an jima*; g. news *albishir*; g. news for you *albishirinka*; a g. disposition *kyakyawan hali*; something g. *abin kiroki*; see under *sanu*.

good-bye, to say *ban kwana*.

goodness, n. *nagarta*, *nagar-chi*, *kyauta*; (of flavour, etc.) *zaki*.

goods, n. *dukiya*, pl. *dukoki* or *dukiyoyi*; *kaya*, pl. *kaya-yaki*; g. for sale *haja*, *faja**; (property) *tarkache*.

goose, n. *dumya*, *dinya*; a wild g. *gāba**.

gore, n. *jini*.

gore, tr. v. (of horned animals) *tune*, *tunkuda*, *tunkuji* or *tunkwiyi*, e.g. the bull and the cow gored each the other *sa da saniya suka tunkuda junansu*; *soka*, *soke* or *soki* with intens. *soosoke*.

gorge, n. 1. see **throat**.

2. (a narrow defile) *kwa-zazzabo*.

gorgeous, adj. (splendid) *na ado*, e.g. *g. robes riguna na ado* (or *masu-kawa*).

goro-nut, n. *goro*, pl. *gwarra*; see **kola-nut**.

gory, adj. *da jini, na jini, sai jini*.

gospels, the *linjila*.

gossip, n. 1. (talk) *raushi, roshi, tadi, waiwai, alungu-manchi, kwarmato, azuzan-chi, hira*.

2. concr. an idle talker, a gossip *alungumi*, pl. *al-gunguma, azūji, sururi* (S.).

gourd, n., a plant whose fruit is either eaten or formed into cups and calabashes; among the various kinds which are eaten are *kabēwa* (K.), *kubewa* (S.), *goji, kabus, karamiya*; among those used as vessels are *kwariya, korya, kurtu, masaki, maseki*, and *duma*; see also *baska, gūro* (S.), *jallo* (K.), *tsana* (S.).

gourds, roots of, coll. n. *yado*.

govern, v. (rule, reign) *mal-laka*; see **rule**.

governor, n. *hākimi**, pl. *hākimai, masarauchi, wakili*; *sariki* is sometimes used in this sense.

gown, n. *riga*, pl. *riguna*,

salaha; the body of a g. as opposed to the sleeves (*han-nuwa*) *uwar riga*.

grace, n. (favour, free gift) *jinkai, aikin gafara, alhēri, kyauta*; he showed g. to us *ya yi ma mu alhēri*.

graceful, *da nasiya, da nasiha*.

gracious, adj. (of God) *karīmu*; good g. ! *haba mana*.

grain, n. 1. *kwara, kwaya*, pl. *kwarori*; g. that springs up of itself *gyamro*; g. which has been kept a long time *suna*; g. which has been husked *surfe*.

2. fig. grains (as of sand) *barbadi*.

grain, receptacle for, n. *taska*, pl. *taskoki, rufogo* (K.), *rafoniya, rufewa* (S.), *rumbu, tsunjiya*.

grammar, *nahau, nahauri*; one who is learned in g. *malamin nahau*.

grand, adj. (important) *babba*, pl. *manya*; *mai-girma*, pl. *masu-girma*.

grandchild, n. *jika*, fem. *jikanya*, pl. *jikoki, jikannu*; a great g. *taḥakunne*.

granddaughter, n., see prec.

grandfather, n. *kāka*, pl. *kakanni, uban uba*, e.g. your g. *uban ubanka*.

grandmother, n. *kākanya*.

grandson, n., see **grandchild**.

grapes, forest g. *tsibir-kinkini*, *chibir-kinkini*.

grasp, with the hand, tr. v. *jimka*, *rumchi*, *rumtse*, *jimke*; with the arms (to embrace) *rungume*.

grasping, adj. fig. (covetous, greedy) *da rowwa*, *marowachi*.

grasping disposition, n. *rowwa*, *kawazuchi*.

grass, n. 1. gen. *chīyawa*, pl. *chīyayi*, *yayi*, *haki*, pl. *hakūkuwa*; green g. *chīyawa*, *danye*, *hāki*, pl. *hākuwa*; green g. which has recently sprung up *tsatse* (S.).

2. spec. of various kinds and uses: Bermuda or dog-*g. kiri-kiri* or *tsirkiyar zomo*; comb fringe g. *gude-gude*; cuscus g. or Vetiver g. *jema*; elephant g. *yambama*, *hambama*, *dawar kada*; prickly bur g. *karangiya*; Spanish reed g. *gabara*; a grass used for filling cushions *roba*, pl. *roboba*, *robuna*; a g. appendage worn by certain pagan tribes *takatsara*; dried or chopped g. for horses *ingirichi* or *ingirochi*; undried g. as fodder *kansuwa*, *kysuwa*, *komayya*; a g. eaten in times of famine

(*Eragrostis tremula*) *bumburuwa*, *bubburwa*; a low coarse g. *birbiro*, *birobiro*; a g. eaten by horses *gadagi*, *garaji*, *lambusu*; a g. for making brooms *tsintsiya*; plaited g. *tsaiwa*, *tsawa*; a soft hairy g. *yan-hutu*; g. used for thatching *shifchi*, *yāma*, *yantso*, *būnu*, pl. *būnai*, *daudau*; a g. used in making mortar *datsi*; a g. shelter or hut *dabi* (S.); see also *bun-surun daji*, *gazama*, *karareyo*, *machara* (K.), *tuji* (Eleusine indica), *burgu* (*Panicum* sp.), *harḳiya* or *harikiya* (*Digitaria debilis*).

grasshopper, *dindiba*, *dunkurkuda*; green g. *askalaya* (S.); spotted g. *wuḳar sariki* (lit. king's knife).

gratitude, *maida girma*.

gratuitous, adj. *banza*.

grave, n. *kushewa*, *kusheya**, pl. *kusheyi*, *kushewoyi*, *makwanchi*, *kābari*, *kabri*, *wurin bisne*, *wurin kushewa*.

gravel, n. *tsākuwa*.

graze, v. 1. tr. *kiwo*.

2. intr. of cattle id.

grease, n. *mai*.

greasy, to be or become *nāshe*, *nāshi*.

great, adj. 1. (both physically and morally) *babba*, pl. *manya*

or *maya*, *mai-girma*, *da girma*; a g. king *sariki babba* or *babban sariki*; very g. (very important) *manya manya*.

2. (quantitatively and of degree) *da yawa*.

3. spec. applied to God *jalla**, *jalala**, *akbar**.

4. of one in authority as a king or prince *madaukaki*.

great, to declare g., v. 1. (to honour) *girmama*.

2. *kabbar**, e.g. to declare that God is g. *kabbar ga allah akbar*.

3. to be g. *bunkāsa, kasaita*.

greater, adj. comp. *mafi-girma*, pl. *masu-fi-girma*; in the absence of superl. forms the idea is expr. by phr. *ya fi duka* or *ya fi kowa* appended to the adj.; he was greater than he *ya fifiche shi*.

greatness, n. *girma, zati*.

greed, n. *rowwa, marowwachi, tsumulmula* (K.).

greedy, adj. *da rowwa, zargi, bahilchi, mayinchi, hadama, kanwa, kwalama, machi, zwari, makwadaita, mai-kwaraka, mafalashi, mai-kurmusu**, *marowwachi*.

green, adj. 1. (the colour) *algashi*, fem. *algasa*, pl. *algasai*,

algasu, tsanwa, chanwa; dark g. *kore*, fem. *koriya*, pl. *kwarrai*; light g. *kore-kore*; g. esp. applied to g. dyed leather *korino*.

2. (fresh) of plants etc. *ɗanye* or *ɗanyi*, pl. *ɗanyoyi, ɗanyu*.

greet, tr. v. 1. *gaida, gaishe, gaisa, yin fawo*, e.g. I greeted the man and he accepted my greeting *na gaida mutum ya karɓa gaisuwata*; we g. *muna gaisuwa*; I g. thee *a gaishe ka*.

2. (of religious salutation) *yin salatu*; we g. *muna salmawa*.

3. to g. by shaking the hand *jinjina*; to wave or extend the hand in greeting *miɓa hannu*, e.g. I greeted them with my hand and departed *na miɓa ma su hannu na tafi*.

greeting, n. *gaisuwa*.

grey, *efo*, turning g., as from age *furfura*.

grief, n. 1. (pain of mind, sorrow) *nadāma, ladāma*.

2. (cause of pain or sorrow) *wahala*.

3. (expression of grief) *kuka*, e.g. he made great g. over him *ya yi kuka dayawa a bisansa*.

grieved, be, intr. v. *wahalda*,
jin wahala.

grimace, a *gwalo*, *kogama*,
zumde.

grind, tr. v. 1. gen. *nika*, *tusa*,
tushe, *reda*, *daka*, intensive
to g. to powder *daddaka*,
dandaka, *daddaga*; to g.
thoroughly *barza*; to g. rice
etc. *tingama*.

2. (to whet or sharpen)
wasu, *gyarta*.

grinding, of wheat, n. esp. used
of regrinding *barzawa*, *tushi*.

grindstone, *mawashi*, *niki*;
a stone for smoothing a g.
makodi.

grip, to *kwakwume*, *damka*; to
g. the throat *kwakwumewuya*.

gripe, tr. v. (of medicine)
murda.

gristle, n. *gurunguntsi*.

groan, intr. v. *yin nishi*.

groaning, n. *nishi*.

groom, n. 1. *shamaki*, pl. *shamakai*,
dan muri, *dan turke*.

2. (bridegroom) *ango*, pl.
anguna.

grope, v. *lalabe*, *mamare*; (to
search one's way with the
hands in the dark) *burkuti*,
bulkuchi, *dundumi*.

ground, n. 1. (surface of the
earth) *kasa*; on the g. a *kasa*
or a *kas*; hard flat g. *kekuwa*.

2. (cause) *sababi* or *suba-*

*bi** without g. (or grounds)
babu sababi.

3. (first principle or founda-
tion) *gutsu*.

ground, to (of a boat) *kafa*.

ground, pass. participle 1.
(finely) *raushi*, *roshi*, *rabshi*.

2. (roughly) *da tsaki*;
badly ground flour *barzo*.

ground-nut, n., i.e. *Arachis*
hypogaea *gyada*; a smaller
species of g.-n. *gujiya*, pl.
gujiyoyi, *gujeye*; oil extracted
from g.-n. *man gyada*.

grouse, sand-g. *barwa*, *kwanta-*
toi, *suwaka*, *ladin rogo*.

grow, intr. v. 1. of plants *tsira*,
tsire, *tsiro*, *chira*.

2. to increase in size *girma*,
yin girma.

3. to g. (i.e. to become)
zama; to g. old *tsufa*.

growing, *matashi*.

growl, to (of a lion) *babaki*.

growling, *gurnani*, *ruri*.

grown, full g. *rikakke*, *kasai-*
tache.

gruel, n., made of guinea-corn
kunu; a thin g. *salala*.

grumble, v. *yin gunaguni*, *yin*
guri, *yin bimbini*.

grumbling, n. *bimbini*, *bibini*,
zargi, *gunaguni*.

grunting, (of a pig) n. *tsuwa*.

guarantee, to *lamunta*.

guard, n. 1. (heed, care) *tsari*,

e.g. be on your g. against
ka nema tsari.

2. (soldier of king's body-guard) *dakare*, pl. *dakaru*,
dogari, pl. *dogarai*.

guard, tr. v. *tsära*, *tsäri*, *tsäre*,
tsäro, *batäka*, *ritse*, *rutse*, *ratse*.

guardian, *mai-tsari*, *mai-tsaro*.

guard-room, *jaru**, *jarum**.

guest, n. *baço*, fem. *baçuwa*,
pl. *baçuna*, *baçi* or *baçokuna*.

guide, n. *jagaba*, *shugaba*, pl.
shugabai, *koranga* (K.), *ma-*
jan-hanya.

guide, tr. v. (lead, - conduct)
kai, *bida*, *bishe*; (to instruct)
galgade, *gargadi*.

guile, n. *munafuchi*, *munafun-*
chi, or *manafuchi*; (cunning)
wayo, with g. *da wayo*.

guilt, n. *laifi*.

guiltless, adj. *babu laifi*, *maras-*
laifi.

guilty, to declare, v. *kada*,
bada laifi, *kayas**.

guinea-corn, n. *däwa* (Sor-
ghum vulgare), *tsaba* (S.),
*gero**. There are four chief
kinds of *däwa*: *ķaura* used
for feeding horses, *farafara*,
farfara used when ground
for making gruel, *murmura*
or *muramura** eaten whole
when cooked, *giwakamba*
used as a medicine for rub-
bing on the eyes; the red

or grey g.-c. with close-
growing head *janjare*; husks
of g.-c. *kwardo*; g.-c. pod
tsirgagiya; an intoxicating
drink made from g.-c. *giya*;
g.-c. fever, occurring when
the g.-c. ripens *chiwo na*
sabon däwa; g.-c. which has
sprung up in an unsown
farm *kakarya*; see *badawa*,
ḍan-jigäwa, *gangariya*, *malle*,
shinkafar-talaka.

guinea-fowl, n. *zabo*, fem.
zabuwa, pl. *zabi*, *kazar ya-*
raba; cry of the g.-f. *kilkal*,
kukui.

guinea-pig, *ḥeran turawa*.

guinea-worm, n. *kurkunu*,
girgamo; a small plant used
as a medicine for g. *daman-*
käda, *dumankäda*; a swell-
ing caused by g. *hangara*.

guitar, n., a kind of *ķofsa*.

gullet, n. *janai* (S.), *janyaro*
(K.).

gully, a dry g. *kozazzabe*, *kwa-*
zazzabo.

gum, n. *dankö*, *jirai*; spec. a
g. put in ink *ķäro*; a g. used
in perfumes *ķaron maje*,
bafur; gum-bearing trees
chiriri, *ḍakwara*, *düli*, *dum-*
she, *ḍundu*, *ķarkara*, *ķwar-*
kwara, *fara ķaya*, *taura*.

gums, n. (seat of the teeth)
däsashi (K.), *dasori* (S.).

gun, n. *bindiga*, pl. *bindigogi*; *adakka**; a double-barrelled g. *bindiga da baki* (or *mai-baki*) *biyu*, *tagwayen bindiga*; to load a g. *dora* or *chika bindiga*; to discharge a g. *halbi* (or *halbe* or *buga*) *bindiga*; flint of a g. *kankara*, *dutsim bindiga*; report of a g. *kārar bindiga*, *āmo*; a flint-lock g. *mai-kamsir*, *mantampas* (S.); a maxim g. *mai-ruwa**; a long-barrelled Arab g. *sawaila*, *tsawila*.

gunpowder, n. *albarus* or *albarushi*.

gush out, intr. v. *zuba*, *zubo*; to g. out abundantly *gushēgushē*.

gusset, n. *tsumma*, pl. *tsummoki*; cloth g. in a tobe *shiga*.

gypsum, n. *aljibus*, *alzibus*.

habit, n. *ta'ada*, *tāda* (S.), pl. *tadodi*, *ada*, *hali*, *kabiya**, *sabo**, the last especially of aptitude acquired by practice, phr. nothing can be done except by practice *aikin duniya duka sai sabo*; see **habituated**.

habitation, n. *mazamni*.

habituated, to be, intr. v. *saba* constr. with *da*.

haggle, intr. v. *yin chiniki*,

tallata, *yin talla*; see **bar-gain**.

haggling, *talla*.

hail, n. *kankara*, *ruwa da kankara*.

hail! exclamation = welcome! *sannu*, a *gaishe ka*, *sai lafiya*.

hair, n. *gashi*, pl. *gasusuwa*; spec. head of h. when cut off *suma*; h. on the cheeks *saje*; h. of tail of horse, elephant, etc. *tsagiya*; abundance of h. *gizo*; absence of h. on head *kundumin kai*; long ridge of h. left in shaving *shasanda*; tuft of h. in the middle of head *zanko*; h. of woman plaited *bijaji*, *bujaji*, *buji-buji*; h. worn by women in curls down their cheeks *kitso*; twisted locks of woman's h. at side of face *dauri*; grey h. *furfura*; h. on cheeks and upper lip *washēfe*; h. tied in knots with a ridge in the middle *shetambuwa*; a head of h. *sura** (S.); a tuft of h. of a young man *toliya*; the h. came off *gashi ya tūshe*.

hairdresser, n. *mai-kitso*, fem. *makitsiya*, *wanzami*, *maikalmishiya*.

hairy, adj. *da gashi*, e.g. its face is all h. *fuskassa duk da gashi* or *fuskassa sai gashi*;

a h. person *galgasa*, *gargasa* ;
h. all over *duguza*.

half, n. *shashi*, *shashe*, *sashe*,
rābi, *nusufi** ; h. a piece of
cloth, paper, etc. *ausagi*, *ḡāre*.

hall, n., entrance h. *zauze*, pl.
zauruka.

halt, adj. *gurgu*, pl. *guragu*,
makasari.

halt, intr. v. 1. (to limp) *yin*
gurgunta.

2. (to stop marching, to
stand still) *tsayi*, *tsaya*, *tsai*.

3. spec. to h. for the night
shida or *shide*.

4. fig. to h. between two
opinions *yin zuchiya biyu*.

halter, n., also a leading-rope
for horses, etc. *āsawayi*,
rāgama.

halting, n. *tsayi* ; (limping)
gurgunta, *gurmunta*, *gur-*
gunchi.

halting-place, for the night,
n. *zango*, *mashidi*, the last
in the sense of a lodging
or khan ; spec. temporary h.
for carriers *loko*.

halve, tr. v. *ḡare*, *ḡara* ; in less
strict sense (to divide) *raba*.

hamlet, *unguwa*, *anguwa*,
tūnga, pl. *tungaigai*.

hammer, n. *kwarikwasa** ; a
blacksmith's h. *masāba*, pl.
masābai ; a large h. *ama-*
*deshi** ; a small h. *matalaga*,

muntalaga ; h. of a gun
kunāma.

hammock, *rāga**.

hand, n. 1. *hānnu*, pl. *hānnu-*
wa, *hannāye* ; the right h.
dama or *hannu na dama* ;
the left h. *hagum*, *hagu*,
hauni, *hannu na hagum* or
hānnu na hauni ; the palm
of the h. *tāfin hānnu* ; the
back of the h. *bayan hannu*.

2. of place or direction,
right h. *dama*, *wajen dama* ;
left h. *hagum*, *hagu*, *hauni*
or *wajen hagum*, etc. ; of
time, at h. *kusa*, *da kusa* ;
to raise the h. *chira hannu* ;
see **hands**.

handed, left-, adj. *bahago*.

handful, n. (of mud, flour, etc.)
dunkule, *churi*, *damka*, *jimki* ;
to take a h. *jimke*, *chura*,
chibra (S.), *damke*, *dimtso*,
jimka.

handkerchief, n. *maharma*,
maharama, *adiko*, *mai-yani*,
mayani ; spec. a h. on
woman's head *kallabi* ; h. to
bind round woman's head
alfuta, pl. *alfutai*.

handle, n. *mariki*, pl. *marika*,
makāma, *maḡauki*, *maratayi* ;
h. of axe *bakin gatari*, *ḡota*
(Kats.), *ḡota* (K.) ; h. of box
makama, *ḡota*, *zoben kaya*.

handle, tr. v. *tāḡa*.

hands, to clap the, v. *tafa*, *tafi*, *tabi* (S.); to shake h. *yin musafiha*, *ban hannu*.

hands, a man with his h. tied to his neck, n. *kukumtache*, pl. *kukumtattu*; the tying of a man's h. *kukumi*, *kunkumi*; shaking h. *masafiha*, *musafiha*.

handsome, adj. *da kyau*, *mai-kyau*; a building h. to look at *gida da kyaun gani*.

hang, tr. v. *rataya*, *rataye*, *yin rataya*; to h. up *rataya*, *yin rataya*; to h. up meat done, *kere*.

hanging, n. (curtain, etc.) *reto*, *rataya*.

hanging, n. (e.g. h. up of curtains) *yani*.

hanging, l. adj. (suspended) *a rataye*.

2. part. *ratayarwa*.

hank, of yarn *sulu* (S.).

happen, intr. v. l. *afku*, *abku*, *faru*, e.g. it happened *ya faru*, what has happened? *mi ya faru?*

2. (i.e. befall) *same*, *sama*, *sami*, *samo*, *gudāna*, e.g. what has happened to you? (i.e. what is the matter with you?) *mi ya same ka?*

happiness, n. l. (satisfaction) *dadi*, *dadin zuchiya*, *alhēri*, *murna**, *fārin-chiki*, *gatan-chi*.

2. (in a religious sense) *sa'ada**.

happy, feel, intr. v. *jin dadi*.

harass, tr. v. *tsananche*, *tsananta*.

hard, adj. l. phys. *tattaura*, fem. *tattauriya*, *da tauri*, *tsandauri*; see seq.; also morally hard, obstinate.

2. (difficult of accomplishment, etc.) *da wuya*.

harden, l. intr. v. (to become hard) *yin tauri*, *taurare*.

2. tr. v. to h. *taurata*, *tsaurata*, *yin tauri*.

hard-headed, n. (an obstinate person) *mai-kin ji*, *mai-taurin zuchiya*.

hardness, n. *tauri*, *tsauri* (Zanf.); also in a moral sense, e.g. *taurin zuchiya* h. of heart.

hare, n. *zomo*, pl. *zomai*.

harlot, n. *shakaliya*, pl. *shakalai*; *sarkachiya*, *bombegi**; child of harlot *dan-farka*.

harlotry, n. *sakarchi*, *shakalchi*.

harm, n. *hanna*, *laifi*, e.g. there is no h. in it *babu laifi*.

harm, tr. v. *hata*, *hache*.

Harmattan wind, *iskan buda*.

harpoon, n., for river fishing *zāgo*, *hagu*, *margi*; an iron-tipped h. fired from a gun *sango*.

hart, n., see **deer**.

hartebeest (*Damaliscus Senegalensis*) *dāri*; West African

h. *kanki*, pl. *kanoki*, *kan-kuna*.

harvest, n. *girbi*, (i.e. the season) *kaka*.

harvest, to cut down the, v. *girba*; see **reap**.

haste, n. *sauri*, *samri*, *anniya*, *garaje*.

hasten, intr. v. *yin anniya*, *hanzarta* (K.), *hamzarta*, *hamzanta* (S.), *kwarare*, *gau-gata*, *gagauta*, *gagawa*; to h. after *zazari*; h. to catch up *ku chika*; to h.; i.e. to accelerate *hamzarta*.

hastening, n. *garaje*, *gaugawa*.

hastily, adv. *da sauri*, *da hamzari*.

hat, straw, n. *gurumfa*, *garumfa*, *garunfa*; a large straw h. *mālaḡa*, *maḡa*, pl. *malaḡuna*, *malafai*; *ḡan gurumfa* designates a small trader, who carries goods on his head; see **cap**.

hatch, tr. v. *ḡyanḡyashe*, *ḡyanḡyasa**.

hatchet, n. *ḡātari*, pl. *ḡātara*, *ḡātura*, *ḡāturuwa*, *ḡāfiya*, *wal-waḡa*, *warwaḡa*; small h. *ḡan ḡatari*; handle of a h. *bakin ḡatari*; spec. small h. for cutting grass for fodder *kurāḡa*, *kuradda*; h. with broad blade *barandami*, *tsi-taka*.

hate, n. *ḡiyeya*, *ḡiyaiya*, *ḡiyo*, *ḡiwo*.

hate, tr. v. *ḡi*, *ḡiya**.

hater, n. ag. *maḡiyi*, pl. *maḡiya*.

hatred, *ḡiyaiya*, see **anger**.

haughtiness, n. *fāḡin rai*, *fāḡin zuchiya*, *ḡirman kai*, *ḡirman rai*, *homa*, *foma*, *toma*.

haughty, adj. *da ḡirman rai*, *tomo*.

haul, tr. v. *ja*.

haunch, n. (of a cow) *kwan-kwaso*.

Hausa, pr. n., the Hausa nation, country, language *Hausa*; a H. native *ba-Haushe*, pl. *Hausawa*; the H. language *Hausa*, *magana Hausa*, *hal-shen Hausa*, after the manner of the Hausas *Hausanchi*, I understand H. *ina jin magana Hausa*, to speak H. *yin magana Hausa*; see **language**.

have, tr. v. (to possess) *na da*, *ke da*, also expr. by *ga* (to), or with pronouns *gare*, e.g. I h. a friend named Hassan *ina da aboki sunansa Hasan*, a certain man has a camel *wani mutum shina da raḡumi*, we h. *mu ke da*, I h. much money *kurḡi ḡayawa gare ni*.

haversack, *amasai*.

hawk, n. *shirwa*, pl. *shirwoyi*,

or *shirwuna*, *karamāta*, *tan-karki*, *tsinkaki*, *shahu**, *shafo*; swoop of a h. *bara*, *sura*.

hay, n. *baro*, *ingirichi*, *ingirochi*.

haze, n. *hazo*, *kāsashi*.

hazel nut, n. *chanza*.

hazy, adj. *da hazo*.

he, pers. pron. *shi*, *ya*, *yi*, *i**; *shi* is emphatic and used as separate pron. before *ya*, e.g. but my brother he saw her afar off *amma kanena shi ya gan ta da nesa*, it is also used with dependent clauses and wishes; *ya* is used in the aorist and in impersonal expressions as *ya isa* it is enough.

head, n. 1. (of animated beings) *kai*, pl. *kanuwa*, *kawana*, *kawuna*.

2. (chief point or substance of a statement) *kai*.

3. (chief person) see **chief**; back part of h. *keya*; a man whose h. protrudes at the back *mai-kyeya*; a person with a large h. *mai-kai*; standing on the h. *rimi*; to hang the h. *sunkwiya da kai* (K.); leaning the h. on the hand in token of distress *tagumi*.

headache, n. *chiwon-kai*, *jiri*, *jeri*.

head-dress, n. *rawani*, pl. *rawunna*; (of a woman) *fatala*, *patala*.

headlong, adj. and adv. *da gangara*; to fall h. *sulla da kai*, *fada da kai*.

headman, 1. (of a village, place, etc.) *sariki* or *sarki*, q.v., *dagachi*, pl. *dagatai*, *kunduda*, *makwayo*, *haki-mi**.

2. (of a caravan) *madugu*, pl. *madugawa*.

heal, tr. v. *warke*, *warkad da*; pass. to be healed *warke* and the pass. form, e.g. remain here until he be healed *ku zamna a wurin nan sai ya warke* or *sai a warke shi*.

healed, particip. (h. in body or restored in mind) *warkakke*, fem. *warkakkiya*, pl. *warkakku*.

healing, *warkasuwa*.

health, n. (i.e. good h.) *lāfiya*; in h. *lāfiya* and *da lafiya*, frequently used in salutations, e.g. are you in h.? *kana lāfiya?* ans. in very good h. *lāfiya lau*; to be in good h. *yin lāfiya*; to improve in h. *jin dama*, *warware*; restoration to h. *afuwa*; he recovers his h., he becomes better *ya samu afuwa* (or *lāfiya*), *ya ji rangwame*; one

in bad h., sick, a patient
maras-lafiya.

healthy, adj. *lafiya*.

heap, n. *taro* or *taru*, pl. *tarori*,
tūli or *tulli*, pl. *tuloli*, *kitila*;
a h. of branches, etc. *zubugi*.

heap up, tr. v. *haɗa*, *ɗora*;
spec. to h. up earth round
plants *firi*, *furi*, yin *maimai*,
q.v.

hear, tr. v. *ji*.

heart, n. 1. (the bodily organ)
zuchiya, pl. *zukata*, *zuchiyoyi*,
zutochi or *zukochi*, *gaba**.

2. (the feelings) *zuchiya*,
e.g. *zuchiyata ta ɓache* my h.
was broken; to be cut to the
h. *jin zafin zuchiya*; to learn
by h. *samu harda*; to know
by h. *yin harda*, *hardache*;
to say off by h. *yin tulawa*;
they lost h. *hankullansu*
duka sun tashi.

heartburn, *kwarnafi*, *kwan-*
nafi.

heartless, adj. *magaya* or *ma-*
gauchi, pl. *magauta* or *magata*.

heat, n. *zāfi*, *zufa*; spec. h. of
the sun *gumi*.

heathen, n. *arne*, pl. *asna*, *azna*,
arna; *kafiri*, pl. *kafirai* and
kafirawa; *majusi*, pl. *majusa-*
wa; *ba-Maguje*, pl. *Maguzawa*.

heathenism, n. *kafirchi**, *ka-*
*furchi**, *halin kafirai**, *as-*
nanchi, *aznanchi*, *arnanchi*.

heave, tr. v., to h. a sigh *aje*
zuchiya, yin *sheda*.

heaven, n. *sāma*, pl. *samaniya*,
sammai, *samomi*, *gidan da-*
wama; h. and hell (the after-
world) *lahira*; the Moham-
medan paradise *aljanina*.

heaviness, n. (great weight)
nauyi.

heavy, adj. *da nauyi*, *mai-*
nauyi.

heddles (of a loom), *allera*,
annera (S.).

hedge, n. (fence) *darni*, *danga*,
damfāmi, *shimge*, *shinge*, pl.
shimgaye, *kiliya*.

hedgehog, n. *bushiya*, *baushi-*
ya, *babagumi*.

hedges, a plant used in making,
n. *fidda sartse*, *bi-ni-da-zugu*,
chi-ni-da-zugu.

heed, n. *tsāri*; take h. *nema*
tsāri.

heed, v. 1. (to take notice
of anything) *kūla*, *tuna*,
tunane, all constr. with *da*.

2. (to attend to what is
said) *saurara*, *ji*; spec. to
take h. to an agreement, etc.
ɗamre magana.

heel, n. *dudduge* or *diddigi*,
duga-duga, pl. *dugadugai*,
dunduniya.

heifer, *karsana*.

height, n. *tsawa*, *tsawo*, *tsai*,
tsayi, *hawa*, e.g. it is three

cubits in h. *tsawonsa kamu uku*.

heir, n. *magadi, magaji*, pl. *magata, magada, māmāyi*; h. to the throne *chiroma, yarīma*; h. to the throne *majiran gado*, at Kano *wambai, daudu, dauda*; to have as h., i.e. to be succeeded by *gāda da*.

Hejira, the, n. *hijira*.

held, particip. *rikakke*, fem. *rikakkiya*, pl. *rikakku*.

hell, n. *jāhannama, jahīma*; h. and heaven (the future world) *lahira*.

hell-fire, n. *jahīma*.

helmet, n. *bushiya, kwalkwali, buke*.

help, n. *tamayi, taimako, taimakawa, sauḱi, agaji, agaza, shalli, tanyo* (Zanf.); h. especially in war *gudummuwa, gudummauwa, gudunmawa*; to ask for h. *zūkatta*; to obtain h. *samu sauḱi*; to send h. *koro sauḱi*.

help, tr. v. *taya, tanya* (S.), *tanye, tanyo, yin taya, taimaka, taimaki, taimake, tamaya, yin taimako, agaje, sauḱi, sauwaka, sawaka, yin shalli*; to ask for h. *gāyato*.

helper, n. ag. *mataimaki, matanyi, abokin tayo*.

hem, n. *lafi* or *lafe shafi*,

shafe; to make a h. *kalmāsa, kalmashe*; to h. round *dāje*.

hemorrhoids, *bāsur*.

hemp, African bowstring h. *moda*; Indian h. *rama*.

hen, n. *kāza*, pl. *kaji*; a hen laying eggs *daḱwaluwa, daḱwalwa*; the Hen and Chickens constellation which appears when the rainy season is coming *kaza mai-yaya* or *kaza da yaya*.

hence, adv. *dāga nan, dāga wurin nan*.

hen-coop, n. *akurkin kāza, akurki*.

henna, *lalle*.

her, 1. possess. pron. suffixed to a masc. n. *-nta*, suffixed to a fem. n. *-lta, -rta*, e.g. h. daughter *ḱiyarta*, h. camel *raḱuminta*; used separately if the object possessed is masc. *nata*, if fem. *tata*, see H. Grammar; these stand also for Engl. 'hers.'

2. pers. pron. objective suffixed to verbs and preps. *-ta*, e.g. he saw h. *ya gan ta*, to h. *gare ta*; and separate (after prepositions) *ita*, e.g. he returned along with h. *ya komo tare da ita*.

herb, n. (green blade) *ganye*, fem. *ganya*, pl. *ganyaye*.

herd, n. *garke**, *garge* (S.), pl. *garkuna*.

herdsman, n. *makiyayi*, pl. *makiyaya*, *makyayi*, pl. *makyaya*.

here, adv. *nan*, a *wurin nan*, *dāga nan*, the latter also = from h., from this point, e.g. do you know the way from h. *ka sani hanya dāga nan ko?*

hereditary, an h. profession, *chinikin gida*.

heretofore, adv. (until now) *har yanzu*; h. I have not heard this *dadai ban ji wannan ba*; as h. *kaman na dā*; see **ever**.

hermit, *mai-halwa**, *mai-kiya-mal duniya**, *sufi**.

hero, *gamzo*.

heron, n. *zarbi*, *zarbe*, *zalbi*; great white h. or egret *farin zarbi*; see **egret**.

hers, separ. possess. pron. *nata*, *tata*; see **her**.

hesitate, intr. v. *yin zuchiya biyu*.

hesitation, n. *zuchiya biyu*.

hiccough, n. *shākuwa*, *chiwon shākuwa*.

hid, to be, v. *boye*, *boyi*.

hidden, particip. *boyaya*, *boyu*, *rufaffe*, fem. *rufaffa*, pl. *rufaffu*.

hide, n. *kilāgo*, pl. *kilāgai*;

kilabo, *kirgi*, the latter used of h. after tanning, the untanned h. is called *fata*.

hide, 1. tr. v. *rufe*, *rufi* or *rife**, *boye*, *boyi*, *sakaye*, *sulle*.

2. intr. v. (to hide oneself) *boye*, *boyi*, *lābe* (S.), *raḥe* (K.), *fāke*, see **ambush**; to h. behind a person in fear *rafake*, *ranfake*, *rampaki*; to h. oneself *boyo*; to h. right away or completely *bobboye*.

hiding, n. *boyewa*.

hiding-place, n. *maḥoya*, *ma-boyi*, *mafaka*, *fako**; a place for hiding or laying up anything *ma-aje*, *ma-aji*.

higgle, v. *talla**.

high, adj. *dogo*, fem. *doguwa*, pl. *dogaye*, *du tsawo*.

hill, n. *tudu*, pl. *tudodi* or *tuduna*, *tsauni*, pl. *tsaunoni*, *tsaunaye*, *tsaununa*; a h. covered with sand *jiggarwa* or *jigawa*, pl. *jigawoyi* or *jigawuna*; hillock *burji*, *birji*.

himself, pron. both emphatic as *shi da kansa*, and also reflexive, e.g. prov. he who weeps for another weeps for h. *kowa shi ke kuka da wani shi kuka da kansa*.

hinder, adj. *na-baya*, fem. *ta-baya*.

hinder, tr. v. *hāna*, *kwabe*.

kwaba, kwabo, laruranta, tankosa, tankwasa.

hip-bone, n. *kātāra*.

hippopotamus, n. *dorina*, pl. *dorinai* or *dorinnai*.

hire, n. (wages) *lada, sūfuri, alāro, ijāra*; a hired labourer *kwadigo, dan kwadigo*; a person seeking h. *mai-koda*; to work for h. *yin sufuri*.

hire, tr. v. *yin sufuri, sufurche, sufurta, sufurchi, jinganta, ijarta*.

hiring, n. *ijarchi*.

his, possess. pron. suffixed to a masc. n. *-nsa*, suffixed to a fem. n. *-lsa, -rsa*, e.g. h. camel *raḱuminsa*, h. mare *godiyarsa*; as separate pron. if the object possessed is masc. *nasa* or *nai*, if fem. *tasa* or *tai*.

hiss, intr. v. *yin fuchi*.

hissing, n. *shishita*; of snakes *fuchi*.

histry, *tāriyo**.

hit, tr. v., see **strike**.

hither, adv. *nan**, *ga wurin nan**.

ho! interj. to call attention *kai*.

hoard, to *tsimi da*.

hobble, a rope used to h. horses, n. *dabaibayi, dabai-biya* (S.), *tabaibayi, tarnāki*.
hobgoblin, n. *fatalwa*.

hoe, n. *fatanya, fartanya, hauya*, pl. *hauyu, hauyuna* or *hauyoyi, mashemi, kyante, kuruga*; spec. a large h. bent like small plough *galma* (S.), *garma* (K.); a long-handled h. with triangular blade *kumbu, kumbuwa*; a h. with long handle and broad blade used for cutting stubble *kwasa*; a h. used as a dibble *sungumi*.

hoe, tr. v., to dig or stir the ground *noma, nomi, nome, chira, furi, firi, fuda, hūda*; to cut down grass with a h. *shema*; the first hoeing after sowing *gwarzo* (S.), *turbe, chirbe* (Z.); the first hoeing before sowing *kaftu, kabtu, kufurtu*; clearing ground for hoeing *zāfa* (S.).

hoed, *nomamme*, fem. *nomam-miya*, pl. *nomammu*.

hog, n., see **pig**.

hoist, to h. a flag *chira tuta bīsa*.

hold, tr. v. *riḱa, riḱe, riḱi, riske, riski, ruska, aje**, e.g. he held the door *ya aje ḱofa*; to h. fast in the mind *riḱe, riḱa, riḱi*; to lay h. on *kama*; to h. up at arm's length *dāga*; to h. back *turke, zamne**; to h. the breath *haḱiye* (*haḱe* or *ḱauki*) *lumfashi*.

holding fast, n. *rikawa*.

hole, n. *rami*, *rame* (S.), pl. *ramuna*, *ramu*, *kwarmi*, pl. *kwarmu*, *ɓariya* or *babbariya* (S.), *faffago*, *fāgo*, *fūji*, *kurfi*, pl. *kurfofi*, *kurfu*, *pampama* (S.), *mashiga*, *sāra*; h. for game to fall into *hāko*, pl. *hākōki*, *bima*; a h. for dung *kwakwari*, *masai*, *salga*; a back entrance to a fox or rat h. *ɓuga*; a h. in which grain is planted *kamfa*; a h. in a wall *kusfa*, *kusuwa* (S.); h. where dirty water is thrown *katami*, *kwatami*; a h. to look out at *taga*; h. for storing corn *tsunjiya*; h. made in nose of ox for rope *asirka*, *zari*; h. for entrance *kofo*; h. in a seam *ɓarāka*; to make many holes *huhuda*, *fuffuda*.

hollow-backed, adj. *gantsarwa*.

holy, adj. *da tsarki*; a holy man *sharif*.

homage, n. *chaffa*, *chappa*, *mubaya*, *mabaya*.

homage, to do (by kneeling down) intr. v. *durkusa*, *yin chaffa*.

home, n. *gida*; at h. *chikin gida*.

honest, adj. *mai-gaskiya*, *da gaskiya*; an h. man *mutumen gaskiya*.

honey, n. *zūmmuwa*, *zūma*, *ruwan zummuwa*; a stick of h. *algarwai*.

honey-guide (bird), *gunda*, *maganiya*, *ɗan zuma*.

honour, n. *yabo*, *ɗaraja*, *ɗarajiya*, *manyanchi*, *mayanchi*, *girma*, *ɗaukaka*.

honour, tr. v. *yin yabo*, *girmama*, *bāda girma*, *ba* (or *bāda*) *ɗaraja*.

honoured, participial adj. *yababbe*, fem. *yababba*, pl. *yababbu*.

hoof, n. *kofato*, pl. *kofatai*.

hook, n. *kugiya*, pl. *kugiyoyi* or *kugiyuna*; large wooden h. *kwandariya*; hooks on a fishing-line, coll. *mammari*, *murumuru*; a fish h. *fatsa*, *kugiyar fātsa*.

hook, to h. on to *kalgame* (S.); to stick with a h. *makāta*.

hoopoe, *chigi da tukku*, *katutu*.

hop, to h. on one foot, intr. v. *lange*, *bira*, *ɗira*.

hope, n. *bege*, see **expectation**.

hope, intr. v. *yin bege*, *ta maha*, *yin tamaha*.

hopping, n. *langa*, *lange*.

hopping, n. *dire*; a h. game *shillalo*.

horn, n. *kāfo*, pl. *kafoni* and *kafuna*, *kaho*; (a trumpet *kāfo*, *waza*; a cow with a h. growing downwards *saniy*

mai-dauri; without horns *dugūmi*.

hornbill (*Bucorvus pyrrhops*), ground h. *burtu*; African h. *chilikowa*; *shamo*, *shamuwa*; see also *ka-ki-ganin Allah*.

horned, *da kăfo*.

hornet, n. *rina*, pl. *rinoni*, *rinainai*.

horse, n. *doki*, fem. *godīya*, pl. *dawaki*, *dawakai*; spec. young h. *săfi*, *săfe*, fem. *săfiya*; *dukushi*, fem. *dukusa*, pl. *dukusai*; old lean h. *guzuma*, *gwabta*; war h. *ingarma*, pl. *ingarmu*; a h. that walks with its ankles on ground *mai-takin biri*; a h. with a hollow back *doki mai-lotso*; a bay h. *furde*, *sari*; a black h. *akawali*, *kyara*, *kiyara*; a speckled black and white h. *chichiro*; a brown h. *aharas*, *aharashi*, fem. *aharasa*; a cream-coloured h. *akaza*; a light brown h. *gunya*, *sira* (S.); a bay or dun h. *sari*; white-faced h. *bola*; a white h. *kili*, fem. *kiliya*; a roan h. *bidī*, *dandas saki*; a black and white h. *kilikamya* (S.), *sheji*; h. speckled white with black *alshafi*, fem. *alshafa*.

Horse's harness, diseases, etc.: small bells on h. head

chikasaura, *chikasabra*; strap round h. head *maraya*; h. breast-band *ḍan gāba*; h. breast-strap fastened to saddle *majayi*; h. cloth put under saddle *kafu*; a disease of h. foot just above the hoof *alafa*; a skin disease in a h. *siminya*; a disease on legs of a h. *tijo*; a medicine poured into h. mouth *chushe*; a place for horses *shamăki*, pl. *shamăkai*; a h. disease which causes the hair to fall off *dasusu*; a runner in front of a h. *gurgure*.

horseback, on, adv. phr. *bisa* (or *bisan*) *doki*; a man on h. *mai-doki*, pl. *masu-doki*; to mount on h. *haru bisa doki*; to take exercise on h. *ki-lisa*.

horse-fly, n. *barbaje*; also called *damisan dawaki* being spotted like a leopard; a large buzzing h. *gwarje*.

horseman, n. *mai-doki*, pl. *masu-doki*.

horse-raddish, tree (*Moringa pterygosperma*) *zagalagandi*.

hospitality, to show h. *yin baḱonchi*.

host, n., entertainer *mai-mă-shidi*, *mai-masabki*; a great multitude *babban taro*.

hot, adj. *da zafi*, *ḍumi*, *da ḍumi*,

dimi, *da dimi*; h. water *ruwan zafi* or *ruwan dumi*; it is h. (of the weather) *rana da dumi*; the h. or dry season *rani*; the hottest part of the dry season just as the rains are beginning *bāzara*; the h. month at end of rains *agazari* (K.), *agajeri* (S.).

hot-tempered, *mai-jaji*.

hound, n., see **dog**.

hour, *sa'a*; the hours of the day are only reckoned approximately by the Hausas, they are: *jijifi* the twilight just before the dawn; *assuba* or *azuba** the dawn; *hantsi* two hours after dawn, i.e. circ. 8 a.m.; *walaha* circ. 10 a.m.; *rana tsāka* or *tsākar rana* mid-day; *zawal* circ. 2 p.m.; *azuhur*, *azahar*, time of the call to prayer, circ. 2 or 2.30 p.m.; *la'asar* 4 to 5 p.m.; *magariba* or *magarub* just before sunset; *mareche* late in the evening; *almauru*, *lisha* very late in the evening; *dare* time between *lisha* and *jijifi*.

house, n. *gida*, pl. *gidaje*, *gidadaji*, *shigifa*, pl. *shigifu* and *shigifofi*; a four-cornered thatched h. *tafarfara*, see **hut**; h. of one room *daki*, pl. *dakuna*; he is in the h. *yana daka*;

top of h. or upper storey of h. *kan daki*; a desolate ruined h. *kango*, pl. *kangogi*, *kangaye*; all the people belonging to one h. *kabila*; master of h. *mai-gida*; a flat-roofed h. *soro* (K.), pl. *soraye*.

household, n. *gida*; father of the h. *ubangida*, fem. *uwal-gida* or *uwargida*.

householder, n. *mai-gida*.

hovering, (of a bird) *shawāgi*, *jewa*.

how, adv. 1. interrog. *kaḳa*.

2. rel. *kaḳa*, *kanda*, *yaya* (S.), *wāda*, *yāda*, *yadda*; h. dost thou know? *kaḳa ne ka sani*; h. are you going to manage? *kaḳa za ka yi*; h. long? *har yaushe*, *tun yaushe*; h. many? *nawa* or *guda nawa*; h. much? *nawa*; phr. h. many persons were there? *mutum nawa ke nan?* h. long will it be before you finish? *sai yaushe za ka gama?*

however, 1. rel. adv. (in whatever manner) *ko kaḳa*.

2. adversative conj. (but) *bari dai*; *fache**.

howl, intr. v. *yin kuka*, *yin hargowa*.

hucksters, *yan shimfida*, see **retailer**.

hue, n. (of colour) *launi*.

hum, n. *amo*; h. of conversation *dūmi*.

hum, intr. v. *yin amo*.

humanity, n. (the nature of man) *mutumchi*.

humble, adj. *da karamin rai*.

humble person, *ladāfi, la-dābi*.

humble, tr. v. *kaskantad da, maidakarami*, e.g. he humbled himself *ya maida kansa karami*.

humiliate, to *kankanta*.

humiliation, n. *kankanchi*.

hump, n. *doro, kazaza, kusumbi*; h. on bull, etc. *tozo*; humped cattle *jabajaba*; without a h. *muturu*.

hump-backed, adj. *mai-doro, mai-gantsarwa, da kusumbi*.

hunch-back, n. *kazaza, kusumbi, mai-doro*.

hundred, num. *dari, miya, minya, zangu*, the last is generally restricted to counting cowries; two h. *dari biyu, metin*, metan**.

hunger, n. *yunwa, yunwachi*.

hunger, to suffer, n. *matsu*, matsi, jin yunwa*.

hungry, adj. *da yunwa*; I am h. *ina da yunwa*; a h. person *mayunwachi*, pl. *mayunwata*.

hunt, v. *yin farauta*.

hunter, n. *mafarauchi*, pl. *mafarauta*.

hunting, n. *farauta*.

hurry, n. *garaje*.

hurry, to be in a, v. *gaugata, gagauta*; h. up *ku chika, ku jika* or *ku yi da jika*; I am in a h. *na kosa*.

hurt, tr. v. *fama*; I have h. my leg *na fama kafa*.

husband, n. *miji* or *namiji*, pl. *maza, gwarzo**; h. and wife *miji da mata*.

husk, n. (of grain) *surfe*; a h. of maize *totuwar masara*.

husk, to h. grain, tr. v. *surfe, surfa, swaba, saba, sabe*.

husked, (rice, etc.) *surfaffe*.

husks, coll. *dusa, dussa* (S.); h. from wheat, etc. *tsāki*; h. of guinea-corn *kono* (K.), *konu* (S.); h. enclosing an ear of corn *buniya*.

hut, n. *shigifa*; a h. for storing grain in *shirayi*; a light thatched h. *rudu*; a grass h. *bukka, tsangaya*; a h. with grass walls but with distinct roof *dakin zana* (K.), *dauke, dabi* (S.); a round h. *kago*; a mud h. *kudandani, tseko*; a h. in a compound reserved for domestic work *tsakakari**; a rectangular h. *tafarfara*.

hyena, *kure**, fem. *kura*, pl.

kuraye, *amīna**, *daguyau* (K.), *gazau**, *shaki* (S.), *sheyaki* (K.); striped h. *sayaki*, *shaki*, *saki*, *sheyaki*; young of h. *barmakai*.

hypocrisy, n. *riya*, pl. *riyoyi*; to practise h. *yin riya*.

hypocrite, n. *mai-riya*, pl. *masu-riya*.

hyrax, West African tree h. (squirrel) *beran bīsa*.

I, 1st pers. pron. comm. gender; 1. *na*, prefixed to aor., e.g. I went *na tafi*; I saw him *na gan shi*; with *ba*, often contracted, e.g. I did not see him *ban gan shi ba*; see H. Gram. p. 9.

2. *ni* suffixed to fut. and passives, e.g. I shall go *za ni tafi*; I was wounded by a gunshot *aka halbe ni da bindiya*. As a prefix to a verb *ni* expresses the fut., e.g. *ni tafi* I shall go; prefixed to the aor. it denotes an emphatic past, e.g. It was I who went or I indeed went *ni na tafi*; *ni* is also to be used in emphatic expressions, e.g. I myself *ni da kaina*; I alone *ni kaḍai*; is it I? do you mean me? *niya*.

3. *ina* expresses the present and should be followed by

the participial form if there be such, thus, I am coming *ina tafowa*; but *ina so* I am willing.

ibis, *rara*, *tuntumi*; the African wood i. *tsagagi*; see **stork**.

idiot, n. 1. from birth *saruru**, *shashasha**.

2. fig., see **fool**, **foolish**.

idle, adj. 1. (doing nothing) *lalafa*; an idle person *raggo*, fem. *ragguwa*, pl. *raggaye*, *raggaje*, *raggage*, *ragguna*; *ḍan karma*, *madudu* (S.), *bakurogi*; one who is i. *mai-lalachi*, *malalachi*, *mai-kasala*, *bahili**; to be i. *yin huji*.

2. (in vain, unprofitable) *banza*, *babu anfanī*.

idleness, n. *rāgaita*, pl. *rāgaitu*, *ragganchi*, *raggonchi*, *karma*, *lalachi*, *lalafanchi*, *sausauchi*, *sosochi*, the last also of unwillingness to work; to fight shy of work *rāfashe aiki*, *ragaiche*, *yin huji*.

idler, n., see **idle**.

idly, one who saunters about i., n. *mai-ragaita*.

idol, n. *tsāfi*, pl. *tsāfuna* and *tsafaffuka*, *gumki*, *gwumki*, pl. *gwumakai*.

idolater, n. *matsafi*, pl. *ma-tsafa*.

idolatry, n. *shirku*, *kafirchi*.

if, conj. *idan*, *in*, *kādan* (S.), *kan*, *izan*, *da*, e.g. if I had known, I would not have done it *da na sani da ban yi shi ba*; *kan* (before *b*, *kam*), *kur**, *kul**.

ignoble, adj. *banza*, *na banza*.

ignorance, n. (i.e. religious ignorance) *jahilchi*.

ignorant, adj. (relig.) *jahili*.

To be i. in a general sense must be expressed by means of the verbs *sani*, *ji* or (in the case of an art or science) *saba* with negatives.

ignorantly, *da jahilchi*.

iguana, n. *tsari*, *tsare*, *guza*.

ill, n. (misfortune, loss) *ḡarna*, *hasāra*, *asāra*, *tasari*.

ill, adj. 1. (bad) *mugu*, fem. *mugunya*, pl. *miyāgu*, *banza*.

2. (sick) *da chiwo*; to be i. *yin chiwo*, *jin chiwo*; he is i. *shina da chiwo*; to become i. *chiutu*, *chutu*.

illegitimate, child, n. *shege*, *ḡan shege*, *ḡan farka*.

illiberal, adj. (stingy) *da taurin zuchiya*; he is i. *hannunsa ya bushe* or *hannunsa busashshe ne* lit. his hand is dry.

illiberality, n. *taurin zuchiya*, *kalmashen zuchiya*.

illicit, adj. *haram*.

illness, n. *chiwo*, *chiwuta*.

illuminate, tr. v. 1. gen. *haskaka*.

2. to i. a manuscript *zayana*.

image, n. 1. (likeness, picture) *kāma*, pl. *kāmānu*, *kāmannu*.

2. (a graven image or idol) *gumki*, *gwamki*, pl. *gumakai*.

imagination, *wasuwasi**; she imagined within herself *ta yi wasuwasi a zuchiya tata*.

imagine, v. *yin tamaha*, *zato*, *yin zache*; see **suppose**.

imbibe, tr. v. (to drink in or absorb) *sha*.

imitate, tr. v. to i. another's pronunciation or actions *kokkoya*, *rikida*, e.g. I imitate him *ina kokkoyonsa*.

imitation, *kokkoyo*.

immediately, adv. *ko yanzu*, *nan da nan*.

immerse, tr. v. *tsoma*, *nuche*, *nutse*, *niche*, *dulmiya*, *yin dunane*.

immigrant, *shigege*.

immorality, (between women) *māḡigo*.

impasse, (a place from which there is no outlet) *kūrewa*.

impatience, *garaje*.

impatient, adj. *maras-hankuri*.

impede, tr. v. *hana*.

impediment, n. 1. hindrance *abin hana*.

2. impediment in speech *ininar halshē*.

impertinence, *tsiwa*, *janjan-chi*, *giggiwa* (K.), *taurin ido*.

impertinent, adj. *mai-tsiwa*, *matsiwachi*.

importance, *manyanchi*, *mayanchi*.

important, adj. *babba*, pl. *manya* or *maya*; an i. person, n. *datijo*, *kunkumi**.

impossible, it is, impers. v. *ba shi yuuwa*, *ya gagara*, *ya faskare*, *ya gaza*, *ya kasa*; an i. task *tarki** (S.).

improper, adj. *ba daidai*

improve, tr. v. *gyarta*.

improve, in health, intr. v. *warware*, *yin rangwame*, *jin dama*; see **health**.

improvement, e.g. in health *dama*.

impudent, adj., see **impertinent**.

impurity, of water *zartse*.

in, prep. *chikin* or *daga chikin*, *a*, *gun*, e.g. in the basket *chikin sanfo*; in this place *a wurin nan*.

in order that, conj. phr. *a bisa*, *domin*, *don*, e.g. practise diligently in order that you may shoot well *ku yi anniya har da za ka iya halbin bindiga da kyau*, in order that he might hear *domin* or *don shi ji*.

inability, n. *gajewa*.

inasmuch, i. as *da shi ke* or *da ya ke*.

incantation, *tsubbu*, *däbo*.

incense, n. *turare*, *kamshi**.

incessant, *madawami*, fem. *madawamiya*.

incline, a steep, n. *gangare* or *gangara*, pl. *gangaru*.

incline, tr. v., to i. the head *tsugunna*; to i. the ear *kar-kata kunne*.

incomplete, to be *yin kwabro*.

incompletely, to do a thing i. *saya*.

incompleteness, *kwabro*, *kwauro*.

incorrigibility, *shakiyanchi*.

incorrigible, *shakiya*.

increase, n. *däduwa*, *auki*, *abki*, *käri*, *karuwa*.

increase, v. 1. tr. *kära*; *däda*, *dädi*, *yin auki* (or *abki*), *dora*, *säfa*, *süfa*, *riba*, *shirga*.

2. intr. *däda*, *yin däduwa*, *yado*, *yadu*, *käru*, *gawurta*, *gawusta*, *taska*, *zarche**.

incredulity, an interj. expressing i. *aya! haba! hubba!*

incurable, e.g. an i. disease *chiwon wofi*; the fool is i. *mahaukachi ba shi warkewa*.

indebted to, intr. v., e.g. I am indebted to you *ina da bashinka*.

indecentcy, n. *kazamta*, *shakiyanchi*.

indecent, adj. *kazāmi*, pl. *kazāmai*, *maras-kumya*, *babu kumya*, *shākiyi*.

indecision, *zara*.

indecorous, adj. *ba daidai*.

indeed, 1. adv. (in truth, in fact) *hakika*, *babu shakka* or *babu shak*, *babu wawa*, *da gaskiya*, *takar* (K.).

2. as affirmative emphatic particle *ai*, *ashe*, *aiwa* or *ewa*, *anche*, *mādala*, *dai* or *de*, the last is enclitic following the word which it is desired to emphasise.

3. interj. of doubt or surprise *to!* *ashe!* *anche!* *haba!* Thus, in question and answer, indeed? indeed! *ashe?* *ashe!* *da gaskiya?* *da gaskiya!*

indemnification, *ramko*.

indemnify, to *ramka*.

independence, *zāman kansa*.

india-rubber, n., see *rubber*.

indicate, v. *nuna*, *nuni*, *gaya*.

indifference, n. (carelessness) *lalachi*.

indigence, n. *talauchi*.

indigenous, *kado*, pl. *haḡe*.

indigent, adj. *talaka*, *talakka* (S.), pl. *talakawa*, *talakkarwa*; an i. person *mai-talaka*.

indigo, n. *bāba*, *shuni*, *talaki**; spec. the second annual crop of i. *kususu*; an indigo dye-pit *marina*,

pl. *marinai*; old used-up i. *dagwalo*, *dagalo*.

indistinct, to become, intr. v. *dushi*.

indistinctness, n. *dushewa*.

industrious, n. *maai-kachi*.

infant, n. (up to one year old) *jinjiri*, pl. *jirajirai*, *jariri*, *jarili*.

infantry, coll. n. *kirma*; infantry leader *sarikin kirma*.

infidel, n. *kafiri*, pl. *kafirai* and *kafirawa*.

infidelity, n. (in a religious sense) *kafirchi*.

infirm, adj. *kumāma*, see **weak**.

infirmity, n. *kumamanchi*.

inflict, tr. v., to i. blows *buga*, *bubbuga*; see **beat**; to i. punishment *pallashe*, *fallashe*.

influence, n. (authority, power) *hukumchi*.

inform, v. (to bring intelligence, to apprise) *labarta*, *ba labāri*, *sanān da*, *sanas da*, *sanar da*, *sanashe*; to i. against *sare*, *sara* or *zara**; see **accuse**.

information, n. (news, account) *labāri*.

informer, n. *mai-sara*, pl. *masu-sara*.

ingrate, n. *butulu*, *mai-butulchi*, pl. *masu-butulchi*.

ingratitude, n. *butulchi*.

inhabitant, n. *mai-zamna*, pl. form *mazowa*.

inherit, v. *gāda*, *gāde*, *gādo*, *gāji*, *gāje*.

inheritance, n. *gādo*.

inheriting, *gadowa*.

inheritor, *magaji*, pl. *magada*.

iniquity, n. *mugunta*, *keta*; see **evil**.

injure, tr. v. (to damage) *bāta*, *bāchi*, *ḡarnatadda*.

ink, n. *taddawa*, *adawa*, *tawada* (K.); a tree from the fruit of which i. is made *fara-kaya*; a gum which is put in i. *kāro*; a powder used in making i. *kawiya*, *kunkuniya**.

ink-blot, n. *dangole*.

inn, n. (i.e. a khan or halting place for the night) *mashidi*.

innkeeper, n. *mai-mashidi*.

innocent, adj. *babu laifi*, *bara*; an i. person *maras-laifi*; to be declared i. *kubuta*.

innuendo, *karin-magāna*.

innumerable, adj. expr. by phr. *fi kidayawa*, e.g. he has innumerable books *shina da litatafi sun fi kidayawa*.

inquire, v. *tambaya*, *yin tambaya*, *yin binchike*.

inquiry, n. *tambaya*, *sha-loga* (K.), *binchike*, *bahasi*, *bahatsi**.

insane, adj., see **mad**.

insanity, *taḡuwa*.

insect, n., spec. minute i. found in kola-nuts *sankara*; a night-flying i. which has a bad smell *buzuzu*; a boring i. *gunḡa*, *gumḡa*; see **beetle**.

inside, n. *chiki*; i. the house *chikin ḡida*; its inside or inside it may both be expressed by *chikinsa*; see **in**.

insight, n. (clear perception) *lura*.

insipid, adj. *lāmi*, *da lāmi*, *babu zaḡi*.

insolence, *gigiwa* (K.), *jan-janchi*, *tsiwa*.

insolent, adj. *mai-tsiwa*, *da tsiwa*, *matsiwachi*.

inspire, v. (to breathe in) *tofo*.

instance, n. *nūni*; see **example**.

instantly, adv. *nan da nan*, *koyanzu*.

instead of, prep. *gurbin*, *wurin*, *bigeri*, *madadin*, e.g. instead of it *gurbinsa*, *gunsa**, *wurinsa*, *bigerensa*.

instigate, to *chuna*.

instruct, v. 1. (teach) *koya*, e.g. instruct me in reading *ka koya ma ni karatu*; *gal-gade*, *gargadi*.

2. (of religious instruction especially that combining reproof and threatening) *fora*, *fori*, *fore*, *yin foro*.

instruction, n. *foro*, *wa'azi**, *wa'azu**, *alāma* or *halāma*, pl. *alamomi*, *almajirchi*; all these words refer to religious teaching, i. in a general sense must be expr. by verbs etc., e.g. a man of no i. *wanda bai san komi ba*; he received much i. from them in literature *suka koya masa karatu dayawa*; self-i. *hay**.

instrument, n. 1. (implement) *kaya*, pl. *kayayeki*, *makami*.

2. (musical i.) *kidi* or *kida*, any kind of wind i. *busa*, pl. *bushe-bushe*; spec. a kind of stringed i. *machirkiya*, *matirkiya*; a wind i. *pampami*, *famfami*; wind i., flute *sarewa*; wind i. resembling bagpipes *algaita* or *algaitu*; a player on a musical i. *ma-kidi*; see **music**.

insubordination, *tayasawa*, *kin ji*, *kangara*.

insufficient, to be *yin kwabro*.

integrity, n. (honesty) *gaskiya*.

intelligence, n. 1. (mental power), *tsimi*, *hasikanchi*, *wayo*, *fasaha**; see **understanding**.

2. (news) *labāri*, e.g. let me give you i. of the war *im ba ka labārin yaƙi*.

intelligent, adj. *gwani*, *mai-tsimi*, *da tsimi*, *hasiki*.

intend, v. for the idiomatic use of *da* to express unfulfilled intention see Gr. pp. 34, 46, e.g. I intended to go *da za ni tafiya*, had I known I would not have thrown her down on purpose *da na sani da ba na jefa ta da gangan ba*.

intention, n. (purpose) *kūli*, *ganganchi*; (fixed application) *anniya*, *alāma*; see prec.

intentionally, adv. *da gangan*.

intercede, to i. for *cheta*, *chetas*.

interceder, *mai-chechi*.

interceding, *fafa*.

intercession, *machechiya*.

interest, on money *ruwa*, *fifi-ko*, *riƙa*.

interfere, v. *shiga shāgali*, *yin karambani*.

interference, n. *gadauniya*, *janjanchi*, *shishigi**; i. with what does not concern one *karambani*, *kazallaha*, *izgili*, *isgili*.

interior, n. (the inside of anything) *chiki*.

interloper, *shigege*.

intermarry, to *garwaye*.

intermingle, tr. v. *hautsina*; intr. v. *saje* (K.), *sade* (S.).

intermingling, *surki*, see **mixing**.

interpret, v. 1. (to translate) *juya da magana* or *juya*

magana, yin fasara, fasarta, mayas da; he interprets *ya rabbi fasalinsa*.

2. (to explain) *waye*.

interpretation, n. (both translation and explanation) *fasara, fasali**, *wayewa*.

interpreter, n. *alfākani, tafurta, mayayi**.

interrogative. This sense is expr. by a change in the intonation, by *ko* placed at the beginning or end or at both beginning and end of a clause, or by adding the phr. *ko ba haka ba?* also by *ba* when answer is in affirmative, *ni ba?* It is I, is it not?

interrupt, to i. *yin shishige, tura magana*; a nickname for one who interrupts a conversation *kazallātuwa*.

interruption, n. *fāshi*.

intersection, *gichi, gichiya*.

intertwine, to *kalgame, kar-game*.

intervals, at i. *wuche-wuche*.

intestine, n. spec. the large i. *tumburkuma, tuburkuma, karera, mazawuri*; the intestines coll. *hanji*.

into, prep. *chikin* or *dāga chikin*, e.g. he fell i. the water *ya faɗi chikin ruwa*; he was turned or changed i. a sheep *ya sauya tumkiya*.

intoxicant, n., an i. drink *barasa*, this word is also applied specially to gin; an intoxicating drink which is made from the palm tree (*tukururuwa*) *bammi, bam*; an intoxicating drink made from guinea-corn *giya*; an i. drink made with honey, salt and water *buza*; a place of intoxicating drinks *mashaya*.

intoxicated, *maye*.

intoxication, n. *maita*.

introduction, a letter of, n. *bishara*.

invalid, *machuchi, majiyachi, majinyachi*.

invasion, *farmaki, falmaki, firmaki*.

invent, to *kaga*.

invention, *kage* (S.).

investigation, judicial *bahasi, binchike*.

invisibility, (the power to vanish at will) *baduhu, badufu*.

invocation, n., i.e. to God *zikiri, safirchi, safurchi*; we make i. *muna zikri*.

invoke, to *sāḥa, sāḥi*.

invulnerable, *ɗan tauri*.

iron, n. *karife, karfe*, pl. *kara-fa, karfaifai, karfuna*; spec. i. wrought into cups, bright i. *zubi*; to burn with hot i. *lalas*; an i. for brand-

ing *zarto*; an i. pot *karife*, *karipe*.

iron, adj. *na karife*, fem. *ta karife*, with plurals *na karife*, e.g. i. bars *sanduna na karife*.

iron ore, n. *tāma*, *matamachi*; i. dross *kashin tāma*.

irons, leg-, n. *gigar*, *malwa*.

irony, *gātse*.

irregular, of i. lengths *sabe*.

irrigate, to *shayas da*.

irrigated, garden, n. *lambu*.

irritable, adj. *da zafin rai*.

irritated, particip. adj. *husanche**.

irritation, *takaichi*, see **anger**.

is, subst. v. 1. (simple copula) with masc. subject *ne*, with fem. *che*, with either *ke*.

2. (implying real existence = there is) *akwai*; *ina*, *na*, fem. *ta*, thus, there is *ina da shi*, there are many *ina da su dayarwa*; *ke* with *nan*, e.g. there is a book which I know *wani litafi ke nan da na sani*; see **be**.

island, n. *gungu**, pl. *gunguna**, *lungu**, *chibiri**, *tsibiri**.

isolate, tr. v. *yin kadaita*.

it, pers. pron. neut. *ya*, fem. *ta*; separate and emphatic forms *shi*, fem. *ita*; its -*nshi*, -*nsa*, fem. -*rsa*; *nasa* or *nai*, fem. *tasa*, *tas* or *tai*.

itch, n. *kaikai*, *kaikayi*, *kaswa*,

kazuwa, *susa*, *zuza*, *kurji*; one who has the i. *mai-kurji*.

itch, to *yin susa* or *yin zuza*.

itching, n., spec. i. sore on toes or fingers *kurkushe*, *kusa-kushi*, *kushekusheya*; a prickly plant that causes i. *karara*.

ivory, n. *hakorin giwa* or *haurin giwa*; a piece of i. *haurin giwa*, *kākara**.

jackal, n. *dila*, pl. *diloli*, *mala-min dāwa*, *kārem biki*, *ka-rem biki*, *ḍan ba'ura*, *ballo*; the cry of the j. *kyakkyewa*, *kekewa*.

jail, n. *kurkuku*, see **prison**.

jailer, *mariko*.

jam, tr. v. (to press) *mache*, *machi* or *matse*; (to stick fast) *tōkāra**.

jar, small, n. *sintali*, *shintali*, *tulu**.

jaw, n. *kumatu*, *kumche* (S.); fig. jaws *baki*.

jaw-bone, *mummuḳe*, pl. *mu-ḳamukai*.

jealous, to be *kisanta*.

jealousy, n. *kishi* or *kishiya*, pl. *kishiyoyi*, *hāsada*, *shamata*.

jeer at, v. *ba'a* or *yin ba'a*, *yin gōri*, *rena*, *kwalla**; *ba dariya*, e.g. they jeered at us *suka ba mu dariya*.

jelly-fish, n. *ḳawara*.

Jerusalem, pr. n. *birnin kūdus*.
jester, n. (buffoon) *babambaḍe*,
baḍe, *maba'achi*; (foolish
 trifler) *wawa*.

jesting, n. *bananchi*, *annashu-
 wa*.

Jesus, *Isa*, *Yasu'u*, the latter
 form represents the original
 Arabic name.

jet-black, adj. *baki kirin*.

Jew, gent. n. *ba-Yahude*, pl.
Yahudawa.

jewel, n. *yakutu**; *dutsi** (stone)
 often denotes a precious stone.

jog, e.g. of a donkey *sassaka*,
 see **trot**.

join, tr. v. *gāma*, *gwarmi**,
rika, *lika*; to j. heads to-
 gether (in consultation or
 forming a plan) *gama kai*;
 intr. (to fall in with anyone
 by overtaking or meeting
 him) *gamu* or *gamo* constr.
 with prep. *da*; *tarda*, *tarad
 da* and *taras da*, e.g. we
 joined him *mun gamu da shi*
 or *mun taras da shi*; to j.
 issue *kulla**; to be joined
 together *kullu*.

joiner, n. (carpenter) *masas-
 saki*, pl. *masassaka*.

joint, n. *ido**, pl. *idanu**, *idan-
 danu**, *idanurwa*; ankle j.
idon sawu, *idon kafa*; wrist j.
idon hannu (also = knuckle);
*godawa**; j. of scissors *kwarmi*,

pl. *kwarmu*, *gwarmi*; to be
 out of j. *gochi* and *goche*; j.
 of the body *gāba*, pl. *gaḥoḥi*;
 to suffer from a disease in
 the j. *targade*.

jostle, tr. v. *tunkuda*, *ture*.

journey, n. *tafiya*, pl. *tafiya*;
 provisions for a j. *guzuri*; to
 make provision for a j. *yin
 guzuri*.

journeying, n. *tafiyawa*.

joy, n. (the inward feeling)
farin chiki; (coupled with
 the outward expression)
murna, *bushasha*, *bashasha*,
fara'a; to experience j. (to
 rejoice) *yin fara'a*, *yin* or
jin murna; a cause for
 j. *abin murna*; j. or a cry
 of j. *guda*; to cause j. *bada
 murna*.

judge, n. *alkāli*, pl. *alkalai*,
alkallai (S.); the office of a
 j. *alkalanchi*.

judge, v. 1. gen. (to look into,
 discern) *yin bibiya*; in a
 weaker sense, to imagine,
 or think *tammaha* or *yin
 tammaha*.

2. (of a judge) *yin shari'a*,
kāda, *yin alkalanchi*.

judgment, n. 1. gen. *bibiya*.

2. (of law and justice)
shari'a, *hakumchi* or *hukum-
 chi*, *fukumchi**, *alhaki*, *hisabi*;
 the j. day *ranan* (or *ran*)

gobe (lit. the day of tomorrow), *gobe*; j. seat *karaga*.

jug, n. *tulu**, *randa**; a brass j. with narrow neck *shintali*, *shantali*; see **jar**.

juggling, *dābo*.

juicy, *mai-mai*.

juju house, (in a pagan village) *gidan dodo*.

jube-tree, *magariya*.

jump, n., of a fish or frog, *bulma*, *burma*; he gave a j. *ya yi wuf*.

jump, intr. v. *tuma*; *dīra*, *dīri*, *dīro*, *dara*, *daro*; *tsalle*, *tsūli*, *tsallache*; to j. backwards and forwards *wura*; to j. down *gangara*, *tsirga*, *tsirgo*; to j. over *haura*.

jumping, n. *dire*, *tsalle*, *tuma*, *tumi*.

just, adj. *da gaskiya*, *daidai*; of things (= lawful) *halal*; a j. man *mutumen gaske* (*gaskiya*) or *mutum na gaskiya*.

just, adv., as in expression j. (now) *ko (yanzu)*.

justice, n. 1. (administration of the law) *shari'a*.

2. (moral right) *ādilchi*.

justify, tr. v. 1. (to prove to be in the right, to vindicate as true) *gaskanta*.

2. (of a judge etc. to declare in the right, to ascribe right to) *bada gaskiya*,

he was justified *am ba shi gaskiya*.

jute, *malafiya*, *lalu*, *turgunuwa*; bastard j. *rama*.

Kano, *Kano* the chief commercial town of the W. Sudan.

keen, adj. 1. (sharp-edged) *da kaifi*.

2. (of acute intelligence) *mai-lura*, *mai-wayo*.

keep, n. (to retain, hold) *rike*, *rika* or *riki*; (to tend, e.g. sheep or cattle) *kiwo*; to k. carefully *kiyaye*; to k. a promise *chika magana*, *kama magana*; to k. on doing anything *rika*.

kerchief, n. *maharma*; a woman's k. *kallabi*, *alfuta*.

kernel, n. *kwāra*, *kwaya*.

kettle, n. *shintali*, *sintali* or *shantali*, pl. *shintalai*; an earthen k. *karife** or *karipe**.

key, n. *makubli*, *makulli*, *ma-būdi*, *dan makubli*.

kick, n. *shuri*.

kick, tr. v. *shura*, *shure* or *jure**, *bangaje*, *habri* or *harbi* used of horses; to k. forwards *mangara*; to k. away *hanbare*, *hambare*.

kicking, n., e.g. of a donkey *butsāri*.

kid, n. *dan akwiya*, pl. *yan* (or *yayan*) *akwiya*.

kidney, n. *gidibi* (S.), *kidibi*, pl. *gidibai*, *kidiba*; *koda*, *kwoda*.

kill, v. *kāshe*, *kāsa*, *kīsa*, with a shortened form *kas*, *kīḡe*, *fauchi**; he was killed outright *aka yi masa take*.

killing, adj. (murderous) *kā-sau*, *kāso*.

kilt, cf. a man with a k. of grass *mai-bunu a gindi*.

kind, n. *iri*, pl. *irare*, *launi**.

kindle, tr. and intr. *toyi*, *towi*, *toya*, *toye*, *tuya*, *tuna*; to re-kindle or blow up a fire which is nearly out *fura*, intr. *furu*, e.g. they re-kindled the fire *suka fura wuta*, the fire was re-kindled *wuta ta furu*; *ḡosana*, *hasa*, *haza*, tr. he kindled the fire *ya hasa wuta*.

kindness, n. (goodness of heart) *nagarta*; (favour, benevolence) *alhēri*, *chiki ḡaya*, *gafara* and *gafarta*, *nīima*, *nema*, *hasali* (S.); an act of k. *kyauta*, *aikin gafara*, *jinkai*; to do an act of k. *yin alhēri*, *yin kyau*, e.g. they did me an act of k. *sun yi ma ni kyau*.

kindred, n. *kabila**, *dangi*, *danga* or *dagi**, pl. *dangogi*.

king, n. *sarki* or *sariki*, pl.

sarakuna or *sarakai*, *sarāki*, *sultan**; a king's son *yarima*, *gimba*, pl. *gimbayi*; daughter of a k. *gimbiya*; epithet applied to a k. *dan furdi*; a reigning k. *sariki mai-chi*; a deposed k. *fitachen sariki*.

kingdom, n. *sarauta*, *sarota*, *daula*; to gain possession of a k. *chin sarauta*; see **accede**.

kingfisher, pied k. *chinoya*, *chinuya*; African belted k. *machi tsundum*; blue k. *tsitar* or *tsintar*.

kiss, n. *sumba*.

kiss, tr. v. *tsotsa*, *sumbunta*, *sumbunche*; to k. hands to *yin sumba*.

kissing, *tsotso*.

kitchen, n. *madafi*, pl. *mada-fai*, *wurin dāfuwa*.

kite, n. (the bird) *shafo*, *shaho*, *kōlo*, *shirwa*.

knead, to k. together, tr. v. *garwaya*.

knee, n. *gwiwa*, pl. *gwiwaye*, *gwiwoyi*, *gwiwu*, *guwaru*; pushing with the k. *ḡūla*.

kneel, intr. v. *durkūsa*; kneeling *dulkūshi*, *durkūshi*; to k. down or prostrate oneself *gurfana* (S.).

knickerbockers, *dan wando*.

knife, n. *wuka*, pl. *wukaḡe*, *wukaikai* (usually with two

edges); *barho* (with one edge); *mayanki*; to sharpen or whet a k. *gyarta* (or *wasā*) *wuka*, *yuka* (Zanf.); spec. a small k. *almōsa*; a k. used by women *kududuri*; a kind of k. with handle to fit wrist and blade projecting backwards *kan-gar* or *kanga*; a k. carried up the sleeve, attached by a leathern ring *wukar hannu*; a scoop-shaped k. *mafitsara*; a sort of missile k. *gāriyo*, q.v.; handle of a k. *ḥota*, *kota* (K.); see *kijigi*.

knit, v. *sharāḥa**.

knock, v. gen. *buga*; to k. against, intr. *gochi*, *goche*, *gwabche*, *kābra*, *kāfra*, tr. as the hand against a wall *gwabra*, *gwabre*, *gwabure*, *gwabri*, *gumbari*; to k., e.g. with a stick *zungura*; to k. or kick *bangaje*; to k. at a door *buga kofa*, *kwanḳwasa*; to k. down *tankade*, *bige* (K.), *kirme* (K.), *kilme* (S.).

not, n. *kulli*, pl. *kullai*, *kulloli*; a k. made in thread to prevent the strands from unravelling *hanchi*; to tie in a k. *kumbuche*; to get into a k. *sarḳe*.

now, v. *sāni*, *shīna*, *rabe da*; to k. clearly *shaidani*, *fahim-ta**; to k. and understand well *sansanche*; to k.

certainly *tabbache*, *tabbata*, e.g. do you k. for certain? *ka tabbata*? had you known? *da kun sani*? it cannot be known *ba ta sanuwa*.

knowledge, n. *azanichi*, *lura*, *shini*, *shīna*, *sāni*.

known, to make, v. *ambachi*, *gaya*, *chashe*.

knuckle, n. *gwiwar yatsa*, *idon hannu*.

kola-nut, n. *goro*, pl. *gwarra*; *gamagari*; spec. a variety of k.-n. from Gwanja *ataras*, from Yoruba *ibi*; a light-coloured k.-n. *ganjigaga*; see also *labuje*, *gamagari*, *ibi*, *kursan-goro*, *gazari*, *sandalu*, *hannun ruwa*; a bad k.-n. *gobro**; a large k.-n. *goriya*; packing placed round k.-nuts *fufu*, *huhu*; an insect found in the k.-n. *sankara*; a basket of palm fronds in which k.-nuts are packed *makara*, *mankara*; a late crop of k.-nuts *janḳarago*; large selected k.-nuts *marsa*; large and small k.-nuts mixed *saranwaga*; little k.-nuts *minu*; an early crop of k.-nuts *nata*.

koran, n. *kuran*, *alḳorani*, *al-korani*; the all-night reading of the k. *tūkuri*; saying the k. by rote *tulawa**.

labour, n. *aiki*, pl. *ayuyuka*, *ayuka*, *aikoki* or *aikuna*; farm l. *aikin gona*; l. pains *wahalar haifuwa*, *nakudar haifuwa*.

labour, v. *yin aiki*; *aiki*.

labourer, n. *maaiiki*, fem. *ma-aiikiya*, pl. *masu-aiki*, *ma-aikachi*, *maaikata*; *kwadigo*, *dan kwadigo*.

lack, n. *rashi*.

lack, tr. v. *taɓe*, *tafe*, *rasa*, *kāsa*, *tozarta**; they l. money *sunu da rashin kurɗi*, see seq.

lacking, adj. *mai-rashi*, by prefixing *maru*, e.g. l. sense *maru-hankali*.

lad, n. *yaro*, pl. *yara*.

ladder, n. *mahayi**, *karangama*, *kuranga* (K.), *kwaranga* (S.), *uwaranga* (S.), *tsani*, *matakara*, *matakala*.

laden, participial adj. *labche* or *labtache*.

Lagos, the town of *Iko*.

lair, *makwanchi*.

lake, n. *kogi**, pl. *koguna*, *kogina* or *kogai*, *korama**.

lamb, n. *ɗan tumkiya*, pl. *yan tumkiya*; the paschal l. *ragon lahiya*.

lame, adj. *gurgu*, fem. *gurguwa*, pl. *gurāgu*, *gurmu* (S.), *mai-gwami*, pl. *masu-gwami*, *amurgude*, *makasari*, fem. *makasariya*.

lame, to be, intr. v. *yin gurgunta*, *ɗangyasa*, *ɗungashi*, *targade**; he goes l. *yanu takwashi* or *tarkoshi*; to make l. *gugurta*.

lameness, n. *gurgunchi*, *gurgunta*, *gurmunta*, *gwami*, *takwashi*, *tarkoshi*, *ɗangyashi*, *ɗungashi*, *ɗingishi*, *ɓage**.

lament, v. *yin kuka*, see seq.

lamentation, n. *kuka*, pl. *koke-koke*; l. at a funeral *makōki*; to make l. *takaba*; see **cry**.

lamp, n. *fitila*, pl. *fitilu*, *fitilai* or *fitiloli*; l. oil *man fitila*; he lit the l. *ya kunna fitila*; we are working by l. light *muna yin aikin fitila*; l. wick *lagwani*.

lance, n. *mashi*, pl. *masusuka* or *masu*.

land, n. (phys.) *kāsa*, pl. *kāsa-she*, *kasaisai*; (country) *kāsa* and *gari*, pl. *garuruwa*, *garuruka* or *garigari*.

landing place, n. *mafichi*.

landlord, *hākimi**.

landslip, *matusge**.

language, n. l. (speech) *magana*.

2. (tongue of particular nation) *yare*, *magana*; to speak the Hausa l. *yin magana Hausa*; *halshe*, *harshe* pl. *halshina* or *halassa* *hausa**, pl. *harata**; they

have no l. but Hausa *ba su da yare sai Hausa*.

3. (literary expression) *karatu*.

lapwing, see **plover**.

large, adj. *babba*, pl. *manyā*, *girma*; a l. book *babban litafi* or *litafi babba*; very l. *ban-kami*.

large, to become, intr. v. *girma* and *yin girma*.

larynx, *raƙumin wuya*.

lasciviousness, *kwarttonchi*.

lasso, to *zarge*.

last, the, n. (final state or case) *makarshe*, *makari*, *makare*, *makara*; *ƙarshe* used adverbially = at the last, at last.

last, adj. *na-baya*, fem. *ta-baya*; phr. the l. day *ranan* (or *ran*) *gobe*, *gobe*; the l. sleep (death) *maƙarin barchi*; l. night *jiya da dare*; l. month *watan jiya*; l. year *bara*; at l. adv. *yauyau*, *ƙarshe*.

last, to, intr. v. *dāda*, *dādi*, see **continue**.

lasting, n. (state of continuance) *dādawa*.

lasting, adj. *matabbata**, *mada-wami*; long l. *madawami*, fem. *madawamiya*.

latchet, *maɓalli*.

late evening, n. of time *magarub* or *magariba*, *mangariba*; later evening *lisha*.

late, to be, v. *jinkirta*, *nawa*, *yin nawa*, *yin yauchi*, e.g. he was l. in arriving *ya yi yauchin zakuwa*; to be l. in doing anything *makāra*; one who is l. *mai-makāra*.

lateness, n. *makāra*, *nawa*; (delay) *yauchi*.

laths, thin wooden, coll. *ka-tamba**, *kwangi*.

latrine, *makewayi*, *shadda*.

laud, tr. v. *yin kirari*, *yin yabo* also with pres. form *na*, e.g. I laud thee *ina yabonka*.

laudation, n. *kirari*, *yabo*; see **praise**.

laugh, intr. v. *yin dariya*; to cause to l. *ba* (or *bada*) *dariya*, e.g. *ya ba ni dariya* he made me l.; to l. at *zunda*, *yin zunda*, *yin zumda* (S.), *dāra*, e.g. they laughed at me *sun darani*; he laughed at him *yai gātse ga shi*; to l. heartily *ƙeta da dariya*.

laughter, n. *dariya*.

law, n. gen. *shari'a*, *haddi**, *umarni*; to decide in l. *raba shari'a*; (religious ordinance) *sunna*, *kaida*; a prohibitory l. *doka**.

lawful, adj. *halal*, *halas*; to be l. *halalta*, *halatta*, *halasta*.

lay, tr. v. *sa*; of a bird, to l. eggs *aje* (*jefa*, *saka* or *yi*) *ƙwai*; to l. aside *sa*; to l.

down *kwantad da* ; to l. hold of or on *kama* ; to l. down, e.g. a load *sabkad da*.

laziness, n. *raggonchi*, *ragaita*, *kiwuya*, *kuya*, *lalafanchi*.

lazy, adj. *lalafa*, (idle) *raggo*, *kumāma*, *mai-raggo*, *mai-ragaita*, *mai-son jiki*, *maga-jiji*, *shallali*.

lead, v. *bida*, *bishe*.

lead, n. (the metal) *dalma*, *darma* ; l. for making bullets *harsasshe*.

leader, n. *babba*, *tunari**, *ko-ranga* (K.), also *uba*, pl. *ubanne* and *ubanai*, e.g. their l. *babbansu* ; l. of a fight *uban yaki* ; spec. l. of infantry *sarikin karma* ; l. of caravan (chief) *jaji* ; (the headman who precedes it) *jāgāba* or *shugāba* ; (the man who walks behind it) *madugu*, pl. *madugawa* ; l. in prayer *liman*, *limami*, pl. *limammai*.

leaf, n. (of tree) *tofo*, *toho**, pl. *tofuna*, *waraka**, *ganye*, *ganya*, pl. *ganyaye*, *danyen itache* ; l. of a book *warka*, *waraka* ; spec. a l. used for thatching *fitta*.

league, n. (alliance) *gāya*.

leak, n. *darshi*, *kāfa*, *yoyo* ; to stop a l. *toshe*.

leak, intr. v. *darsa*, *tarāra*, *tarāro*, *yin darshi*, *yin kāfa*,

tsiyaya, *yoya*, *yin yoyo*, *zuba*, *zubo*.

lean, adj. *ramamme*, fem. *ramammiya*, pl. *ramammu*, *guzuma*, *lange-lange*.

lean, to be or become, v. *rame*, *yin rama*.

lean, intr. v., l. against *jingina*, *jingine*, *dangana**, *rābo*, e.g. the fence against which he was leaning *dangan da ya rābo da shi* ; to l. upon *dangana*, *dōgara*, the last also fig. to l. upon in trust or confidence, e.g. we l. on thee *mun dogare ka*.

leanness, n. *rama*, *ramuwa*, *ramanchi* (K.), *ramantaka* (S.), *alala*.

leap, intr. v. *tuma*, *dira*, *diro*, *diri*, *yin zariya*.

leaping, n. *zariya*.

learn, v. *koya*, *yin koyo*, *sanas* ; to l. by heart *samu harda*.

learned, adj. *mai-karatu* ; a l. man *māsani*, pl. *māsana* ; *malami*, pl. *mallamai* ; a l. woman *malama**.

learner, a *bami*, *makoyi*, *sabon shiga*.

learning, n. *koyo*.

leather, n. (after it has been tanned) *kirgi* ; (before it has been tanned) *fata* ; spec. strips of l. coll. *gunda* ; strips of black l. coll. *kwaro* ; a

scraper used in dressing l. *kartaje*.

leather-dresser, n. *majemi*, pl. *majema*; *baduku*, pl. *dukawa*, *badukai*.

leathern, case for book, n. *gafaka*, *gafakka* (S.).

leave, tr. v. *bari*, *bar*, *raida* (S.); to l. a thing and come back *baro*; to leave a path or track *sau* (or *sake*) *hanya*; to l. behind *bari* or *bar*, *raga*; to l. off *daina*, *dena*.

leaven, n. *yami*, *kullu*; spec. l. made from the acid pulp of the tamarind *tsamiya*.

leaves, coll. *künnen itache*, *ganyen itache*, *sansāmi*, *sansāmin itache*.

leech, n. *matsatsaku*, *turgüni* (S.), *tsatseku* (Zanf.), *chacheku*, *chichekko*.

left, l. (remaining, remainder, rest) *saura*, *kingi*, e.g. there is little l. *sauran kaḍan ya rage*; food l. over *sudi*.

2. (of position) the l. *hauni*, *hagu* or *hagum*; the l. hand *hannu na hauni*; l.-handed *bahago*.

left, part. *bararre*, fem. *bararra*, pl. *bararru*; what is l. ? *mi ya rage*?

leg, n. *kāfa*, pl. *kafafu*, *kafafuwa*, *kafafe*, *kāfofi*, *chinya*, pl. *chinyoyi*; l. bone *kwabrin*

kāfa; calf of the l. *dambubu*, *tukatukai* (K.), *sharāḇa*; bent l. (a disease) *gwami*; l. bent by disease *gwami*, *kage**; with bent legs (i.e. through disease) *gurgu*, fem. *gurguwa*, pl. *guragu*, this also = without legs.

legend, *tariyo**.

leg-irons, n. *malwa*, *gīgar*.

leisure, *sukuni* (S.), see **opportunity**.

lemon, n. *lemu*, *lemo*.

lemur, a species of (Potto) *ḇeran bīsa**.

lend, v. *bada āro*, *ramta*; see **loan**.

length, n. 1. (of space and time) *tsawa*, *tsawo*, *tsayi*, *tsai*; *tsawanta*, *matsawa*, *tsatstsaowo*.

2. (long continuance), of life *yawan rai*, *tsawon rai*.

lengthen, to *tsawaita*.

leopard, n. *damīsa*, pl. *damī-sai*, *argini**, *tsawarwara**; hunting l. (or cheetah) *rabbi*.

leper, n. *kūturu*, pl. *kutare*, *mai-kuturta**, *mai-kuturchi**.

leprosy, n. *kuturchi*, *kuturta*; spec. a mutilating form of l. *machiri*; white l. *albaras*.

less, adv. l. (= minus in computing) *bus*, *gaira*, e.g. *metin goma bus* or *metin gaira goma* = 200 - 10, i.e. 190.

2. (= English negative suffix -less) *maras-* (used as prefix), e.g. shameless *maras-kumya*.

less, much l., comp. adv. *balē*, *balanta*, *balante*, *barshe*, e.g. this man was not able to walk, much less take up his load *wannan ba ya iya yin tafiya bale shi dauke kayansa*.

less, to grow or make l., see seq.

lessen, v. tr. and intr. *rāgi* or *rāge*, *tawaya*, *towi*, *tauve*; intr. *ragu*, *tawaya*, *tauwi*, *kasad da*; the waters are lessening *ruwaye suna raguwa*; see seq.

lessening, participial n. *raguwa*.

lest, conj. (for fear that, that... not) *kāda*, e.g. he took the medicine lest he should die *ya haɗiye magani kāda shi mutu*; *don kāda*.

let, tr. v. (allow) *bari*, *bar*; to l. alone *bari*, *bar*, *kyale**; to l. go *shika*; to l. down *sabka*, *sabki* or *sauka*, also (with *da*) *sabkas* or *sapkas*, *shida*, e.g. I l. down the load *na sabke kaya* or *na sabkas da kaya* or *na shida da kaya*; particip., l. down *sabbakke*; to l. go *sallame*, *sāka*, *sāke*,

sāki; to l. loose *saki*, *kunche*, *kwanche*, *banya*, *banye*; to l. out (of hire, etc.) *sufuri*, *sufurchi*, *yin sufuri* or *yin sufurchi*; the particle *in* or *im* before a following *b* is sometimes elliptically used to express l., e.g. l. me follow you *im bi ka*.

letter, n. l. (epistle) *watika*, *wasika*, *wasichi**, pl. *watiku*, *wasiku*; *takarda*, pl. *takardu*, *laya**.

2. (a sign of the alphabet) *harafi*, *harifi*, pl. *haruffa*.

lettuce, n., spec. water l. *kainuwa*.

level, adj. and adv. *sosai*, *tangam*, *tangas*; it is l. *ya yi sosai*, *ya bazu*.

level, to, e.g. a road *baji*, *baje*; to rub smooth *darje*; levelled *bazu*.

liar, n. *maḡariyachi*, fem. *maḡariyachiya*, pl. *maḡariyata*.

liberality, n. *baiwa*.

liberate, tr. v. *yanchi*, *yantas*, see **free**.

liberation, from slavery, n. *ɗiyauchi* or *ɗiyanchi*.

liberty, n. *yanchi*.

lice, coll. *kwalkwata*, *kwar-kwata*, see **louse**.

lichen, n. *toto* (S.), *tautau* (K.).

lick, or lick up, v. *lāsa*, *lashe*, *suda*; to l. the hand *tanda*.

licking, *tandewa* ; l. of fingers, etc. *tsotso*.

lie, intr. v., to l. down *kwanche* ; to l. down to sleep *kwana* and *kwanta* ; to l. face downwards *rubda chiki* ; a place to l. down *makwanchi* ; to l. in wait *yin fako* ; a place to l. in wait *mafaka* ; to l. with *gūfa* (S.).

lie, n. *kariya, kēri*.

lie, intr. v. (to tell lies) *yanke kariya, yin kēri* ; to give the l. to *kariyata*.

life, n. *rai*, pl. *rayu* or *rayūka, rayukka, rawuka* ; in more general sense (= Engl. time) *zamani, yayi*, e.g. during the l. (= in the time) of the prophet *zamanin annabi* ; to come or come back to l. *rayu* ; coming back to l., participial n. *rayuwa* ; to restore to l. *raya* ; position in l. *mutumchi* ; a l.-time *kwakwaro* ; l.-long *matseyi*.

lift up, tr. v. *chira, chire, chiro* or *tsira, tsire, tsiro, tāda, tashe, tsaida, hauda, haushi, hausa, daukaka, dokaka* ; spec. to l. up a heavy weight *sunguma*.

light, adj. (not heavy) *shakap, sakwap, sākai, sakat*.

light, adj. (full of light) *mai-haske* ; l. coloured *patsi*.

light, n. *haske*, pl. *haskoki, haskaikai* ; see seq.

light, tr. v. l. (to give light) *haskaka, bada haske*, e.g. the moon gives light *wata shina bada haske*.

2. (to set alight) to l. a fire *hāsa (hāza, āza), wuta, fūra* (or *hūra*) *wuta, yāda wuta, dosana, kūna, kunna* ; the fire is lit *wuta ta furu* ; to l. a lamp *kunna fitila*.

light upon, intr. v. *tsaya*.

lighten, tr. v. l. (to illuminate) *haskaka*, sarasara*.

2. (of lightning) *yin wal-kiya*.

lighting, (of a fire, etc.) *yādiya*.

lightning, n. *wal-kiya*.

like, adv. *tamka, tamkar, tamkan, tamkat, tankat, tanfari, kāma, kakakat*, kāman* or *kāmal*, e.g. this is l. that *wannan shi ne tamkat wanchan* ; *ya, yi, ta'ada** ; adj. *tanfari* or *tamfari* ; the following are substantival (as in Engl. one's l.) *kama*, pl. *kamannu*, e.g. his l. *kamansa, misalinsa* ; see **likeness** ; what is l. to something *mai-maki, wani*, e.g. l. him *waninsa, shige*, e.g. l. them *shigensu, kwatanchi*, e.g. l. this *kwatanchin haka, misali*, see seq.

like, adj. *mai-kāma* ; it is more
l. this than that *ya yi kāma*
da wannan ya fi wanchan.

like, as, adv. *tamkar da* or
tankar da, *kāma* or *kāmad da*
and *kāman da*, *misali**, *awa*,
kamar yadda ; l. this *kwatan-*
chin hāka.

like, to make, tr. v. *daidaita* ;
pass. it is made l. unto a *kwat-*
tanchi ; to be l., i.e. to
resemble *yin daidaiche*, *yin*
kāma da.

like, tr. v. *so*, *marmari*.

likened to, tr. v. *kwatanchi*,
kwatamchi (S.), *kādara*,
kudira.

likeness, n. *kāma*, pl. *kāman-*
nu, *misali*, *supa**, *sīfa*, *wani**,
e.g. his l. *kamansa*, *supansa*,
waninsa or *misalinsa* ; he
gave me his l. (his portrait)
ya ba ni kamansa.

likewise, adv. *kuwa*, *ma**.

liking, n. *kauna*, *kamna* (S.).

lilac, African and Persian l.
(pride of India) *kurnan*
nasara.

lily, water *kwala* (K.), *bādo*,
kola bādo (S.) ; climbing l.
baurere ; spider l. *hatsin ma-*
noma.

limb, of body *gāba*, pl. *gaḡoḡi*.

lime, n. (the fruit) *lemu*, *lemo*.

limit, n. *iyaka*, *iyakachi*, *matuka*.

limping, *dangyashi*, *dīngishi*.

line, n. (row, series) *jeri*, pl.
jerori, *zāne** ; in a l. a *jera*
or a *jere* ; spec. a l. formed
for prayer *saffu* ; a broad
blue l. in cloth *saki*, or
swaki ; to draw up a l. of
battle *ja dāga* ; they are
forming l. *sunu jeruwa* ; it
is arranged in l. *ya jeru* ; a
l. of writing *shatsāra*, *sha-*
ḡara ; to arrange in l. *zura*,
jera, *jere* ; to form a l. *yin*
saffu ; a l. of men *bata* ; to
go in l. *ja bata* ; see **lines**.

line, a l. of writing *shadāra*,
shatsara.

lineage, n. *zuriya*, *usali*, *asali*.

linen, n. *alḡamura*.

lines, coll. *zane* ; to draw l.
zana or *zani*.

linger, intr. v. *dāḡe*, *dada*,
nauwa ; to l. about *lalata*.

lingerer, n. *mai-nauwa* ; a l. at
home in time of war *kazum*.

lint, made from cotton *taffa*,
tappa.

lintel, n. *almanāni*.

lion, n. *zaki*, *zaiki**, fem. *za-*
kanya, pl. *zakoki*, *furdi**,
wan dāwa, *manyān dāwa* ;
a male l. *toron zaki* ; a young
l. *ḡan zaki* ; a strong l. *wan*
dāwa ; the adj. *gadanga*
strong is specially used as
an epithet of the lion.

lioness, n. *zakanya*.

lip, n. *lebo*, *lebe*, pl. *lebu*, *lebuna*; lips *dāburi*, pl. *daburori*; a disease of the lips *chizal*; a disease on the under lip *beli* (K.), *chande* (S.); a disk embedded in the lips of pagans *maran lebo*, *pelele**; thickness of lips *nābuwa*.

list, n. (written) *zumami*, *ta-karda*, pl. *takardu*, *lisafi*.

listen, v. (to hear with attention) *saurara*, *sorara* or *jurare**; (to eavesdrop) *lābe*; to l. intently with bowed head *karkata* and *karkasa* used with or without *kunne* (ear).

listener, n. *majiya*, *sauraro*.

little, adj. *ḡarami*, fem. *ḡarama*, *ḡaramiya*, pl. *ḡaramu*; *ḡanḡane*, *ḡanḡani*, fem. *ḡanḡanuwa*, pl. *ḡanḡana*, *ḡanana*; substantively (= a l., also few) *kāḡan*, *sama sama*, *kīma*, *tsarari*; very l. *kāḡan kāḡan*, *kīma kīma*; I ate but very l. *ban chi ba sai kāḡan kāḡan*; wait a l. while *jīma kāḡan* or *jīm kāḡan*; to take very l. of *tsakāra* or *tsakūra*; a l. *chim*.

littleness, *ḡanḡanta*, *ḡaramchi*.

live, intr. v. *yin rai*.

livelihood, *zaman duniya*.

liver, n. *hanta*, *anta*, *kidibi**, *gidibe**.

living, adj. *da rai*, e.g. this is not a l. child *wagga ba ḡiya mai-rai ba che*.

living One, the, adj., epithet of God *mai-haya**.

lizard, n. *ḡadangare*, fem. *ḡadangariya*, *ḡadangarwa*, pl. *ḡadangarru*; *gwada*, *sharindo*, *sharundo*; skink *kulḡa*; Sudan monitor (*Varanus exanthematicus*) *damo*; Nile monitor *tsari*, *guza*; a small brown l. (Gecko) *tsāka*; *sarekutup*, *sarekutu*, a small black-headed l. *ḡaguware*; a l. with orange and black bars (*Scinopus fasciatus*) which buries itself in the sand *dama-tsiri** (which also = the green snake); when the male l. puts on its mating colours it is called *kutu* in Kano, *kiski* in Sokoto, and *jangwada* in Zaria.

lo! *bum**, *duba*.

load, n. *kaya*, pl. *kayayaki*, *fuḡūma*, *karḡa*; heavy l. *adīla* or *adīlan kaya*, *alaro*, *sanji*; a small addition to a carrier's l. *ḡoriya*; to get ready a l. *ḡyāra kaya*; to pack up a l. *labda*; I took his l. *na tabo shi*.

load, tr. v. *labda*; to l. a gun *ḡura* (or *chika*) *bindiga*, *kimsa*, *yin kimshi*; to l. up *ḡura*.

loadstone, n. *mijin karife*.

loaf, n., of salt or sugar *kantu*.

loafer, n. *ḍan karma*, see **idle**.

loan, n. *āro*, *bashi**, *ramche*; a cooperatively *adashi*, *adashe*, *wujiji*; see **lend**.

loathe, tr. v. *jin kyama*.

loathing, *kyama*, *tsantsani*.

locality, n. *wuri*, pl. *wurare*.

lock, n. *makuli* (K.), *kubli*, *kuli*; l. (padlock) of a door *kwadon kofa*.

lock, tr. v. *kuble*, *kule*; to lock up, id. it is locked *shina kule*.

locks, of a woman's hair *taura*; see under **hair**.

locust, n. *fara*, pl. *farori*, *faruna*, *gam*, *jinnu*, *farat tumfafiya*; a large l. *bābe*, fem. *babaniya*, pl. *babaye*, *babuna*; a black l. *burdu-duwa*, pl. *burduduwwuna*; a black l. which flies at night *farān-dare*; an insect like a l. *taki*, pl. *takoki*; young locusts ('hoppers') *ḍango*.

locust-bean, *dorowa**, *dorawa*; husk of l.-b. *makuba*.

locust tree, n. *dorowa*, *dorawa*, pl. *dorowayi*; pod of l. t. *sabāda*.

lodge, intr. v. *sabka*, *sauka*, *sabki* or *sapka*.

lodging-place, n. *māshidi*,

masabki, *masapki*, *masafki*, *majidi*, *masauki*.

log, n. (of wood) *itache* and *iche*, spec. a l. of wood fastened to feet of slaves as a punishment *туру*; a l. of wood tied to the head as a punishment for thieving *kangalai*; l. fastened to the neck to prevent escape *gudungumi*.

loin, n. *kugu*, pl. *kugogi*; *māra*, *tsāra*.

loin-cloth, a man's *bante*, *banche*; leather l.-c. *warki* (K.), *walki* (S.); a woman's *fatari*, *mukuru*; a l.-c. which is the badge of a thief *bākin bante*.

loneliness, n. *kewa*.

long, adj. 1. (of considerable length) *dogo*, fem. *doguwa*, pl. *dogaye*, *da tsayi*.

2. (of dimension) expr. by n. *tsawa*, *tsawo* etc., e.g. it is seven cubits long *tsawonsa kamu bakwai*; see **length**.

3. (of time) how l.? *tun yaushē*? l. ago *tuntuni*; from a l. time *dadaddle*; l. since *tun dadewa*; l. lasting, adj. *mai-dawami*; (of space) a l. way off *daga nesa*, *da nesa* and *nesa*; a l. way *da jayawa*, *da rata*, *da taḥawa*.

long for, v. *tuski*, *tuske*, *kwa*.

ḍaye, *lamiranta* ; to l. after, e.g. absent friend *yin bege*.

longing, n. (also = l. for) *kwaḍai*, *kāri*, *marmari*, *kāwa* (only used of women) ; evil l. *guri* ; l. for an absent friend *bege*.

look at, v. *dūba*, *dūbo*, *yin kallo*, see **behold** ; l. at this ! *ga shi wannan* ; to l. attentively at *tsokachi*, *yin zuru* ; to l. carefully into *yin bibiya* ; to l. for (seek) *nema*, *bīḍa* ; to l. into, constr. with *da* or acc. *lura* ; to l. proudly on *yin harāra** ; looking round (i.e. spying) *dauroro* ; to l. out for *hanga*, *hangī*, *hango* ; see **espy** ; to l. over *leke* ; looking over the wall *leken garu* ; to l. like, cf. it looks like him *shina da halamun-shi* or *shina da halaman kamanshi* ; it looks like rain *sama tana da halamun yin ruwa*.

looking-glass, n. *māḍūbi*, *mā-dūbin fuska*, *matsokachi*.

loom, n., the pulley on the l. on which the peddles work *chikalkora* ; the handle fixed into the pole of a l. *matukī* ; the pole of l. on which the woven cloth is wound *takala*.

loop, in a string, n. *zarge*, pl. *zarguna* ; *mazargi*, *maḥalli*.

loose, adj., *kwaranga* (S.), *kwaraprap* (K.) ; (my shoe) is too l. for me *ya yi kwaro kwaro*.

loosen, tr. v. *kunche*, *kwanche* (K.), *banya*, *banye*, *sassabta*, *sassafta*, *sassapta*, *sunche*, *ḥamḥare* ; to come loose (e.g. of head of an axe) *kwāḥe*.

loosened, particip. *kunchache*, fem. *kunchachiya*, pl. *kunchachu*.

loosening, n. *kunta*, *kwabiya**.

loot, e.g. the sack of a town *ḥuruntu*.

lop, to *kudure*.

lopping, of branches *sāran bisa*.

lord, n. *ubangiji* ; *sidi* applied to Mohammed ; Lord, an epithet of the Deity, *rabbi**, *ubangiji*.

lose, tr. v. *rāsa*, *yin rashi*, *ḥāta*, *yin hasāra*, *gagata*, the last constr. with *da*, *ruḥushi* ; to l. the way *rāsa hanya*, *ga-gata da hanya*, *ratse*, *gochi* and *goche*, *gwabche* (S.), *ḥāta* (or *ḥāche*) *hanya*, *ḍimanta*, *ḍimauta*, *karkache*, the last also fig. of moral deviation ; to l. one's case *kayas ga shari'a* ; they lost heart *han-kulansu duka sun tashi* ; losing *ḥāchewa* ; see **lost**.

loss, n. *ḥarna*, e.g. they caused

- him l. *su kai ma shi barna* ;
rashi, hasāra, asāra, tasari,
ta'adi, ta'ada, taskāro (S.), *tas-*
gāro (Daura), *kampa, kamfa*.
loss, to suffer, intr. v. *yin*
hasāra, yin ta'adi.
lost, n., the state of being l.,
 e.g. in the forest *dimana**.
lost, particip. *lalatachche*, fem.
lalatachchiya, lalatattu ; to
 be l. *hāche, makuwa, rāsa*.
lot, n. (portion) *rabo* or *rabu*,
 pl. *raberabi*.
lots, coll. *kuriya* ; to draw l.
yin kuriya.
louse, *kwarkwata, kwalkwata,*
kyaya, kyeya ; crab-l. *dan*
kadafi ; see also *lice*.
love, n. *soyaiya, soyaiyya, so-*
waya, soyuwa (S.), *kamna,*
kauna, so, muhibba*.
love, tr. v. *so, san** ; (after
 pronouns ending in *na*) *kam-*
na, kamnache ; *soye, yin so-*
yaiya ; *sha'awa*.
love-bird (Agapornis pullaria),
tsiriya.
love-charms, *tsibbu*.
loved, one much, n. *lele**,
*masoyi**.
lover, n. *maso*, pl. *masowa* ;
masoyi, pl. *masoya*.
low, intr. v. *yin boda*, see
lowing.
low, adv. *a kasa, a kas* ; lower
na kasa, fem. *ta kasa*.
lower, tr. v. *kasashe, sabka,*
sapka, safka, sauka, sabki,
sauki, sabkas da, saukad da ;
 to l. to the ground *kasa* ; to
 l. a bucket into a well *zire*.
lowering, participial n. (a
 bucket into a well) *zirawa*.
lowing, n. (of cow or camel)
boda, umbu.
luck, n. (good) *nasara, arziki,*
gamon-katar, gata, gatanchi ;
 he has brought me good l.
ya yi ma ni gata, katar,
kātari.
lucky, to be *aruzzuka* ; a l.
 day *buruji, yin daula* ; a l.
 person *dangware, mai-arziki*.
luggage, n. *kaya*, pl. *kayayeki* ;
 spec. a woman's l. *fago, faggo*
 or *pago*.
lull, tr. v. *rene*.
lump, n. (e.g. of flour) *dunkule* ;
tsāba or *tsala**, *hangori*.
lunatic, *tabi, tābu, tābo*, fem.
tābuwa ; *mahaukachi*, fem.
mahaukachiya, pl. *mahau-*
kata, tababbe, shinkinkimi ;
 see **fool**.
lung-fish, Gambian l.-f. or
 mud-fish, i.e. *Protopterus*
annectens gaiwa.
lungs, n. *fufu, kufu, sufe* (S.),
 pl. *sufofi*.
lust, n. *gūri, sha'awa, kwa-*
dayi.
luxury, *būki, marmari*.

lying down, n. *kwantawa* ; l. on the back with the legs up *rigingini*, *rigingine*.

lying in wait, n. *fako*, *kwanto*.
lynx, (caracal) *dage*.

macaroni, n. *taliya**, *wasawa*.

mad, adj. *mahaukachi*, fem. *mahaukachiya*, pl. *mahaukata*; *mai-hauka* ; a m. dog *mahaukachin käre*.

mad, to be, intr. v. *hauka*, *haukache*.

madden, tr. v. *haukata*.

madman, *dolo*, fem. *doluwa*, pl. *dololi* ; you m. ! *kai yofi* (S.) ; see **fool**.

madness, n. *hauka*, *wāhami*, *tabuwa* ; stark m. *hauka ja*.

maggot, *tsutsa*.

magic, n. *maita*, *siddabaru*, *tsibbu*, *akokari*, *dabo*.

magnet, n. *mijin karife*.

magnify, tr. v. (to honour, or extol) *girmama*, *bada girma*, *yin yabo*.

magnitude, n. *girma*, e.g. the sun surpasses the moon in m. *rana ta fi wata girma*.

magpie, n., Senegal m. (also used for 'ox-pecker') *charki*.

mahogany, tree *madachi* ; m.-bean tree *kawo*.

maid, an old m. *tuzuruwa*.

maiden, n. *buduruwa*, pl.

budurai, *diya* ; a young m. *bera*.

maidenhood, n. *budurchi* or *buduruwanchi*.

mail, coat of, n. (made of cloth) *lifidi* ; (made of chain) *sulke*, *safa*, *kumakumi*.

mail-clad, pl. *masu-lifidi*.

maimed, adj. *kuduru*.

maintain, tr. v. 1. (to retain) *rike*, *rika*, *riki*.

2. (to feed) *chida*.

maize, n. *masara*, *dawa masara* or *damasara** (i.e. *dan masara*) ; roasted m. *hambara* ; a m.-cob *goyon masara* ; see **corn**.

make, tr. v. 1. (to construct, fashion, create) *yi*, *yiwa*, *yiwo*, *iwo**, *yo*, *wa* ; I m. *nai* = *na yi* ; (to produce or effect) e.g. to m. an outcry *yin kururuwa*.

2. (to cause) *sa*, e.g. they m. the householder run away *sun sa mai-gida shi guje*.

malady, n. *chiwo*, *chiwuta* ; see under **ill**.

male, adj. and n. *namiji*, pl. *mazaje*, *toro** ; the m. lion *toron zaki* ; m. and female *namiji da tamata*.

malice, n. *kiyaiya*, *kiyayya*, *masifa*, *keta*, *mugun hali mugunta*, *tsēgumi*.

malingering, *sāne*.

mallam, (teacher or learned man) n. *malam*, *malami*, pl. *mallamai*; chief m. *liman** or *limami**.

mallet, for beating leather *kantukulo*.

mallow, Jews' m. *malafiya*.

maltreat, tr. v. *walakanta*, *wulakanta*; see **injure**.

maltreatment, n. *walakanchi*.

man, n. *mutum* or *mutume*, pl. *mutane*; (as contrasted with woman and wife) *miji*, pl. *māza*, *mazaje*, *mazaizai*; *mai-miji*; married m. *miji da mache*; the m. with the broom (i.e. a bachelor who has to sweep his own house) *namiji da shara*.

manacles, see **chains**.

manatee, the African species of m. *ayu*.

mane, n. (of horse, etc.) *geza*, pl. *gezuna*, *rabaja* (S.).

mango, *mangoro** (a word used by traders).

manifest, adj. *zahiri*.

manifest, tr. v. *bayāna*, *baiyana*, *gaya*, *gwada*.

manifestation, n. *nunawa*.

manifestly, adv. *zahiri*.

manioc, *rogo*.

manis, n. (i.e. pangolin, a kind of ant-eater) *kirikiri*, *kikiriki*.

mankind, coll. *mutane duka*, *dukan mutane*, *duniya*.

manliness, n. *mazakuta*, *mazakunta*, *mazakunchi*.

manner, n. *hāli*, pl. *hālaye*, *ada*, the latter used especially of religious m.; such is his m. *halinsa ke nan*.

manners, coll., good m. *kumya*, *kunya*, *lādabi*; want of good m. *rashin kumya*.

mantis, *dokin Allah*, *dan kama*, *ḡoki*.

manumission, n. (of slaves) *mudābar*; a certificate of m. *laya*, *layan ḡiyauchi*.

manure, n. *taki*.

manure, tr. v. *takanta*, *yin taki*.

manuscript, a m. from which a copy has been made *uwa**.

many, adj. *dayawa* and (esp. of persons) *mai-yawa*, pl. *ma-su-yawa*; *barkatai*, *fal* (S.), *pal*, *pul** (K.), *rututu* (Zanf.); how m.? *nāwa*, *guda nāwa*, e.g. how m. years is it since your birth? *shekara nāwa tun haifuwarka?* how m. were there? *sun yi nāwa?*

marabout, the bastard *jinjimi*.

march, by night in war, n. *kwanan daga*.

mare, n. *goḡiya*, pl. *gwadḡi*, *dukusa* (fem. of *dukushi*) pl. *dukusai*; a young m. *ḡan*

dukushi; a large m. *ingarmiya*, *ingaramniya*; a brood m. *kabama*, *kabuma*, *kambama*.

margin, m. of a page *bayala*, *kora*.

mark, n. *tabo*, *tambo* (S.), pl. *tabuna*; a m. on paper or cloth *ɖugo* or *ɖiga*, pl. *ɖigogi*; m. on animals, trees, etc. or of a person unable to write *shaida*, pl. *shaidai*, *shaidu*; a m. on the ground, a land-mark *amara*; for tribal marks see **marks**.

mark, tr. v. 1. (to note, observe) *ji*, *gani*.

2. to make a m. on *shaida* or *yin shaida*, *kaskasta*, *kyaskyasta*; to m. off *kebe*, *kebanche*, *alamta*; to m. out on the ground *shaya*, *shata*, *shanwuri*.

marker, in book, n. *halāma*, *alāma*, *amara*.

market, for some special article, n. *kasuwa*, *kausuwa* (Zanf.); spec. a very small m. *ɗan kasuwa*; officer of the m. *sankurmi*; president of the m. *sarikin kasuwa*.

marketing, *sayaya*.

marks, coll. (cut on face to point out tribe etc. to which a person belongs) *shaushawa*, *jarfa*, *shatani*, *zūbe*, *kyaskyas-*

tu, e.g. (m. cut from the corners of the mouth) *yambaka*; (m. on cheek nearly horizontal) *bille* (K.); tattoo m. behind the eyes *kadango*; m. painted on faces of women *katambiri*; tribal m. on temple *kurmajo* (Zanf.); the Beriberi tribal mark *tsagan goshi*; to cut tribal m. *shaushauta*.

marksman, n. *mahalbi*, pl. *mahalba* or *masu-halbi*.

marriage, n. *amre*, *amri*, *aure*, *arme* (S.), *anganchi*; to give in m. *amrad da*; m. feast *buki* or *biki*, also *wasam buki*; m. presents (wife's) *gāra*; to rejoice at a m. *yin gāra*.

married, adj., a m. man *miji mai-mache*, *magidanchi*; a m. woman *mache maimiji*.

marrow, n. *ɓargo*, *lāka**; m. bone *tantakwashi*.

marry, v. *amre*, *aure* or *yin amre*, *ɗamre amre*, *ɗarme arme* (S.).

marsh, n. *fādama*, *dausayi*.

martyrdom, *shāhada**.

marvel, n. (a wonder) *abin mamaki*, *abin chewa*, *ajub**, *ajaba*.

marvel, v. *yin mamaki*, *jin mamaki*, *yin woba*; to m. at a thing unseen before *kākābi*.

mash, tr. v. *farfasha* or *palpashē*, *kirɓa*, *tūke*.

mashed, participial adj. *dakak-ke*, fem. *dakakka*, pl. *dakakku*.

mashing, n. (e.g. of yams) *kirbi*.

mass, n. *tsaba*; a m. of anything *zuri* (K.).

master, n. *ubangiji*; *uba*, pl. *ubanne*, *ubanoi*.

master, tr. v. (to overpower) *rinjayi* or *rinjaya*, *fi**, *i**.

masticate, tr. v. *tamna* or *tauna*, *tsuke*.

masticated, particip. *tamnanne*, fem. *tamnanna*, pl. *tamnannu*.

mat, n. gen. *abin shimfida*, *mashimfidi*; a grass m. *leso*; spec. an old grass m. *kēso*; a reed m. *tabarma*; a goat-skin m. *buzu*, *kilishi*; a round m. *tāfin giwa*; a round grass m. *wundi*, *windi* (S.), *asalo*; a mat let down in front of a doorway *asabari*, *tufaniya*, *mayamfadi* (S.); a grass or reed m. for covering the outside of houses *zāna*; a split-cane woven m. *kwāra-kwāra*; a m. used as a door cover *kyauure*; a hanging m. *tihu*, *tifu*; a m. made of palm leaves *mulli*, *murli*, *gazari*; see **mats**.

match, (fellow) *tsāra*, pl. *tsarara-raki*; look for your m. *nema tsaranka*.

matches, *ashana**; to strike m. *kyarta* or *karta ashana*.

mats, coll. (used for roofing) *amāme*; grass used for making m. *tsintsiya**.

matter, n. (subject) *tada*, pl. *tadodi*; what is the m.? *mi ya faru?* what is the m. with you? *mi ya same ka?*

mattress, cloth, n. *darduma*, *katifa*.

mature, adj. and v. *nena*; see **ripe**.

me, personal pron. *ni*, e.g. he caused me fear *ya ba ni tsoro*, they followed me *sun bi ni*; with prep. to me *ma ni*, *gare ni*; exclamatory, me! do you mean me? *niya?*

meal, n. 1. (repast) *kalachi*, which also = midday m.

2. (ground corn etc.) *gari*; see **flour**.

mean, n. (midway position) *matsakaichi*.

mean, adj. (worthless, contemptible) *lalatachche*, fem. *lalatachchiya*, pl. *lalatattu*, *banza*.

meaning, n., e.g. the m. of a word or a phrase *loga*, *gutsu*, *tushe*, *azanichi*, *baichi*, *kāri*, *ma'ana*, *dalili**; e.g. there is no m. in it *babu loga*; what is the m. of it?

minene gutsunsa or *wannan ina ma'ana tasa?*

measles, n. *karambau*, *karimbau*.

measure, n. 1. gen., both in the strict sense and also of comparison, estimation, proportion, one's m. or standard *gwalgwado*, *gwargwado*.

2. an instrument or means of measuring *abin auna*, *abin awo*, *ma-auna*, *magwadi*, *magwaji*.

3. spec. the foot regarded as a m. of length *taki*, pl. *take-take*; a m. of length from elbow to tip of middle finger *kamu*; a cloth m. of about 15 feet *zane*, pl. *zan-nuwa* or *zanna*; a m. of capacity *mūdu* (K.), pl. *mu-duna*; a m. for grain *zakka* (S.); see **span**.

measure, tr. v. *gwalgwada*, *gwargwada*, *gwada*, *awo*, *yin awo*, *auna*; to m. with the thumb and middle finger *ra-tsa*; to m. with the hand *tāka*.

measuring, 1. participial n. *gwalgwadawa*.

2. anything used for m.; see **measure** (2).

meat, n. (flesh used as food) *nama*, pl. *namomi*, *dāgu* (K.), *yome* (S.); spec. thin strips of cooked m. *kilishi*, *kilis*;

a piece of m. roasted on a stick *chanchanga*, *tsire*, *tsiri*, pl. *tsirare*; a small piece of m. *tsoka* (S.), pl. *tsokoki*; thin strips of m. dried in the sun *yāwara*; the fat of m. *mai*, *kitse*; epithet applied to broth without m. *da lami*.

meddlesome, *kasarantam*.

meddlesomeness, *karambāni*, *kazalaha*.

mediator, n. *matsakanchi*.

medicine, n. *māgani*, pl. *ma-ganguna*, *magunguna*; to take m. *sha* or *hade māgani*; to administer m. *sa*, *ba* or *bada māgani*; a m. for the eyes *korino*, *giwakamba*; a m. taken to ward off an enemy's blows *sagau*; a m. for children *dauri*; sources of m.—a tree whose root is used as a m. for dysentery *domashi*; a sharp, thorny grass ground up as a m. *rairai*; a root used as a purgative m. *zagarafi*; a plant with small black seeds from which a purgative m. is made *nanāfa*; see also *tsuhu*, *tsumi*, etc.; m. consisting of charms *tsubbu*, *tsibbu*, *dabo*.

Medina, *Madina*.

meditate, intr. v. *zache*; see **think**.

meditation, n. *tunane*, *tunan-ne*, pl. *tunannu*.

Mediterranean Sea, *Bahar Ilmal*.

medium, (average) *tsäka-tsäka*; m. sized *matashi*.

meek, adj. *da hankuri*; cf. seq.

meekness, n. *hankuri*, *hankura*.

meet, adj. *daidai*, and in stronger sense *halal*, *halas*; not m. *haram*, *ba daidai*, *ba halal* etc.; cf. seq. (2).

meet, v. 1. *täriye*, *tära*, *yin täriya*, (to assemble) *tära*; to m. as in conflict or opposition *karo* with *da*; to m. with *gämu* or *gamo da*; *tare* or *tarda*, *taras da*, *tariyo**; *tsaya da*; *same* or *samo*; *häda da*, *ḡaramta da*, *sädu*; to m. a person coming from the opposite direction *ḡaramta da*; to m. (i.e. to reach to) *taras*; to go to m. *tarba* (S.); to m. unexpectedly *chin käro*.

2. (to m. so as to be fit, suitable, sufficient) *gamshe*, *ishe*; this meets our case *wannan ya ishe mu*.

meeting, n. *taruwa*, (assembling) *täriya*; m. of rivers (confluence) *magangami*; a day of m. (with God on the last day) *ran gamu*; an un-

expected m. *kachibis*, *kitibis*; they have met *sun yi kachibis*.

melon, n. *dila**; spec. water-m. *guna*, *ḡankana*.

melt, tr. v. (e.g. metals) *narke*, *narka*; it is just at melting point *ina kan narkewa*.

melted, be, intr. v. *narku*.

melted, participle *narkakke*, fem. *narkakka*, pl. *narkakku*.

melting, n. *narki*.

memorandum, of goods, written on paper, n. *zumami*, *zumame*.

memorial, n. *ambäto*.

memory, n. *tunane**, *tuna**, *famu*.

men, n. 1. (males) *mäza*, *mazaje*, *mazaizai*.

2. (human beings) *mutane*.

mend, tr. v. 1. *gyarta*, *gyara*.

2. to patch clothes etc.

banke, *lallaba*, *toshe*, *taushe*.
3. fig. (to set right, to 'm. matters') *gyara*.

4. to m. a road *täda hanya*.

mendicant, n., see **beggar**.

mending, participial form *gyartawa*.

mention, tr. v. *ambäta*, *ambäto*, *ambache*.

merchandise, n. *bukäta*, *abin chiniki*, *fatauchi*, *urula*.

merchant, n. *falke*, fem. *fal-*

kiya, pl. *fatake*, *atajiri* or *tajiri*, *mai-fatauchi*, *dan garumfa**; see **trader**.

merciful, adj. (epithet applied to God only) *errahimi**.

mercy, n. *jinkai*, *tausayi**; see **compassion**.

merely, adv. *sai dai*, *sai*.

message, n. (errand, mission) *sako*, (news or information brought) *labāri*, *jawābi*; to complete the delivery of a m. *ida labāri*.

messenger, n. *maaike*, *maaike*, pl. *masu-aike*; *jekāda*, *jakāda*, fem. *jekādiya*, *makirayi*; *manzo*, pl. *manzanni*, which is also specially used of a king's m.

messiah, the *almasihu*.

meteorite, *gatarin arādu*.

midday, n., of time *tsakar rana*.

middle, n. *tsākiya*, *tsāka*, a *tsāka*; the space between two places or things *tsākani*; in the m. of (prepositional phr.) *tsākani*; to be in the m. *tsākaita*.

midge, ('sand-fly') *kyashi*, *kyar-firfita*.

midnight, *tsākan dāre*.

midst, n., see **middle**.

midwife, n. *ungozuma*, *ungozoma*, *unguwanzoma*, *ingozoma*.

might, n. *iko*, (of physical power) *karifi*, *karfi*; with m. *da iko*.

mighty, adj. *mai-iko*, *mai-karifi*, *bajini**, *gugara**; (as epithets of God) *jabbaru*, *aljabbaru*, *jalala*; see **powerful**.

mignonette, an amaranth plant with a flower like m. *zaki banza*. It is closely related to the native spinach; cf. *alayafu*.

migrate, to *zakuda*, *zauda*.

migration, *kaura*; a place to which anyone migrates *ma-kaurachi*.

mildew, n. *fumfunu*, *funfunu*, *fufuna*, *damshi*, *laima*, *laminia*, *rima*.

milk, n. *nono*, pl. *nonuna*; sweet or fresh m. *mādara*; curds of m. *guntšari*; m. and water *tsararauka*; a herb, the root of which is put in m. to preserve it *loda*, *dafara*; to skim m. *yade*.

milk, tr v. *tatsa*, *tatse*, *twache*, *twatsa* (S.).

milkweed, gigantic m. or Dead Sea apple (*Calotropis procera*) *tumfafiya*.

mill, n., see **millstone**.

mill, tr. v. (to grind) *niķa*.

miller and mill-owner, n. *mai-reda*.

millet, n., bastard m. *tumbin jaki*; bulrush or pearl m. *gero, maiwa*; great m. *dawa*; 'marua' or 'ragi' m. *tamba*; the first ripe heads of m. before the general crop is ripe *tumu*; m. which has sprung up by itself on an unsown farm *yābāri*.

million, adj. *alif alif*; *dubu dari goma*.

millipede, *ḡadandoniya, aima-ka*; see **centipede**.

millstone, n. *dutsin nika, niki, maredi*, pl. *maredai*.

mimosa, *kaidaji*; Egyptian m. *bagaruwa*.

minaret, *hasumiya* (S.), *sumiya* (S.), *sumaya* (K.).

mince, tr. v. (cut into very small pieces) *yanyana*.

mind, n. *zuchiya**; I am of two minds *ina da zuchiya biyu*.

mind, v. (to regard, heed) *kula* with *da*, see **care**.

mine, sep. possess. pron. *nawa* when obj. possessed is masc., *tawa* when fem., e.g. your horse is stronger than m. *dokinka ya fi nawa ḡarifi*.

mingle, tr. v. *chudaya*, see **mix**.

minimum, *ḡadane**.

minister, a king's, n. *bafade*, pl. *mafadawa*; m. of the household *magaji*.

minstrel, n. *zabiya*, pl. *zabi-yoyi*.

minute, n., of time *gari**, *ḡiga*.

mirage, n. *ḡiyal-rana* (lit. child of the sun), *ḡawalwalniya*.

mire, n. *lāka, taḡo*, pl. *taḡuna*; see **mud**.

mirror, n. *madubi, madubin ido, madubin fuska, matso-kachi*.

miscarry, v. *ḡari, yasda ḡiya, ḡata chiki**, *lalache*.

mischief, n. *ḡeta, masīfa, ḡarna*; to do m. *yin sabābi*; m. making *ḡwarmato**.

mischief-maker, n. *mai-sababi*, pl. *masu-sababi*; *machuchi*.

mischievous person, n. *mai-masīfa, mai-ta'adi*.

miser, n. *bahili, marowachi*.

miserable, to be or to render m. *sinihi*.

misery, n., see **distress**.

misfortune, n. *hasāra, asāra, tasari, sababi, mayāta, masīfa, halaka* or *hallaka*.

mislead, tr. v. *rude*; one who misleads *marude* or *mai-rude*, pl. *maruḡa*.

misled, particip. *ruḡadḡḡe*, fem. *ruḡadḡḡa*, pl. *ruḡadḡḡu*.

miss, n., used of an arrow, gun, etc. *kuskurewa*.

miss, v. (e.g. to pass over, omit words in a book) *ratsa**.

fatarā ; to m. the way *ratsa hanya* ; to m. (of an arrow) *kuskure, kurkura, küre* (S.), *yin kundu* ; to m. fire *fāsa* ; to m. one's aim *baude* ; *shan kuskure, shan bara* ; to m. or fail to meet *yin swabāni*.

missing, used of two persons m. each other on a road *swabani*.

mist, n. *hāzo, feshi, kāsashi*.

mistake, n. *mantuwa, rikichi*, pl. *rikita, rikichewa* ; *kure*, pl. *kurakuri* ; I made a m. *na yi kure* ; to make a m. *manta, manche, yin mantuwa, bata zanche*.

mistletoe, West Indian m. *kauchi*.

mistress, n., m. of the house *uwargida, uwalgida*, m. of slaves *uwargijiya*.

misty, adj. *da hāzo*.

misunderstand, v. *gigiche*.

misunderstanding, *gigi*.

mix, tr. v. *dāme* or *dāma, garwaya, gangama, kwābe, kwāba, gauraye, hautsina, kaḍa* ; to m. together *chuḍa* or *chudaya, surka, yamutsa, yamuche* ; to m. mud *chuḍa yimbu, chuḍa* ; mixing *chudawa*.

mixed, what is, e.g. mortar, n. *damamiya*.

mixing, *gāmawa, gauraya, kwabi, surki*.

moat, *baza, gwalalo*.

mob, *gungu*.

mock, v. *bananche, yin ba'a, yin gori, reda*.

mockery, *ba'a, bananchi, gaiya, gori, izgili*.

mode, n. *hāli*, pl. *hālaye*.

moderate size, n., a thing of m. s. *madaidaichi*.

moderately, adv. *da dama dama*.

modest, adj. (bashful, or under a sense of shame) *da kumya*.

modesty, n. (sense of shame, bashfulness) *kumya, kunya*.

Mohammed, pr. n. *Muham-madu, Muhammad, Ahmadu, Ahamadu, dan Amina*.

mohammedan, a, n. *musulmi*, pl. *musulmai* ; the m. religion *musulumchi* ; to be a m. *musulumta* ; I changed from a heathen to a m. *na sauyad da arna musulmi*.

moist, m. ground *dausayi, laima, dimau* (S.).

moisten, tr. v. *jika, jike*.

moisture, n. *damshi, rima* ; see **damp**.

molar, a m. tooth *matamni*, pl. *matamna*.

molasses, a kind of, n. *māḍi, maḍiya*.

mole, n. (birth-mark) *tadawal Allah* ; an animal resembling a large m. *gyabji*.

molest, tr. v. *tsananta*, *alale*.

moment, n., of time *kyapta-wan ido*, *gari**; in a m. (forthwith) *nan da nan*.

Monday, n. *litini*, *latini* and *ranal latini*, *attanin* (S.).

money, n. *kurđi*, *kuḍi*; for m., on payment of m. *da kurđi*; (the only money regularly used by the Hausas consists of cowrie shells, about 2000 of which are equivalent in value to a shilling; the Austrian dollar is occasionally used, see *dala*); ready m., i.e. cash down *hannu da hannu*; much m. *kurđaidai*, *kurade* (S.).

money-bag, small, n. *tsaleṭa*.

mongoose, a species of *ayarabi*.

monitor, *guza*, *damo*, *tsari*.

monkey, n. *b̄iri*, fem. *birinya*, pl. *b̄irai*, *b̄iraye* or *b̄iruna*; different species are: *jan biri*, *kirka*, *bi kuka*, *gata* or *gatan biri*; a small reddish m. *tsula*; an old m. *gauji*; a baboon *gogo*, *gwaggiwo*, *yim̄ki* (K.), *bika* (masc.).

monkey-bread, tree, n., i.e. the baobab *kuka*.

monkey-nut, n. *gyada*; oil from the m.-n. *main gyada*.

month, n. masc. *wata*, pl. *watanni*; this m. *watan yau*; last m. *watan jiya*; next

m. *watan gobe*; the m. after next *watan jibi*; four months *wata fudu*; the fourth m. *wata na-fudu*.

monument, n., see **memorial**.

moon, n. *wata*, pl. *watanni*, masc.; the new m. *sabon wata*, *farin wata*, *jinjirin wata* (S.); a new m. when seen with the old m. *amariyan wata*; moon-light *farin wata*; a bright m. *wata farifat*; a halo round the m. *sansani*; phr. the m. is ended *wata ya mutu*; the m. is new *wata ya tsaya*.

more, adj. 1. (greater in amount) *mafi-yawa*, e.g. he gave him books m. than ours *ya ba shi litatafi mafi-yawa dāganamu*; m. considerable than this *mafi-girma dāga nan*.

2. (to a greater degree) as in our comparison of adj. and adv. *fi*, e.g. he is m. cunning than a ground squirrel *ya fi kurege wayo*; he likes me m. than you *ya fi so na da kai*; *faye*, *faskare*, e.g. you ask m. than I am equal to *kana son abin da (ya faye ma ni or) ya faskare ni*.

3. (m. in addition, further) *kara*, e.g. add m. (to the price in bargaining) *ka kara ma ni*; give me m. money

dada ma ni kurdi; he is asking for m. *ya ke neman kari*; although they made every attempt to console him, he cried the m. *koda suka yi kōkari dayawa sun ba shi han-kuri shi ya kara kuka*; he stabbed him, then he moved no m. *ya yanke shi baya nan bai kara yin motsi ba*; a little m. *da dama*; much m. *bale, bare, balanta*, e.g. he would receive anyone, much m. would he receive me *ya dauki kowa balanta niya*.

moreover, adv. *byan hāka, fa**, *ananan*.

morning, n., the early m. *safe* and *safiya*; when m. came *da safe ya yi*; in the m. *da safe*; every m. *kowache safiya*; good morning! *sanu da safe* or *sanu da rana*; very early in the m. *sassafe*; m. two hours after sunrise *hantsi*.

morning-glory, (plant) *yako, yaryadi*.

morrow, n. *gobe, rana mai-zuwa*; good-bye till to-morrow *sai gobe*; for 'day after to-morrow' etc., see **day**.

morsel, n. *gutsura*, pl. *gutsure*.

mortar, n. 1. (made by scooping out a log) *turumi*, pl. *turame*.

2. (building cement) *dama-miya, damamma* (S.); to mix m. *dāme* or *dāma*.

mortgage, to *tolma*, see **pledge**.

moslem, n. *musulmi*, pl. *musulmai*; see **mohammedan**.

mosque, n. *masallachi*, pl. *masallatai* or *masallataye*.

mosquito, *sābro, sauro, samro*, pl. *sabrana* or *sabraye*.

most, adv. 1. (denoting the relative superlative) is expressed by a defining phr. *mafi* (or *ya fi*) *duka* (or *kowa*), i.e. surpassing all or any, e.g. he is the m. powerful *shina da karifi ya fi duka*; for similar phrases cf. the m. excellent Mohammed *Muhammadu ya fi kowa*; He (i.e. God) who is m. powerful *mai-iko da kowa*.

2. the absolute superlative (= in a very high degree) *faye*, e.g. the cat is m. addicted to crying at night *kyanwa ta faye yin kuka da dare*.

moth, n. *gishi, majibari, buta wuta, bamota**; spec. a m. from a black caterpillar *aso, asu*; a m. with red abdomen, white thorax and black and orange wings *ga-madidi*.

mother, n. *uwa, iya, inna* (S.), *jatoma**, *gyatuma**; children of one m. *chiki daya*.

mother-in-law, n. *sarakuwa, surūka*.

motion, n. *motsi*.

mould, n. *alashaf*.

mound, n. *tudu*, pl. *tudodi*.

mount, v. *hawa* or *hau*; to m. a horse or to m. on horse-back *hawa doki* or *hawa bisa doki*; to m. up or upon *tāka, taki, taska*; to cause to m. *hawas da, haushe*.

mountain, n. *tudu*, pl. *tudodi, tudunduna, tsauni*.

mourn, v. *yin tākaba, yin kuka, yin makoki*.

mouse, n. *ḡera* (K.) or *ḡira, ḡam ḡera, ḡamḡariya, kūsu* (S.), pl. *kusa*; the striped or zebra m. *ḡarewar kusu*; water m. (or cane-rat) *ḡeran kyanro*; a poison used to destroy mice *maḡat, maḡas*; a special name given to a m. *mi-kwana-ka-ba-ni*.

mouth, n. *baki*, pl. *bakuna*; also fig. of the opening or entrance to anything, e.g. the m. of a well *bakin riḡiya*; spec. a disease at the corners of the m. *dacha, datsa*; to fill the m. *gumḡe*.

mouthful, n. *loma, lauma**.

move, v. tr. and intr. *motsa*,

intr. *yin motsi*; to m. away from *gurgusa, gurgushe*; to m. a little back *gusa, gulgusa, gurgusa*; to m. a little forward *guso* or *gurguso*; to m. backwards and forwards *gusa, guso*; to m. forward or backward so as to make room *zakuḡa, zauḡa*; to m. nearer to the speaker *zakuḡo*; to m. from a place *gurgushe*; to m. towards *gurguso*; it cannot be moved *ya ki motsuwa*.

movement, n. *motsi*.

moving, m. a little away, particip. *gusawa*.

mow, tr. v. *yanka* or *yanke*.

much, l. adj. and adv. (in great quantity) *yawa**, *ḡayawa, mai-yawa*, e.g. m. money *kurḡi ḡayawa*; he rejoiced m. *ya yi murna ḡayawa*; *yawa* connective form *yawan, da gugu*, connect. *gugun, gugin, tuli, rututu* (Zanf.), *sununu*, e.g. m. sand *gugun rairai*; how m. ? *nāwa, nauwa* ? e.g. how m. money am I to give you ? *kurḡi nāwa ni ba ka* ? to do something very m. *faye*, e.g. children laugh very m. *yara sun faye yin dariya*; to be too m. for *buwaya* or *buwaye, faskare*, e.g. it is too m. for

me *ya buwaye ni*; it is too m. *ba shi kai hakanan ba* or *ya faskare*; m. more *bale*, *bare*, *barshe*, or with preceding negative much less; very m. *pal* (K.), *fal* (S.).

mucus, from the eyes, n. *kwamtsa*, *kwantsa*, *kwamtso*.

mud, n. *yimbu*, *yambu*, *yumbu*, *taḃo*, pl. *taḃuna*, *lāka*, *kāfo*, *kāfau*, *potopoto*; spec. a handful of m. *churi*; a round piece of m. *chibirin kasa*; slippery m. *talalabiya**; m. or sand in water *yashi*.

muddy, adj. *da taḃo*; m. water *gwiḃa*, *gwiḃi*, *gurbatachen ruwa*; to make m. *gurbata*.

mud-fish, or Gambian lungfish, i.e. *Protopterus annectens*, n. *gaiwa*; noise made by the m.-f. *chiwuki*, *tsuki* (S.).

muezzin, n. *ladān*, *ladāni*, *wazanu* (S.), *wazinu*, *mai-kiran salla*.

mule, n. *alfadari*, fem. *alfadara*, pl. *alfadaru*, *alfadarai*.

multiply, tr. v. *yawanta*, *kara**, *riba*; I multiplied it by ten *na riba shi goma*.

multitude, n. *yawa*, *taro* or *taru*, pl. *tarori*.

murder, n. *kāshinkai*, *kīsankai*.

murder, intr. v. *yin kāshinkai*, *yin kīsankai*.

murderer, n. *makashi*, *makashinkai*, see **kill**.

murmur, intr. v. *yin gunaguni*.

muscular person, n. *gyande*, fem. *gyandiya*.

mushroom, *naman kaza*.

music, n. *molo*, *maulo*, pl. *moluna*; to play music *yin wasa*.

musical instrument, n. *abin molo*, *kida*, *kidi*; any kind of wind m. i. *busa*, pl. *bushebushe*; to play on a m. i. that is touched or struck *yin kidi*; spec. a m. i. like a guitar *gurumi* or *gurimi*; a m. i. held under the arm, a kind of drum *kotso*; a m. i. made of a long gourd *zunguru*; a m. i. played by rubbing on it *kukuma*; a stringed m. i. *matsirkiya*; strings of a m. i. *tsarkiya*; a stick for m. i. *goge*; a m. i. played before a king *pampami*, *famfami*, a wind m. i. *siriki*, a wind m. i. resembling a bagpipe *algaita*, *algaitu*; a trumpet or trombone *kakaki*.

musician, king's, n. *zabiya* (K.), *zabaya* (S.), pl. *zabiyoyi*; m. who performs on a drum, n. *makidi*; on trumpet *mai-busa*.

musk, n. *muska*.

muslin, n., used for turbans
harsa, hassa, hirsā.

mussel, pond-m. *ḡumba*.

muṣṣulman, to be a, intr. v.
*muṣṣulumta**; see moham-
medan.

must, v. (i.e. be obligatory or
necessary) *lalle, kamata*, e.g.
we must work *lalle ne* (or
ya kamata) *mu yi aiki*; see
necessary.

musty smell, as of grain long
kept, n. *suna**.

mutilate, to *gunche, ḡire*;
mutilating *ḡirewa*.

mutilation, e.g. loss of hand
or foot *dungulmi, gundulmi*.

muttering, *jiza*.

muzzle, for goat or donkey,
n. *takunkumi*.

my, possess. pron. 1. suff. *-na*
when the obj. possessed is
masc., *-ta* when fem., e.g.
my father *ubana*, my mother
uwata.

2. separate, *nawa* with
masc., *tawa* and *tata** with
fem., e.g. my horse *doki*
nawa; my mare *ḡodiya tawa*.

myriad, n., of number *ribbi**.

myrrh, *jawal*.

myself, pron. *kaina*; I m. *ni*
da kaina.

nail, finger-n. *ḡumba*, pl.

ḡumbuna or *ḡumbai, farchi*,
farche.

nail, an iron, n. *ḡūsa*.

nail, tr. v. *kāfa*.

naked, adj. *tsirara, funtu*,
huntu, da tsiraichi, mai-
tsiraichi or *da funtu, jir*;
a n. person *tumbar**; he is
n. *ya yi tsirara*.

nakedness, n. *tsiraichi, funt-*
unchi, kāsan; *wofi*, e.g. a
naked lie *ḡariyar wofi*.

name, n. *suna*, pl. *sunaye*,
sunanaki; a city whose n.
is Kano *birni sunansa Kano*;
what is his n.? *wa sunansa?*
or *mi an che da shi?* phr.
name its price *ba shi suna*.

name-day, for a child, n. *ran*
suna; a meal connected with
the n.-day *tuwon suna*.

napkin, n. *kalkāfi, maharma*.

narrate, v. *fadi, fada*.

narrative, n. *labāri, aljama*.

narrow, adj. *ḡumchi, ḡunchi*,
ḡunkunta; a n. place *wurin*
matse.

narrow, v. 1. tr. (to make n.)
ḡumtata.

2. intr. (to be n.) *matsu*.

narrowness, n. *ḡumchi, ḡun-*
chi.

natal, adj. *na-haifuwa*, fem.
ta-haifuwa, e.g. your n. day
rana ta haifuwarka or *ranan*
(*ran*) *haifuwarka*.

nation, *alumma* or *al'umma*.

native, 1. adj. (of animals, etc. belonging to a particular country or district) expressed by means of *ḡasa* or *gari*, e.g. the n. trees *itatuwan ḡasa*; the n. fish *kifayen garinga*.

2. gentilic n. (a native) of a country *ba* with terminal vowel *e* or *i*, e.g. a Hausa n. *ba-Haushe*; of a town or locality *ḡa* followed by its name, e.g. a n. of Zaria *ḡan Zazzau*.

nativity, n. *haifuwa*.

natron, n. *kanwa*, *gallo*; a heap of n. *burdumi**.

nature, n. (character) *hali*.

nausea, *tsanda* (K.).

navel, n. *chibi* (S.), *chibiya* (K.), pl. *chibobi*.

near, adv. *da kusa*, *kusa*, e.g. he went n. *ya tafi kusa*; he sat n. at hand *ya zamna kusa*; very n. *kusa-kusa*, *kur-kusa*, *kulkusa*; n. to *kusa da* or *kusa ga*; n. to him *kusa gare shi*.

near, to be etc., v. intr. to be or draw n. *yin kusa*, *kusata*, *kusache*, *kusanta*; to draw n. *dūno*; to draw n. to *gwa-matsi*, *shinkaya**.

near, coming n., participial form *kūsatawa*.

nearly, adv. *kusa*; it is n. finished *ya yi kusan ḡarewa* or *ya kusa ḡarewa*; he n. forgot it *ya kusa manta shi*.

nearness, (proximity) *kusa*.

necessary, adj. *wajib*, *wajibi*, *lazumtache*; the necessities of life *abin bukatar rai*.

necessary, to be, v. *wajaba*, *wajiba*, *lazumche*, *kamata*; impers. it is n. *ya wajiba*, *ya kamata*, *lalle ne*.

necessity, n. *larura*, *lalle*, *tilas*; of n. *da lalle*, *da tilas*, *da wuya*, *wajib*, *wajibi*.

neck, n. *wuya*, *wiya*, pl. *wiyayi*.

neck-hole, of shirt, n. *wundi*.

necklace, *mākūra*, n. of red beads *kutofi*; (worn by women) *dumbujin zufa*; a n. composed of black seeds *kantururuwa*, *tagode*.

need, n. *bukāta*.

need, v. *bukata*, *yin bukata*; cf. prec.

needful, it is, impers. *ya kamata*, *lalle ne*.

needle, n. *alura*, pl. *alurai*, *maḡunkiya*, *matsiyachiya*, *matsefata**, *tamfasuwa*, *tanfasuwa*; spec. large n. *tsiko*, *sumjiya*, *sumdiya*; a sail-n. *masilla*, *misilla*; a large curved n. used for thatching *bida* (S.); a needle's eye *kāfal alura*.

needle-case, n. *gidan alura*.

needlework, e.g. yellow n. on a burnous, n. *yarrani**.

needy, adj. *maḡaskaschi*, pl. *maḡaskasta*, *talaka*, pl. *tala-kawa* or *talakka*, *mai-talaka*, pl. *masu-talaka*, *mai-talauchi*, pl. *masu-talauchi*.

neglect, n., e.g. of work *kwa-takwana**.

neglect, tr. v. *kyale*, *rena*, *shāmuke*; (to take no notice of) *zuba idanu*.

neigh, intr. v. *yin haniniya*.

neighbour, n. *maḡofchi* (S.), *makobchi*, *maḡubchi*, pl. *ma-kofta*, *maḡochi* (K.), *maḡwabchi*, pl. *maḡwabta*.

neighing, n. *haniniya*.

neither, adv. *ko**; after a neg. neither...nor *ko...ko*.

nerve, n. *jijiya*, pl. *jiwoji* or *jiyoji*.

nerves, coll. n. *dagura*.

nest, n. *shēka*, *sheka* (S.), pl. *shēkuna* and *shēkokī*, *gurbi*.

net, n. *taru*, pl. *taruna*, *marefiya* (S.); spec. names for fishing-nets also *rāfa* (S.), *rāga*, pl. *ragogi*, *foma*, *homa* (S.), *koma*; a n. used for carrying grass *chali*; the piece of wood to which the (*foma*) net is attached *furnai*.

nettle-tree, *zuwo*.

network, n. *aikin raga*.

never, adv. expressed by v. *tāba* with negative, e.g. I n. acted thus *ban tāba yin wannan ba*; we n. went there *ba mu tāba je nan ba*; n. until now *dadai* with negative verb, e.g. I n. saw it *dadai ban gani ba*.

nevertheless, adv. *sai ko, tareda wannan, koda**, *duk da hāka*.

new, adj. *sābo*, fem. *sābuwa*, pl. *sababbi* or *sabbi*; a n. comer *haḡāka*; the n. moon *sābon wata*, *farin wata*; to make n. *sabunta*; making n. (renewing) *sabunchi* (K.), *sabuntaka* (S.).

news, coll. n. *labāri*, *ḡisa**; what is the news? *ina labāri* or *ina labārin duniya*? I heard n. of you *na ji labārinka*; to publish n. *labarta*; to spread false n. *chinewa*, *kwarmāto*.

next, adv. (as a qualification of nouns of time) *gobe*, e.g. n. month *watan gobe*; the n. world *lahira*, *gidan gobe*; the n. day *rana mai-zuwa* or *rana mai-zakuwa*, *kashe-gari* (K.), *wanshekare* (S.).

nibbling, e.g. of ants, n. *tausani* (*gara*).

nice, adj. *da dadī*; something n. *abin dadi*.

niche, *alkuki*.

nickname, *lakabi*, *sunan wasa*.

Niger, Hausa name for the river; n. *Kwāra*, *Kuvara* or *ruwan Kwara*.

nigh, adv. *kusa* or *da kusa*; n. to *kusa da* or *kusa ga*.

night, n. *dare*; *saɓanin yana**; all n. *dare duka*; at n. or by n. *da dare*; good night! *sanu da dare*, *sai da safe*; last n. *jiya da dare*; it is n. *dare ya yi* or *duniya ta yi dare*; to go by n. *bin dare*; to pass the n. *wuni*; when n. comes or came *da dare ya yi*; the n. overtook him *dare ya yi masa*.

nightjar, (Macrodipteryx macrodipterus) *yaute*, *yotai*, *yautai*.

nightshade, black n. *gautan kaji*.

nine, num. *tara*, n. hundred *dari tara*, by nines *tara tara*.

nineteen, num. *goma sha tara*, *sha tara*, *ishirin daya babu*.

ninety, num. *tisa'in*, *tasa'in*, *dari goma bus*, *dari gaira goma*, the two last = 100 less 10.

ninth, num. 1. ordinal *na-tara*, fem. *ta-tara*.

2. fractional n. *tusu'i*.

no, 1. interj. *a**, *a'a*.

2. adj. *babu*, *ba*, e.g. no

money *babu kurɗi*; no one *babu kowa*, *ba kowa*, *babu wanda* or *ba wanda*.

no, to say, v. *hāna*, *ki*, *kiya*.

nod, to, in assent, v. *kāɗa kai*, *gyaɗu kai*.

noise, n. *āmo*, *dūmi*, *ɗimi*, *hayaniya*, *hāniya**, *yagatu* (K.), *mita*, *holo*; loud and angry n. *hargowa*; a vague unexplained n. *burum*; a distant n. *jiza*.

nomadic, adj. pl. *masu-tashi*.

none, adj. *babu* (or *ba*) *wanda*, *babu* (or *ba*) *kowa*, *babu*, the last applied to things; n. used of persons *babu mutum*.

nonsense, n. *wawa*, *wawanchi*; he talks n. *shina magana barkatai*.

noon, n. *tsākar rana*.

noose, n. gen. *zarge*, pl. *zar-guna*; spec. a n. for catching animals *mazargi*, *azargagi*, *azazargi* (S.); *kiriri*, pl. *kirra*.

nor, adv. *ko* with negative, e.g. he gave them neither bread n. money for bread *ba ya ba su ko gurasa ko kurɗin gurasa*.

north, n. *arewa*; on the n. or to the n. *da arewa* or *arewachi*.

northern, the, region, n. *arewachi*.

nose, n. *hanchi*; the bridge of

the n. *goral hanchi*; the part of the n. between the nostrils *zozon hanchi*; a man with flattened n. *mai-hanchi nanakke*; to blow the n. *fyache majina*.

nostrils, n. *hanchi*, pl. *hantuna*.

not, adv. *ba*, e.g. I know not *ban sani*; the *ba* is placed before and after the verb or sentence which it negatives, e.g. I did not see the man *ban gani mutum ba*, or less correctly *ban gani ba mutum*; *babu*, e.g. it is not good *babu kyau*; with imperative or subjunctive clauses *kada*, e.g. do not fear *kada ka ji tsoro*; that you may not fall (or lest you fall) *kada ka fadi*; *kada dai*, e.g. let her n. be heard *kada dai a ji ta*; 'or not' when the words form the end of a question *ko ba haka ba?*

notch, n., e.g. in a tree for resting a load against *loko*.

note, v. *duba* or *dubo*, e.g. note this *duba wannan*.

nothing, n. *bābu*, *bābu komi*, *ba...komi* or *ba komi ba*, e.g. who knew n. *wanda bai san komi ba*; n. but *sai*, *sai dai*.

notwithstanding, adv. *sai ko*, *tare da wannan*, *koda*.

nought, n., see **nothing**.

novel, adj. 1. see **new**.

2. (strange) *baḳo*, fem. *baḳuwa*, pl. *baḳuna*, *baḳi* or *baḳoḳuna*, *da baḳo*.

novelty, n. (strangeness) *baḳonchi*, *baḳontaka*.

now, adv. *yanzu*, *ko yanzu*, *lokachin nan*; even n. *ko yanzu*, *yanzu yanzu*; just n. *yau yau*; till n. *har yanzu*.

nude, adj., see **naked**.

nullah, n. *ḳorama*, *njere**, *injere**.

numb, to be, v., see **numbness**.

number, n. *gūda*, *lisafi*; five in n. *gūda biyar*; without n., beyond n., is expressed by *fi ḳidaya*, e.g. fishes without n. *ḳifaye su fi ḳidaya*.

number, tr. v. *lisafi*, *ḳilga* or *ḳirga*.

numbering, method of, n. *ḳidaya*, *ḳididdiga*.

numbness, n. *dela*, my hands are numb *dela ya kama hannuwana*, lit. n. has seized my hands.

numeral adverbs, these are formed by prefixing *sau*, so or *guda* to the cardinal numbers, e.g. once *sau ḳaya*, thrice *sau uku* or *guda uku*.

numerous, adj., see **many**.

nurse, n. *mai-reno*, *marenīya*, *majiya**.

nurse, tr. v. *rene*.

nursing, n. *reno*.

nut, n. *kwalo*, *kwaluwa*, *girchi* (S.), the small edible ground-n. called also the monkey-n. *gyada* (S.), *gēda* (K.), *gujiya* (S.), pl. *gujeye*, monkey-n. oil *main gyada*; Bambarra ground-n. (Voandzeia) *kwaruru*, *gujiya*, this n. when roasted is called *yaro da dariya*; kola-n. *goro* q.v.; hazel-n. *chanza**, *anza**; shea-n. *kadanya*; tiger-n. *aya*; physic or purging n. *bi ni da zugu*; see also *hawayen zaki*; the inside of a small ground-n. which resembles in colour that of a *bidi* (roan) horse, *bidi*; a dried-up n. *kauda*, *koda*.

O! interj. *ya*, *af*, *ashā*, *ap*.

oak, i.e. African o., n. *gwinki**, *namijin kadanya*.

oath, n. *rantsuwa*, *safirchi**; to take an o. *rantse* and *yin rantsuwa*; a common oath is *wallahi*, i.e. by Allah!

oats, wild o. *bunsurin daji*.

obduracy, n. *taurin zuchiya*, *matauriyar zuchiya*.

obdurate, adj. *da taurin zuchiya*.

obedience, n. *da'a*, *fisa'a* (K.).

obedient, cf. he is disobedient *ba shi da'a*.

obeisance, do, v. *yin sujada*, *runsuna*, *rusuna*, *yin afi*, he did o. to him *ya yi masa afi*.

obey, tr. v. *bi*, *ji*; to o. a command *kiyaye magana*, also *bi* (or *ji*) *magana*.

object, n. *abu*, e.g. a wonderful o. *abin mamaki*; a delightful o. *abin murna*; a sad o. *abin tausayi*.

object, tr. v. *ki*; to o. to labour etc. *yin kiwuya* (or *kyuya*); to o. to an agreement *walwale*.

objection, n. *kiwuya*, *makan-gara*.

obligatory, *lazumtache*, see **necessary**.

obliterate, tr. v., see **blot out**.

observance, religious, n. *ada*.

observe, tr. v. 1. see **notice**.

2. (to comply with, e.g. the commandments of God) *rike*, *rika*, *riki*; to o. a promise *damre magana*, *chika magana*, *kula bisa magana*.

obstinacy, n. *kin ji*, *shishige*, *taurin kai*.

obstinate, adj. *mai-kin ji*, he became more o. *ya kara shishigi*.

obtain, tr. v. *same*, *sami*, *samo*, *riske*, *riski*, *ruska*, *chi**.

obtained, to be, v. *samu**.

obvious, adj. *zahiri*.

occasion, n. (time of an

occurrence) *loto, lotu, lauto* (S.), *lokachi**.

occupation, n. 1. (a being occupied or busied) *shagali, safara* (S.), e.g. the occupations of this world *shagalin duniya*.

2. (a trade, profession etc.) *gwani**, *sana'a, anneshuwa*.

occupied, to be *yin safara*.

odd, adj. 1. (strange) *bako*.

2. (uneven) *mara*; even or o. *chika ko mara*.

odour, n. *wari, wardi*, frequently of a bad, disagreeable odour, so also *doyi, dwai* (S.); an agreeable or sweet o. *kamshi*; concr. a thing producing an agreeable o. or scent *abin kamshi*; to get or emit a bad o. *zaman wari, yin wari, ruɓa* or *riɓa*; to perceive such an o. *jin wari*.

oesophagus, *garera, jannai* (S.).

of, prep. (genitive) *na*, fem. *ta*; also expressed by the connective forms in *-n*, fem. *-r, -l*; e.g. history of the kings *labari na sarakuna* or *labarin sarakuna*. The genitive relation is often expressed by the addition of a possessive pronoun, thus, the house of the king *gidan sariki* or sometimes *sariki gidansa*.

off, adv., e.g. far off, at a distance off *daga nesa*; to be o. (to depart) *tafi*; to come o. (to happen) *faru*; to go o. (to escape) *fiche, tsira, gudu**; be o. ! *arr*.

offence, n. 1. (displeasure) *hausshi*; to feel o. *jin haushi*.

2. (transgression, sin) *zamba* or *zanba, zunufi* or *zunubi*, pl. *zunufai*.

3. (an annoyance) *alale, abin alale*.

offend, tr. v. 1. (to commit a transgression) *yin zamba, yin zunufi*.

2. (to annoy) *alale*.

offer, in bargaining, to make an, v. *taya, yin tayi*; an o. is made *an taya*.

officer, n. *zarumi, zaromi, zarmi* or *jarumi*, pl. *zarumai*; spec. o. at court *turaki, ba-fada*.

officers, n., a king's o. *fadawa*, q.v.; spec. one of the chief o. *ma'aji*; for non-commissioned o. in English employ *masu-igiya* (i.e. bearers of stripes) is used.

official, n. *galadima**.

offspring, n. *ɗiya, iri*, pl. *irare, zuriya, zuri'a*.

often, adv. *sau tari, sau da-yawa*.

oil, n. *mai*; any dark o. *ala-*

yadi; spec. castor o. *main zurma*; o. from ground or monkey-nut *main gyada*; o. from the *kwākwa* palm *main ja*, *alayadi*; o. obtained by distillation from sesamum seed (cf. *samsam*) *main ridi*; o. from the seeds of the shea-butter tree *main kadanya*; meni o. tree *mamijin kadan-ya*; a large fish from which o. for eating is obtained *gini*, *shambāna* (S.), *zau*; o. palm *kwakwa*, *gima* (S.).

oily, to be or become *nāshe*, *nāshi*.

ointment, n. *main shafewa*, *jibda*.

okra, (plant) *kubewa*.

old, adj. *tsofo*, fem. *tsofuwa*, pl. *tsoffi*, *tsofaffi*, *tsofoffi*; o. age *tsufa*; to grow o. *tsofa*, *tsofe*, *tsufa* and *yin tsufa*; he is o. *yayinsa ya wuche*; an o. man with bent back *taḳoḳo*; o. woman *gyatuma*, *jatuma*; to be older than *girme*; o. clothes *ragga*, pl. *ragguna*; to make o. (i.e. to wear out) *tsofe*; see **aged**.

old, of, adv. *dā* and *lokachin dā*; as of o. *kaman na dā*.

olden, in...time, adv. phr., see **prec.**

olive, tree, n. *zaiti**.

on, prep. *bisa* and *a bisa*, e.g.

o. a horse *bisa doki*; o. a hill *a bisa tudu*.

once, adv. *sau daya*; to do a thing o. *taḳa*, e.g. I saw him o. *na taḳa ganinsa*; at o. (forthwith), I will go at o. *zan riḳa tafiya*; o. (in former times) *lokachin dā*; in a weaker sense (on one occasion), e.g. there was o. a man *mutum ke nan* or *akwai wani mutum*.

one, num. adj. *daya*; o. of you *dayanku*; o. another *ju-nansu*; o. at a time *daya daya*; o. here o. there *daya daya*; not even o. (in negative sentence) *ko daya*; but o. *sai daya*; o. (i.e. French 'on' used as a prefix to verbs to form a kind of passive voice) *a*.

oneself, periphr. for, refl. pron. *zuchiya*, see **self**.

onion, n. *albāsa*, pl. *albāsoshi*; wild o. *habki*; spring o. *albāsa mai-künne*, *safa**; spec. onions cooked in soup *taushi*, *taushe*; leaves of onions *lawashi*.

only, adj. and adv. *makadaichi*, *mukadaichi*, *kadai*, *sai*, *sai dai*, *karwai*, *karwe* or *karwi*, e.g. he only *shi makadaichi* or *shi kadai*; there was nothing in it, stones o. *babu*

chikinta sai duwatsu; you have o. to stretch out your hand and take it *sai dai ka miƙa hannunka ka karba ta*; my o. brother *gūda kanena*.

onwards, adv. *gaba*; to go o. (to advance) *yin gaba, chin gaba*.

ooze, intr. v., also to o. out, *zuba, zubo*.

open, adj. (i.e. unabashed) *ƙirikiri*; an o. place *sarari*; come out into the o. *fīto sarari*.

open, to be, intr. v. *buɗu*; the way is o. *an shika hanya* or *hanya ta buɗu*; cf. seq.

open, tr. v. *buda, buɗi, buɗe, fuda, huda, wari*; to o. by making a hole in anything *fuda* or *huda*; to o. wide *bubbude*; to o. out *fida* or *fide*, e.g. of unfolding a standard; o. the umbrella *yaye lema*; to o. by untying *ɓale*.

opened, particip. *buɗaɗɗe*, fem. *buɗaɗɗa*, pl. *buɗaɗɗu*, also expressed by the pass. form *a buɗe*; to be o. *fudu*, e.g. when all the gates were o. *lokachin da dukan ƙofofi am buɗe su*.

opening, n. (aperture) *budi, baki*, pl. *bakuna*; (hole) *bariya*; (commencement) *fararwa*; the act of o. *budawa, fudawa*.

openly, adv. *a buɗe, a sarari, fai*.

ophthalmia, *āmōdari*.

opinion, in my o. *abin da na gani, a tsamanina*.

opponent, n. *abokin-gāba*, see **enemy**.

opportunity, n. *dama, zarafi, zarahi, sukuni* (S.), e.g. he had not the o. *ba ya samu dama*; I have o. to *ina da zarafi*; God give thee a favourable o. *Allah ya ba ka sa'a*; if I get an o. *idan na samu sarari*.

oppose, v. *hana, kara, karo, yin karo*, see **conflict**.

oppress, tr. v. *tsane, tsani, tsananche*.

oppressed, particip. adj. *ma-ƙaƙaƙi, mai-ƙaƙasta, ƙaƙastache*.

oppression, n. *alhaki, tono, yaji*.

option, o. of sale *chinikin zaɓi*.
or, conj. *ko*. The correlatives either...or *ko...ko*.

orb, n. *guda**, its o. *gudanta*.

orchid, *manta uwa, muruchin bīsa*.

ordeal, by water, n. *gwaska*.

order, n. 1. (custom, rule or method of procedure) *ada, tada, al'ada*.

2. (a command) *hakumchi, hukumchi, dolashi*.

3. adv. phr. in o. (in good order, correct) *daidai*; conj. in o. that *domin*, *don*, *in*, *har dai*, *a bīsa*, e.g. he took medicine in o. that he might be cured *ya sha magani domin a warke shi* (or *shi warke*); in o. that not *domin kāda*, e.g. let us take great care in o. that we may not miss the way *mu tunane kwarai domin kāda mu rasa hanya*; in o. to *garin*, e.g. you and I will go out in o. to take a walk *ni da kai za mu tafi garin yawo*.

order, v. *hākumta*, *hākumche*, *hukumche*, *yin umarni*, *ka-darta*; the last used of God.

ordered, particip. (arranged) *shiriyayye*, fem. *shiriyayya*, pl. *shiriyayyu*.

orderly, an *maji-kira*, *majiya-kira*.

ordinance, n. *shari'a*.

ordure, n. *kashi*; see **dung**.

ore, iron, n. *tama*.

oribi (antelope), *batsiya*.

origin, n. *mafāri*, *ūsali*, *āsali*, *sabili*, *tūshiya*, e.g. the o. of a fable or story, i.e. what the fable explains or accounts for *dalili*; their o. is the same *tushiyarsa daia*.

orion, (the constellation) *ma-halbi*.

ornament, n. 1. abstr. (embellishment) *ado*, e.g. for o. *naado*.

2. concr. ornaments *kayan ado*.

ornamental, adj. *na ado*.

orphan, n. *marāya*, fem. *marainiya*, pl. *marāyu*; orphans, i.e. children whose parents died soon after their birth who have been entrusted to strangersto bring up *ḍangana*.

orphanhood, *maraiichi*.

oryx, n. *mariri*, *marili*; white o. *walwaji*, *warwaji*.

ostentation, *fāde*.

ostrich, n. *jimīna*, pl. *jiminu*.

other, pronominal adj. 1. (different) *dabam*, *daban*; o. words *maganganu dabam*.

2. correlatives, the o. *wan-
chan*, fem. *wachan*, pl. *wa-
ḍannan*; less emphatic of various members of a group, e.g. the one...the o., pl. some... others *wani*, fem. *wata*, pl. *wansu*, *wasu* or *wadansu* repeated, e.g. the one said yes the o. said no, quarrelling *wani ya che i wani ya che a'a suna yin gardama*.

3. o. than (equivalent to Engl. else) *sai*, this is seldom used except in negative statements, e.g. nothing other than blood *sai jini*; *bamda*, e.g. we have nothing o. than

this *ba mu da komi bamda wannan*; see **another**.

otter, African clawless o. *karen ruwa*.

ought, aux. v. 1. (personal construction) *wajaba, wajiba*, e.g. we o. to repent *mu wajaba tuba*.

2. (impersonal constr.) *kāmata, kāmache, wajiba*, e.g. *ya wajiba mu tuba* or *ya kāmata mu tuba*; *wajib* or *wajibi* is used with the v. to be, e.g. *wajibi ne (or ke) mu tuba*.

ounce, an o. weight *wakiya**, *wukiya**.

our, poss. pron. 1. suffixed *-mu* or *-nu*, e.g. o. relations *danginmu*.

2. separate, when obj. possessed is masc. *namu*, when fem. *tamu*; thus, o. horse *doki namu*, o. mare *goḍiya tamu*.

ourselves, refl. pron., see **self**.

out, adv. *waje*, e.g. he has gone o. *ya tafi waje*; the fire has gone o. *wuta ta mutu*; o. of *dāga*, e.g. he took a stone o. of his pocket *ya fitas da dutsi daga aljifunsa*; to go o. or to put o. (used of a fire) *biche*.

outcry, *rakadi, suwa suwa*, see **cry**.

outdo, tr. v. (surpass) *fi, faye*.

outrun, tr. v. *riḡaya, riḡa, tsēre, tsire*.

outside, adv. *a waje, waje and daga waje*; o. the town *bayan birni*.

outward, adv. *daga waje*.

oven, n., i.e. a pit for cooking bread in *tanda (S.)*, *tanderu (K.)*.

over, adv. (left, remaining) to be o. *wanza* and *wanzu*, *saura*, what is o., n. *bur-bishi*; to be o. (to be finished) *kare*; o. and above, prepositional phr. *bamda*; o., prep. *bisa, a bisa*, with or without *ga*, e.g. he fell o. a big log *ya faḍi bisa babban itache*, he spread his gown o. the stones *ya shimfiḍa rigassa bisa ga duwatsu*.

overcharge, n. (an excessive price) *kūra*.

overcharge, v. (to charge an excessive price) *shirga* with *tsada* (dear), e.g. he overcharges *yana shirga tsada*.

overcome, tr. v. *rinjāya, rin-jayi, rinjaye, faskare, kāda, kāshe, ima, i*; sleep overcomes me *berchi ya kama ni*; see **overpower**.

overdo, to *shirga*.

over-eat, to *ginsu, gundura, gumde**.

overflow, intr. v. (of rivers)
yin gibi.

overflowing, used of a measure
amaiche.

overpower, tr. v. *kāshe*, *gagara*, *buwaye*; he overpowered
me *ya buwaye ni*.

overpowering, *rinjaya*.

oversee, to *wakilta*.

overshadow, to *inuwantad da*.

overstep, to *swaba*, *sāba*.

overtake, tr. v. *tāras da*, *tsare*,
ishe, *iske*, *chi ma*, *kwarari*,
kwarare.

overthrow, n. *kaye*, pl. *kayoyi*.

overthrow, tr. v. *birkichi*,
birkiche; *giche* or *gichi*; *jir*-
kita, *jirkiche*; *hankada*, *jefas*
da (K.), *jefad da* (S.), *jefashe*
(Zanf.).

overturn, tr. v. *tankade*, *kāshe*,
kade, *juya*; the latter used
with *da*.

overwhelm, to *yin kaye*; see
overthrow.

owe, tr. v. *hāda hannu da*,
also expressed by n. *bashi*
(debt), e.g. I o. him *ina da*
bashinsa (lit. I have his
debt); he owes me *shina da*
bashina; see **debt**.

owl, n. *mujiya*, pl. *mujiyai*.

own, tr. v. expressed by *ga* or
with pronouns *gare*, the pres.
form in *na* with *da*; *ke*, fem.
che with *da*; and by the

forms in *mai*-, e.g. I o. the
horse *doki gare ni*, *ina da*
doki, *ni ke da doki* or *ni ne*
mai-doki.

own, adj., e.g. my o. *nawa*,
with fem. obj. *tawa*; cf.
H. G. p. 24.

owner, n. *mai-chi*, *mai-abu*,
connective form *mai-abin*;
the forms in *mai*- frequently
express ownership, e.g. house
o. *mai-gida*; o. of a boat
mai-jirigi.

ox, n. *sa*, pl. *shanu*; *hurtumi*,
pl. *hurtumai*; o. with red
body and white face *buli*;
pack o. with wide spreading
horns *takarkari*, pl. *takari*-
karai; hole in nose of an o.
azirka, *zari* (S.).

ox-pecker (bird), *charki*, *tsar*-
ki.

oyster, freshwater o. *makan*-
kari, *kawa*.

pace, a *tāki*, pl. *tāke-tāke*, *tāki*-
tāki.

pack, tied up, n. *rizuma*.

pack, up, to, tr. v. (e.g. a load)
lapta, *labda*.

package, n. *kaya*, pl. *kayayeki*.

packet (e.g. of paper), n. *ri*-
zuma, *risma*.

pack-saddle, n. *sirdi*, *shirdi*,
pl. *siradi*, *sirduna*, *sirida*,
siridda or *sirada*.

pad, n. (placed on donkey) *lāheru*, *leferu*, *lafero*, *aku-mari*; (on head of carriers) *gamo*, *ganwo*, *matsetsi*; a p. at the back of a camel's saddle *sulāki*.

paddle, tr. v. *tunkuda* (or *tūka*), *jirigi*.

paddle, *fito*, used as a rudder, n. *matuki*.

paddles, coll. *karoki*, p. of a canoe *fulafule* (S.), *filafili* (S.), *pilapili* (K.).

paddling, participial n. *tukawa*.

pagan, n. *arne*, pl. *asna* or *arna*; in a less strict sense (unbeliever) *kafiri*, pl. *kafirai* or *kafirawa*.

paganism, n. *addini na* (*asna* or) *arna* or *addinin asna*, *kafirchi*; to fall back from Islam to p. *rinda*.

page, of a book, n. *warka*, *waraka*, *tabaka*, *taba'al takarda*, *shafi*, *shafē*.

pain, n. *zafi*, *azāba*, *alala*, *arkāne*, *kūda*, *masība*, *wahala*, *jitsa*, *marwa*, *radadi* (K.), *harbawa*, *zogi*; labour pains *wahalar haifuwa*; to feel p. *jin zafi*, *jin arkāne*, *shagi**.

pain, tr. v., to cause p. *azabta*.

painful, adj. *da zafi*, *da wuya*, *da zogi*, *mai-radadi* (K.).

paint, to *sifata*, *sifache*, *zāna*.

pair, a *wari*.

palace, royal, n. *fāda*, pl. *fadodi*, *dandalin sariki*.

palate, n. *dābori*, *dāburi*.

palaver, n. *kuchi*, pl. *kuchekuche*, *alāmari*, *shawara**.

Palestine, *sham**.

palisade, *kāwara*.

palm, of hand, n. *tāfin hannu*.

palm, n. (the tree) *deleb*, fan or Palmyra p. *giginya*, pl. *gigangani*, *giginyoyi* or *giginai*, *kāri**, the dum p. *goriba*, pl. *goribai*, *goribobi*; fronds of dum p. *kāba*; the oil p. *kwākwa*, *gima* (S.); flowers of a young p. tree *kilili*; wine p. *tukurruwa*; a bag made from leaves of the last *kororo*; nut of the *giginya* p. *kodago* (S.), *kurdugo*; p. leaves *tsaiwa*; p. oil *mainja*; p. wine from the *tukurruwa* p. *bam*, *bambi*, *bammi*; a species of p. from leaves of which hats and mats are made *kajinjiri*; beams made from the fan p. *kwangi*; cocoa-nut p. *kwakwan attagara*; the ball-like fruit of the fan or *deleb* palm *kwōlo*; the unripe fruit of this p. is called *kwalshini* (S.), shoots of the fan p. used as a vegetable *murichi*, *muruchi*.

palsy, *inna*.

pan, cooking, brass, with handle, n. *algidari, alkidari*.

pangolin, see **manis**.

panic, n. (sudden terror) *tun-zuruwa, tunzura, razana, champi*.

pannier, grass, n. *gufa, gufata, adila*.

pant, intr. v. *yin sheda, she-sheka*.

panther, *rabji**, *rabbi**, *damisa**.

panting, n. *haki* (S.), *shashaki*.

pap, n. (of the breast) *nono*, pl. *nonna, nonnaye*.

papaw, n., see **pawpaw**.

paper, n. *takarda*, pl. *takardu*; a p. (a document) *laya*; a sheet of p. *taba'al takarda*.

parable, n. *misali**, *almara*; to speak in parables *yin misali, kwatamta, kwatanta*.

paradise, n. *aljanna*.

paragraph, of the Koran, n. *izufi*.

parakeet, (Agapornis pullaria) *tsiriya*; see **love-bird**?

parallel, that which is, or like, adj. *mai-maki*.

parallel, to make, tr. v. *dai-daita*.

paralysis, *inna*.

paramour, *kwarto*.

parasite, n. (a hanger on at others' tables) *mai-kwaraka*.

parch, tr. v. *surya, soya, suya*.

parched, particip. *soyayye*, fem. *soyayya*, pl. *soyayyu*.

pardon, n. *gafara*.

pardon, tr. v. *gafarta, yafe*; as a polite expr. I beg your p. (excuse me) *gafara* or *ka gafarta ma ni*.

parent, n. *mahaisi*, pl. *mahaisa*.

parents, n. *uwaye, iyaye, bafayu*; cf. also prec.

parrot, n. *aku, jiljilmako*.

part, n. *rabi, rabo* or *rabu*, pl. *raberabe, wari, shashi, sashe* (S.), e.g. each of them shall receive his p. *kowannensu zai samu rabonsa*; (region) *waje*, pl. *wajeje*.

part, tr. v. (to separate) *raba*.

parting, n. *rabuwa, rabo*.

partition, n. (i.e. wall) *shamaki*, pl. *shamakai*.

partner, n. *abokin taraiya*.

partnership, *karo*, cf. *kurdin chaffa* (or *chappa*) the fees paid on the establishment of a partnership.

partridge, red-legged, n. *makarwa, makwarwa, fakara, pakara*.

parts, which make up a whole *jimilla*.

paschal lamb or **ram**, n. *ragon laya*.

pass, v. *wuche, fuche*; to p.

anyone on the path *goche* or *gwabche*; to p. the night *kwanā*, *kwanta*, *wuni*; to p. away *shude*, *shuda*, *shudi*, *wuche* or *fuche*; to p. by *wulga*, *wulge*, *wurga*, *wuche*, *fuche*, *zāge*, *zwāge* (S.), *zāga*, *zāgi*; to p. near *gege*; p. on! *ku shige*; to p. over (to cross) *ketare*, (to skip words in book) *ratsa chingara*.

passage, a *mashigi*.

passionateness, n. *harāra*.

passover, feast corresponding with, n. *sallal laya*.

past, the, n. (former times) *dā*, *baya*, e.g. the wars of the p. *yakoki na dā*; the things of the p. *abubuwa na-baya*; a thing p. *abin baya*.

pastor, n. (shepherd) *makiyayi* or *makyayi*, pl. *makyaya*.

pasture ground, n. *wurin kiwo*, *makiyaya*.

pasture, v. tr. and intr. (to graze) *kiwo*.

patch, n. *banke*, *shafi*, *fito*, *shiga*, pl. *shiguna*.

patch, tr. v. (of cloth, clothes) *banke*, *toshe*, *shafi*, *shafe*.

path, n. *turba*, pl. *turbobi*, *hanya*, *hayya*, *haya*, pl. *han-yoyi*, *tafarki*, pl. *tafarkoki*, *godabe*; a straight p. *hanya sosai*; a narrow p. *laḥi*; fig. the p. of religion or conduct

hanya or *tafarki*, e.g. the paths of Mussulmans *han-yoyin musulmi*.

patience, n. *hanḡuri*, *hakuri*, *hakurchi*, *hanḡura* or *hakura*, *dangana*; a man of extra-ordinary p. *rakumin Allah*; to show p. (to be patient) *yin* or the forms ending in *-na* followed by *hanḡuri*, e.g. they have p. *sunā yin hanḡuri* or *sunā hanḡuri*.

patient, 1. adj. (calm, not fretful) *da hanḡuri*, *mai-hanḡuri*, *mai-hakurchi*, *da sanyin rai*; to be p. *jimri*, *juri*, *hanḡura*, *yin hanḡuri*; he is p. towards everyone *ba shi kosawa da mutane*; cf. prec.

2. n. (a sick person) *maras-lafiya**.

patois, (i.e. bad Hausa) *bā-bauchi*, *baubauchi*.

pattern, a p., e.g. in cloth *zane*.

paw, *dagi*.

pawn, to *yin ramche*.

pawpaw, n., i.e. both the tree and the fruit *gwanda*, *gwad-da* (S.).

pay, n. *lada*, *biya*, e.g. that is their p. *ladansu ke nan*; a soldier's deferred p. *kurḡin huji*.

pay, tr. v. *biya*, *yika*, *rama*; the last is also used in the sense

of to requite and to reward ;
to p. a debt *biya bashi* ; to p.
a second time or over again
kwatamtawa.

payment, n. *biya, lada*.

pea, earth p. *kwaruru, kwa-*
lulu, gyada ; pigeon p. (Indian
dhal) *waken turawa* ; heart
p. *gautan kwado*.

peace, n. *lafiya, limāna, natsu,*
natsuwa, wāli, pl. *wale-wale* ;
there is p. between us *lafiya*
tsakanin mu ; you can travel
in p. *kana iya yin tafiya da*
lafiya ; p. of mind *daɗin*
zuchiya ; p. ! (a salutation)
sallama ; to be at p. *yin*
wāli.

peace-maker, n. *matsakanche,*
maitsakanta husuma.

peak, n. *kai*, e.g. p. of a hill
kan tudu ; spec. p. of a
saddle *kwachiya* ; the front
p. of a saddle *kwachiyar gaba* ;
its hind p. *kwachiyar baya*.

peal, of thunder, n. *tsawa*.

pearl, n. *murjan** ; idon *zau-*
ra ; pearls coll. *kwan kifi*.

peck, tr. v. *koto*.

peculiarity, n. (of animate
beings) *hāli*, pl. *hālaye*.

peddler, *mai-sari*.

peel, n. (of fruits, etc.) *kwasfa,*
*kosfa**, pl. *kwasfofi, ɓawo,*
tsiyayi.

peel, v. 1. tr. *kware, kwari,*

bāra, ɓāre, ɓamɓaro, ɓonɓole,
kwalkwale, kankari, feke (S.),
fere (K.).

2. intr. to p. or p. off, as
the skin from a blister *sale,*
sode, swale ; it peeled off *ya*
ɓaru.

peep, to *leka, leki, leko, rēga* (S.),
see **spy**.

peering, p. into *rego* (S.).

peg, n. *maratayi*.

pelican, n. *kwasakwasa, jin-*
*jimi** ; a short-legged p. *bu-*
bukuwa (S.).

pelt, to, with, tr. v. *jejeɓi da,*
jajjefa da ; to p. with stones
jefa da duwatsu.

pen, n. 1. (for writing) *alka-*
lami, pl. *alkalamai*.

2. (enclosure for sheep,
etc.) *garke*, pl. *garkuna, turke,*
rugga, garge (S.).

penalty, *jaraba*.

pendant, e.g. a p. stone worn
by women, n. *talhatina*, pl.
talhatinu.

penis, *azakari, bura, didi, ku-*
tuma, mazakuta, (of animals)
gandari, talolo (K.).

pennisetum, n. (*Cenchrus ca-*
tharticus) *karangiya* ; cf.
gero, mainca.

people, n. *mutane*, pl. of *mu-*
tum (in the sense of popula-
tion and persons generally),
e.g. the p. of Lingi *mutanen*

Lingi; (connections, relations, etc.) *kibanta**; (followers, congregation, etc.) *al'umma*.

pepper, n., red or chilli p. *barkono*; a large green p. *tatasai*, *twashshi*, *tushi*; spec. a red p. (capsicum) *köle*, *tankwa*, *tsidifu*; Melegueta p. or 'grains of paradise' *chitta*; African, Guinea, or negro p. *kimba*; West African black p. *masoro*; the hotness or sharpness of p. *yaji*, pl. *yazuzzūka*.

peradventure, adv. *watakila*, *halama*.

perceive, tr. v. 1. gen. (to apprehend by the senses) *ji*; to p. by sight *gani*.

2. (of comprehending, understanding) *fahimta*, *ji*, also *sani*; to p. something wrong *farga*, e.g. I p. that you are cheating me *na farga da kai*.

percolate, to *yoya*, see **leak**.

perfect, adj. *ingatachi*.

perfect, tr. v. *chika*.

perforate, tr. v. *fuda* or *huda*, *soosoke*, *sosoke*; see **pierce**.

perforce, adv. *tilas*, *da tilas*, e.g. we had to go on board p. *mun hawa bisa jirigi da tilas*; see **force**.

perfume, n., see **odour**.

perhaps, adv. *watakila*, *halama*.
peril, n. *hatsari*.

perish, intr. v. (to be spoiled, wasted or destroyed in any way) *bata*, *ḡache*, *yakuche*. e.g. they p. together *sum ḡache tare*, *lalache*, *mache*; (to die) *mutu*, e.g. they perished of hunger *sun mutu da yunwa*.

perished, participial adj. *lala-tacheche*, fem. *lalatachchiya*, pl. *lalatattu*.

perishing, participial n. *lala-chewa*.

perjury, n. *kapara*, *kafara* (S.) to commit p. (to swear falsely) *yin kapara*.

permanence, n. *tabbatawa*.

permanent, adj. *matabbata* to make p. *tuturta*.

permission, n. *yarji*, *yardi*, *yarda*, *izni*, e.g. grant me p. *ba ni yarji*; by the p. of God *da yardan Allah* or *bisa yardan Allah*.

permit, tr. v., see **allow**.

perplex, to *dāme*, *dāma*; see **confuse**.

perplexed, to be, intr. v. *dāmu*.

perplexity, n. *tunzura*.

perquisite, a corn-dealer's p. *rara*.

persist, to *zage**, *dora**.

persistence, *nāchi*, *nachiya* see **continuance**.

person, n. *mutum*, pl. *mutane*, also (with or without *mutum*) *wani*, fem. *wata*, pl. *wansu*, *wasu*, *wadansu*, *yasu*, e.g. some persons *wadansu mutane* or *wadansu*; a certain p. who shall be nameless *mutum kaza*.

perspiration, n. *jibi*, *gumi*, *zufa*.

perspire, intr. v. *yin jibi*, *zufa*, *yin gumi*.

persuade, tr. v. *lallasa*, *biko*, *fura kunne*, *kuta*.

persuaded, particip. pass. (sure or certain) is expressed by means of *tabbata*, etc., e.g. he was p. that...*ya tabbata*.

persuasion, *lallashi*, pl. *lalla-soshi*.

pervert, tr. v. (to lead from truth or right) *rude*.

perverted, part. pass. (misled) *rudadde*, fem. *rudadda*, pl. *rudaddu*; to be p. *rudu*.

pestilence, n. *alloba*, *aloba*, *bala'i**.

pestle, n. *kayan daka*, *tabariya*, pl. *tabare*.

pet, (favourite) *dan tatangi*.

pheasant, crow p. or lark-heel cuckoo *ragon maza*; rock p. *kazan dutsi*.

phoenix bird, *fufunda**.

physic, n. (medicine) *magani*, pl. *magunguna*.

physician, n. *mai-magani*, pl. *masu-magani*; see **doctor**.

pick, n. *dundurusu*, *kalme*.

pick, tr. v. (to choose) *zaɓe*, *zaɓa* or *zaɓi*; to p. a quarrel *tona faɗa*; to p. out *tsina*, *tsinche*, *tsunche* and *tsinta*, *kwalkwale*, *konkole*, *kwaɓule*; to p. up *jide*, *sarɓe*; to p. the teeth *kwaɓwala*, *haɓori*, *sakata haɓori*.

pickaback, (a children's game) *dokin wuya*.

picked, part. pass. (chosen) *zaɓaɓɓe*, fem. *zaɓaɓɓa*, pl. *zaɓaɓɓu*.

picking a thing off the ground, particip. n. *tsintuwa*, *tsuntuwa*.

pick-pocket, *ɗan sāne*.

picture, n. *misali**, *kāma**; his p. *misalinsa* or *kamansa*.

piece, n. *wari*, *bangori*; small p. of anything *tsibiri*, *chibiri* or *chibri*, *gutsure*, pl. *gutsa-tsari*, *tarfi*, *guntu*, *gutsi*; a small fragment *guntun abu*; to break a p. off *gutsuri*.

pieces, to tear to, tr. v. *tsats-tsaga*.

pierce, tr. v. *fuda*, *huda*, *huji*, *soka*, *soke*, *soki*, *yin sakiya*, *tūne*, *zarta*; intensives, to p. many holes *fufuji*, *furfuje*,

huhuda; to p. through *sos-soke*.

piercing, n., e.g. of the skin by an arrow *sakiya*, *soka*, pl. *soke-soke*.

pig, *gursunu*, pl. *gursuna*, *alade**; wild p. and red river hog *aladin daji*, *durungu*; wart hog *gyado*, *gadu*, fem. *gado-niya*, pl. *gyadodi*, *gyaduna*, *alhanzir*, *mugun dāwa*, *rishi*.

pigeon, n. *tantabara*, pl. *tantabaru*; fruit p. or green p. *biribiri* or *kurchiyar gamji*, see **dove**.

pike, n. (spear) *mashi*, pl. *masussuka* or *masu*.

pile, n. (heap) *taru* or *taro*, pl. *tarori*.

pile up, tr. v. *tāra*, *tattāra*, *hāda*, *tūla*.

piles, *kūrga* (K.), *basur**.

pilfer, v. *sata*, *yin sata*, *sache*, see **steal**.

pilferer, n. *mai-sata*.

pilgrim, n. *hāji*, *hajji* (S.), pl. *hajoji*.

pilgrimage, n. *haji*; to go on the p. *haji* and *tafi haji*, *ziyarta*.

pill, n. *chibiri** or *chibri**.

pillage, n. (booty) *abin kwache*.

pillage, tr. v. *kwache*, e.g. he conquered them, he pillaged their property *ya chi su ya kwache dukiyansu*.

pillar, n. *gimshiki*, *gumshiki**, pl. *gimshikai*.

pillow, n. *matashin kai*, *majingini*.

pimple, *bar-ni-da-mugu*.

pin, n. *tsiko**, *tsinke**; a p. used for pressing cotton *dan bida*; a large wooden p. used in winding the thread on the cylinder which is fixed in the shuttle *tangori*.

pincers, n. *kwāguwa*, *hantsaki*, *madebin kaya**.

pinch of, to take, v. *tsakūra*, *gutsura*.

pinch, tr. v. *tsamuka*, *tsakūra**, *tsamka**, *tsungule*, *yin kwanta*, *muntsini*.

pinching, n. *kwanta*, *tsamuki*.

pinnacle, n. *koḳuwa*, *koḳowa*.

pipe, tobacco-, n. *tukunyar taba*, *lofin taba*.

pistol, n. *akotiya*, *algaderiya*.

pit, n. *rami*, *rame* (S.), pl. *ramuna* or *ramu*, *ganwa*; spec. a deep wide p. *hangarma**, *kwāri**; p. for cooking bread in *tanda* or *tanderu*; p. for storing corn *tsunjiya*; p. for game to fall into *hāḳo*, pl. *hāḳōḳi*, *āra*; a cesspit *salga*, pl. *salgagi*; dye-p. *marina*, pl. *marinai*.

pitch, tr. v. l. (to cast, throw) *jefa*.

2. spec. to p. a tent *kāfa lema* (or *laima*).

pitcher, n. *tulu*, pl. *tuluna*, *tukunya*, pl. *tukwane*, *tukane*; *randa*, pl. *randuna*; a p. with a narrow mouth *dan tozo*.

pitfall, n. *haḳo*, pl. *haḳoḳi*.

pity, n. *tausai*, *tausayi*, *juyaye*, *sauna*; to have or feel p. *yin* (or *jin*) *tausai*, *jika*; what a p. ! *abin tausayi*, *tazanko*, *tanzanko*.

pity, tr. v., cf. prec.

place, n. *wūri*, pl. *wurare*; *waje*, pl. *wajeje*, *bigēri*, *bige*, *bigi*; (district, country) *gari*; an uninhabited p. *dāwa*; in circumlocution to supply the want of various special nouns and adjectives, e.g. a p. to flee to (refuge) *wūrin gudu*; so also *gida*, e.g. p. or abode of pain *gidan azaba*; a secret p. *lolokin asiri*; in that p. *wurinnan*, *a wūrin nan*, *dāga nan*, e.g. there are many hippopotami in that p. *akwai dorinnai dayawa daga nan*; in p. of (instead of), e.g. in his place *gurbinsa*, *bigerinsa*, *wurinsa*; the last also = at his p., i.e. near him, with him; to give p. to, let him take the p. of another *shi koma matsayin wani*; an-

other was put in his p. *an sa waniwurinsa*; to take p. *faru*.

place, nouns of, these are formed by means of prefix *ma-*, e.g. hiding p. *maḳoya*, kitchen *madafa*, inn *mashidi* from *ḳoya*, *dafa*, *shida* respectively.

place, tr. v. *sa*, *sanya*, *kāfa*, *aje*, which denotes also to p. aside, *ḳora*, *aza* or *aza ma*; to p. on, e.g. he placed me on the camel *ya ḳora ni bisa ga rakumi*; to p. on the ground (e.g. a load) *jibe*, *jefo**, *ḳasa*; to p. together (e.g. for the purpose of comparison) *kwatanchi*; to give p. *kau*.

placing, of a thing, participial n. *sawa*; p. one thing upon another *riḳiye*.

plague, n. 1. (pestilential disease) *alloba*, *ḳawainiya*, *rangāza*; 'he caught the p.' turn by 'the p. caught him' *alloba ta kama shi* (or *same shi*).

2. (an annoyance) *alale*, *wahala*.

plague, tr. v. (to vex) *wahalshe*, *ḳawainiyas da*; see **annoy**.

plain, n. *fili*, pl. *filaye*, *sarari*, *karkara*, pl. *karkarori* or *karkaroni*, *kanga*; the battle p. *kangan fada*.

plain, adj. (of language simple and open) *a sārāri*.

plait, tr. v. *tubka, tufka, tupka, tukka, tumka* (S.), *yin kitso*.

plaiting, *sāka*; p. of mats *sākar zana*; (of hair) *doka, kitso*; p. of hair in two lines *jaki*; hasty p. of woman's hair *kumbuchi*.

plaits, coll. n. *kaikainya*, (of woman's hair) *bijaji, buji-buji, biji-biji*.

plan, n. (scheme, device) *wayo, wayau, dabara*.

plank, n. *faskare, gungume*, pl. *gungumai, rumfa*, pl. *rumfuna, kange**.

planks, to make into, v. *yin faskare*.

plant, tr. v. 1. (to set or sow in the ground) *shibka, shipka, shuka, yin shibka, dāsa, dashi, dashe*.

2. (to set or place) *sa*, e.g. there was no place to p. our footsteps *babu wurin da mu sa matakai bisa*.

plant, n., i.e. a cutting *dasashe*.

plantain, n. *ayaba* applied both to tree and fruit, also used to denote the banana.

planter, n. *manomi*.

planting, of seeds, n. *biso*.

plants, small, coll. n. *shibka, shipka, shuka*.

plaster, tr. v. (of walls etc.)

yāba, yābe, dampara, damfara; (of floors) *mamari*.

plastered, participial adj. *ya-ḥaḥḥe*, fem. *yaḥaḥḥa*, pl. *yaḥaḥḥu*.

plastering, *yābe*, pl. *yābe-yābe*.

plate, n. *tangaram, tangaran*; a p. made of plaited grass *taitai*, pl. *taitaye*; see **dish**.

play, n. (the doing of anything for amusement) *wargi, gyauga**, *wasā*; hail to you at your p. (salutation to persons at p.) *sanunku da wargi*.

play, v. (of sport, amusement) *yin wargi*; (of music) *yin wasa, yin kidi*; the last particularly applied to instruments struck or beaten.

player, on drum, n. *makidi*.

playing, n. (of amusement) *wargi, gyauga**; (of music and especially drumming) *kida* or *kidi*, *molo*, pl. *moluna*.

plaything, n. *abin wargi*; spec. p. made from a seed pod *kachau-kachau*; see **rattle**.

pleasant, adj. *mai-dadi, da dadi*.

please, tr. v. *sa dadi, gama, gamshe*, e.g. it pleases me *ya game ni* or *ya gamshe ni*; p. (elliptical = if you p.) *mana*, e.g. come here, p. *zo mana*.

p. (i.e. allow me) *bari*; p. do
yarje mana.

pleased, to feel, intr. v. *jin*
daḍi.

pleasure, n. (agreeable sensation or emotion) *daḍi, ni'ima*; (a gratification) *abin daḍi, abin murna*.

pledge, n. *jingina, dangana*; p. held for money owing *kamuwā**.

pledge, tr. v. (to leave anything as a p.) *jingina, tolma*.

Pleiades, pr. n. *tarsowa*.

plentiful, to be p. *yalwata*.

plentifully, adv. *tari, kainnain**.

plenty, n. *yawa, dayawa, kari, tari, tuli, bāro, dumbuje, malala, tinjim*, e.g. p. of words *yawan magana* or *magana dayawa*; p. to eat *zari, zwari, an chiya**.

pliancy, *rauni**.

plot, n. *wayo, wayau*, to form a p. *gama*.

plot, v., to p. together *damra dabāra*.

plough, n., spec. a large hoe bent back like a small p. *galma* (S.), *garma* (K.).

plough, to *fuda, huda, kafche, kabche*.

lover, a kind of, n. *kyare-kyare, zakaran yaki, zakaran assuba, dan raguwa*; black-

headed p. or 'Niger bird' or 'crocodile bird' *ladin kogi, jakin gulbi* (S.).

pluck, tr. v. *chira, chire, chiro* or *tsira, tsire, tsiro, ḍēbe, ḍiba, ḍēbo, tuge, tumbuke, zumbuke* (S.); (to p. fruit etc.) *tsinki, tsunke, tsinko, tsige, tsitsige*; (to p., e.g. a fowl) *fīge, fīgi, piga, tuza*; to p. out *yin dono*; plucked *figagge*, fem. *figaggiya*, pl. *figaggu*.

plucking, n. *fīga*.

plum, n., gingerbread p. *gawasa*, pl. *gawasai, gawasuna* and *gawasoshi*; hog, Spanish or Jamaica p. *tsadal lamarudu*; a tree with plum-like fruit *danya, loda* (S.).

plunder, n. *abin kwache*.

plunder, tr. v. *kwache*.

plunge, v. 1. tr. (to immerse) *tsoma, nutse, nuche*.

2. intr. *fadi*, e.g. he leaped plunging headlong into the water *ya tuma ya fadi ya gangara chikin ruwa*; see also **dive**.

plural, n. (grammatical term) *jam'i**.

pneumonia, pleuro-p. of cattle *balagiyo, malagiyo* (S.), *aran-gaza* (K.).

pocket, n. *aljifu*, pl. *aljifai* or *aljifuna*.

pod, n. (of nuts, etc.) *kōsa*,

- kwasfa*, *kopsa*, *kobso*, *kwanso* ;
p. of the locust tree (*dorowa*)
sabāda, *safada* ; p. of guinea-
corn *tsirgagiya*.

poem, n. (in the sense of metrical composition, song) *waka*.

poet, n. *mai-waka*.

point, n. *kokuwa**, *tsini*, *garatse* ; points above or below letters *wāsali*.

point, out, tr. v. *nuna* or *nuni*, *gwada*, *gaya*.

pointed, adj. *da tsini*.

poison, n. *dāfi* ; a p. given in food *sammu*, *kwarche* ; ingredients used in making poisons used for smearing arrows *uwal dāfi*, *zabgai**, *yabi*, *kwankwani* (*Strophanthus hispidus*), *taramniya** (*Combretum*), *kokiya* (*Strychnos spinosa*), *sanya* or *uwar magunguna* (*Securidaca longipedunculata*), *tururubi* (*Lasiosyphon krausii*), *zabon dāfi* ; a p. used for destroying mice *madat*, *maḍas*.

poison, to *gubanta*, *sammache*.

poisoned, participial adj. *da dāfi*.

poke, to p. with a stick *zungura*, *zungau*.

poking, e.g. with the elbow *gobso*, *gwabre*.

pole, n. *gimchiki*, *gimshiki*, esp. used of the middle sup-

porting p. of house ; p. of tent *tankari*, *kekimaḳa* (S.) ; poles used in supporting a tent coll. *shikashiki*, pl. *shika-shikai*, cf. **post** ; iron p. *karko* ; a p. in the middle of a hu-
shushuniya, *shishiniya* ; a p. used for purposes of irrigation *lambu* ; a p. carried across the shoulder from either end of which a load is suspended *taula*.

policeman, *ḍan sanda*, *dogari* ; the office of a p. *dogarchi* ; the chief of the police *ma-kama*.

polish, tr. v. *gogi* or *goge*, *chudanya*.

pollute, tr. v. *yin haram*, *ḳazamta*, *ḳazamtad da*.

polluted, adj. *janaba*, *ḳazami*.

pollution, n. 1. gen. *ḳazamta*, *ḳazanta*, *janaba*, *jaraba*, *ja'ira*.

2. (religious or ceremonial uncleanness) *haram*, *abin haram*.

polo, the game of *wasan kwālo**.

pomegranate, n. *rūman*, *rumaniya*, pl. *rumanina*, *rumanai*.

pommel, n. (of a saddle) ; see **peak**.

pommel, tr. v. (to beat) *buga*, *bubbuga*, see **beat**.

pomp, n. *sitira* or *sutura*.

pond, n. a large stagnant p.

bingi, gaji, kududdufi, kududdifi, dankam, tabki, tafki, tapki, see **pool**.

ony, n. *kūru* and *doki kūru*, *dukushi*, fem. *dukusa*.

ool, n. *tabki, tapki* or *tafki, rafi, gaji*, pl. *rafuna* or *rafuffuka, fadama, korama, dankam, tauga*, see **pond**.

oor, adj. *talaka* (K.), *talakka* (S.), pl. *talakkarwa*; *makaskachi*, pl. *makaskasta*; to be p. *talauta, tsiyache*.

oor person, a, n. *talaka, mai-talaka, matalauchi, mai-tsiya, matsiyachi, gyande*, fem. *gyandiya*, pl. *gyandaye, gindau, tagajan*.

opping, into a hole *kudus*.

oppy, yellow Mexican p. *kwarko*.

orch, n. *shigifa*, pl. *shigifu* and *shigifofi*; spec. a small p. *shirayi*; a p. with double entrance *zaure*, pl. *zauruka, zaurukka*.

orcupine, n. *beguwa, makaya* (lit. thorny), *makibiya* (lit. possessor of arrows).

orridge, n. *fūra*; spec. p. of guinea-corn and rice *surki*; p. of beans, guinea-corn or (in N. Africa) macaroni *wasawasa*.

orter, n., see **carrier**.

ortion, n. *rabo* or *rabu*, pl.

raberabe, kashi, kashe; a p. (when one of two or more portions) *shashi* or *sashi**, *sashe* (S.), *fasali*, see **piece**.

possess, tr. v., this idea is expressed: 1. by the pronominal forms ending in *na* with *da*, e.g. I possess much money *ina da kurɗi dayarwa*.

2. by *ke* with *da*, e.g. all the property that you p. *dukiya duka da ku ke da shi* (or *ita*).

3. by the prep. *ga* or with pronouns *gare* (is to or belongs to), e.g. he possesses no money *babu kurɗi gare shi*.

possessed, e.g. with evil spirit, pl. *masu-bori, masu-boli*.

possession, n. 1. abstr., e.g. to gain p. of a kingdom *chin sarauta*.

2. concr. pl. possessions *dukiya, tarkache*.

possessor, n. *mai-abu* connective *mai-abin, mai-chi*; the idea is often expressed by the prefix *mai-*, e.g. the p. of a farm or a boat, *mai-gona, mai-jirigi*; the p. of a horse *mai-doki*.

possible, *yuwuwa, yiyuwa*.

possibly, adv., see **perhaps**.

post, n. (of door) *kwabrin kofa, kwilkin kofa, shishike* (S.), *shishiniya* (S.), *shushuniya* (K.); a p. for tethering

horses *turke, tuke*; a p. for supporting roof *jigo*, pl. *jiguna*.

posterior, adj. (both of time and space) *baya, na-baya*, fem. *ta-baya*, e.g. the p. limbs *gabobin baya* or *gabobi na-baya*; the hinder part of an animal *kuturi*.

post-haste, *zuwan manzo*.

postpone, tr. v. *fāsa, jinkirta*, see **delay**.

postponement, *ko-ta-kwana*.

postponing, particip. n. *fasa-wa*.

pot, n. (of earth or iron) *tukunya*, pl. *tukane* or *tukwane*; a metal p. *karife* or *karipe*; a large earthen p. with a narrow mouth *randa*, pl. *randuna, kwatarni* (S.), *kwatarniya* (K.); a large earthen p. used as oven *tanda* or *tanderu*; a water p. *tulu*, pl. *tuluna*.

potash, broken p. *tsabage* (S.); a kind of hard p. *takarna, tafarna*.

potato, sweet (i.e. *Ipomoea batatas*), n. *dankāli*; various species are: *kūdaku, lawur* (S.); Kaffir p. *rizga*.

potent, adj. *isheshe*, fem. *ishashiya*, pl. *isassu*; see **powerful**.

potter, n. *mai-tukunya*, pl.

*masu-tukunya, mai-tukane, mai-yumbu**, *magini*.

pouch, n. *tumbi*, pl. *tumbuna*; a sort of leathern p. *zabira*; a p. or crop of a bird *marore malolo*.

poultry, n. *kaji*, pl. of *kāza* fowl.

pounce, n. *sura*.

pounce, to *kawo sura*.

pound, n. (of 12 ounces) *rotal*, pl. *ratalai**.

pound, tr. v. *dāka, dandaka, dandaki, daddaka, rarratse, kirba, kirbe* (without object), *ribde, rifde, rubde*; a woman who pounds corn *mai-koda, mai-kodiya*.

pounded, p. flour *ribdi, rubudi*.

pounding, n. (e.g. of yams) *kirbi, rubudi*; the action of a woman p. in a mortar *lugude*; the sound of p. *rupkarupki*.

pour, v. tr. and intr. (also to pour out, down, off, away, etc.) *zūba, zūbe, zūbo*; tr. only *zūbas, zūbas da, zubad da* and *zubda, zubshe* (Zanf.) *dole, tūshe, bulbula, bungula, tarfa*; I poured out every drop of it *na zubas da she babu kingi*; intr. only *zubu* e.g. the rain is pouring on *pours down ruwa ya zubu* to p. water in a jet *zurara* to p. out (or scatter) *tsiyayi*

to p. out grain so that chaff may blow away *shika*; to p. over (to overflow), intr. *tuda* or *tude*, tr. *tudas da*.

poured, to be p. out like wheat through a sieve or like water, intr. v. *tarara*.

pouring, *zūbi*, *zūbawa*.

pout the lips at, to, v. (in derision) *zunde* and *yin zunde*.

poverty, n. *talauchi*, *talauchiya*, *tsiya*.

powder, n. (gunpowder) *albarus* or *albarud*.

powder, tr. v. (to reduce to p.) *daddaga*.

power, n. 1. (faculty of doing or causing anything) *iko*, pl. *ikoki*, *yi*; by the power of God *da yin Allah*.

2. (bodily or material strength) *karifi*.

3. (political or social p., authority, influence) *hakimi*, *daula*.

4. (surpassing p., excellence) *fiko*.

powerful, adj. 1. gen. *isashe*, *isheshe*, fem. *ishashiya*, pl. *isassu*, *mai-iko*.

2. (cf. prec. 2) *mai-karifi*, pl. *masu-karifi*, e.g. a p. man *mutum mai-karifi*.

3. spec. applied to God *kadiri*, see **mighty**, **strong**.

powerfully, adv. *da karifi*.

practice, n. *sabo*, e.g. no work in the world can be accomplished except by p. *aikin duniya duka sai sabo*; (customary procedure) *ada*, *tada*, *al'ada*.

practised, be, intr. v. *saba*, e.g. I am p. in this *na saba da wannan*.

praise, n. *yābo*, *kirari*, the last also=self-p.; (of praising God) *shukra*; self-p. *yābon kai*.

praise, tr. v. *yāba*, *shukra*; *yin yābo* and *yin kirari*; also expressed by nouns of prec. with the present forms in *na*, e.g. I praise thee *ina yabonka*.

praised, particip. adj. *yababbe*, fem. *yababba*, pl. *yababbu*.

prattling, n. *rawatsa*.

pray, tr. v. (whether of prayers to God or requests to men) *roka*, *yin roko*; construed with an acc. of the person or with *ga* (before pronouns *gare*); the thing asked is expressed either by the acc., e.g. I p. our Lord for that which I seek and for my needs *ubangijinmu ni ke roko komi ni ke bida da bukatata* or by a dependent clause, e.g. we p. to the Lord that we may obtain provision for our journey from the heathen *mu roki ubangiji*

mu yi guzuri da asna; intr. v. in a religious sense only *yin addu'a*, *yin salla*, *yin zikiri*; to p. for a person *sallashe**.

prayer, n. *addu'a*, *salla*, *salati*, *zikiri**; call to p. about 4 p.m. *azuhur* (S.), *azahar* (K.); the man who calls to p. *ladan*, *ladāni*, *makiran salla*, *wazinu*, *wazanu* (S.); a leader in p. *limam*, *liman*, pl. *limami*; prayers said by a mallam at a funeral *alfatiya*; time of p. about 10 a.m. *walaha*; the four attitudes (Moslem) for prayer are (1) standing up and looking towards Mecca *kama*, (2) raising the hands and calling upon Allah *rāka*, *rāka'a*, (3) bending down with hands on knees *ruku'u*, (4) prostrations *sajada*. **prayer-beads**, (a flower) *idon zakara*.

prays, one who, n. *mai-salati*.

preach, v. *yin wa'azi** and *wa'azu*.

preaching, n. *wa'azi*, *wa'azu*; p. in mosque after prayers *hutsuba* (S.), *huduba* (K.).

precious, adj. (costly) *da tsada*. **precipitous**, a p. rock *mikakken dutsi*.

precisely, *rab*, see **exactly**.

prefer, tr. v. *fi so*, *yin fin so*,

gwamache, e.g. we p. mutton to beef *mun fi so naman rago ya fi naman shanu*; I p. this to that *na fi so wannan da wanchan*.

preferable, to be, intr. v., see **better**, 1.

preference, *fin so*.

pregnancy, *kunika*.

pregnant, adj. *da chiki*; she is p. *ta chi wake*; to be p. *yin juna biyu*.

preparation, n. *shiri*, *shirya*, *tatali*, *tānadi* (S.), *jajibir*, *jajibera*, in a religious sense, e.g. day of p., i.e. day before any feast *ranan jajibir*.

prepare, tr. v. gen. *gyara*, e.g. to p. a way *gyara hanya*, *gyarta*; *shiriya* and *yin shiri*; used in the intensive form = p. diligently *shish-shiriya*; exclam. phr. p. ! *ka watane*.

prepared, particip. form *shiri-yayye*, fem. *shiriyayya*, pl. *shiriyayyu*.

present, n. *kyauta*, e.g. I made him a p. *na yi masa kyauta*, *abin gaisuwa*, *tsaraba**, *kaiwa*; the last especially of a p. made to a king; spec. a fee paid for bringing a p. *tukwichi*, *tukwichi*; a wife's marriage presents to bridegroom *gāra*; a p. made to a

person on his arrival *sauka*; a first p. as a token that a larger one is to follow *garawa* (K.); a p. sent by the bridegroom to the bride several days before the wedding *lefe*; a p. given by a man when he sends for his wife *taskira*; a p. by a bridegroom *toshi*.

presently, adv. (soon after the present time) *yanzu yanzu*; (immediately) *nan da nan*.

preserve, tr. v. *kiyaye*, *kiyada* (S.), *kiyas da* (K.), *kiyashe*; in a looser sense *tsira*, *rayad da*.

president of the market, n. *sarikin kasuwa*.

press, tr. v. *taushe* (S.), *tausa* (K.), *mana*, *mani*, *matse*, *matsa*, *dāna*, *dāne*, *danfara*, *dankara*; to p. down *tauwaya* or *tauwi*, *chāchāka*, *chusa*, *chushe*, *kimshe*; to p. a trigger *ḍane*; the trigger was pressed *an ḍana kunama*.

pressed, particip. adj. *tausashe*, fem. *tausashiya*, pl. *tausassu*.

presser, n. instr. *mataushi* found, e.g. in *mataushin kofa* a piece of wood to keep a door closed, *mataushin watika* signet.

pressing, particip. n. *taushewa*.

pretence, *riya*, *sāne*.

pretend, v. *maida kansa*, *riya*.

prettiness, *sha'awa* (K.), *shawā* (S.).

pretty, he is p. *shina da magāna*.

prevail over, v. *rinjayi* or *rinjaya*; also expressed by means of *fi*, e.g. I prevailed over the man *na rinjaya mutum* or *na fi mutum da ƙariƙi* or *mutum na fi ƙarifi*.

prevent, tr. v. *hana*, *tankwasa*, *dakile*, *tare**; to p. a person's leaving *hume*, e.g. I prevented his leaving *na hume shi*.

previous, adj. *na-fari*, fem. *ta-fari*; (of time long p.) *na dā*, e.g. p. time or age *loka-chin dā*; men of p. ages *mutane na dā* or *mutanen dā*.

previously, adv. *da fari*, e.g. why did you not tell me this p.? *domi ba ka faɗi ma ni nan da fari?*

prey, n. 1., see **booty**.

2. (food of an animal of p.) *nama*, e.g. the lion catches deer, that is his p. *zaki ya kama bareyi ya chi su namansa ke nan*.

price, n. *kurɗi*, *an taya*, *kīma*, *tamani**, *sāllama*, *haki**, e.g. what is its p.? *kurɗinsa nawa?* or *nawa an taya?* name

its p. *ba shi suna*; to fix a p. for *kawamata*, e.g. let their goods be gathered together and their p. fixed a *gangama dukiya* *ansu a kawamata*; a reduction in p. *gwanjo*; to fall in p. *yin goino* (or *gwano*).

prick, tr. v. *soka*, *soke* or *soki*, *tsokana*; to p. much (intens.) *soosoke*.

prickle, n. (on grass, etc.) *kaya*, pl. *ḡayayūwa*.

pride, n. *foma*, *homa*, *tama*, *tamanya*, *girman kai*, *būki*, *tashin kai*, *gatsina* (K.), *faḡḡin zuchiya*, *faḡḡin rai*, *gūri*, *fahari* or *fahri*, e.g. leave off p. *ku bar fahari*.

pride of India, (flower) *kurnan nasara*.

priest, *liman**.

prince, n. *amiru**; (son of a king) *maina**, *ḡan sariki*; princes *sarakuna*.

prison, n. *kurkuku*, *kililu*, *kilulu*, *saḡaka*, *salka*, *sarka*, *ḡaḡin ḡufu*, *wurin azāba*, *ḡidan kwaliba**; chief of a p. *bakurme* (K.), *bango* (K.); p. officer *bayare* (S.), *yari*, pl. *yarawa*.

prisoner, *kamamme*, *ḡan saḡaka*.

privet, Egyptian p. *lalle*.

probe, to *ḡüre*.

procession, n. *jera*, *jere* or

jire; spec. a royal p. *banga banga*.

proclaim, v. 1. to make an official announcement or order *yin shela*, *yin yekuwa*.

2. to announce or publish *labarta*, *habarta**.

3. spec. to p. the end of the fast *yin gangamin azumi*.

proclamation, n. 1. (an official public announcement or order) *shela*, *doka*, *doki*, *kaliye*, *yekuwa*.

2. (deliverance of religious or moral instruction) *wa'azi*, *wa'azu*.

procrastinate, v., see **delay**.

procure, tr. v. *same*, *samo* and *samu*.

procuress, *kawaliya*, *kalwaliya* (S.).

prodigy, *karāma*, see **wonder**.

produce, n. *ḡiya*, *yaya*.

produce, tr. v., to p. young or fruit *haife*; to p. evidence *kai* (or *kawo*) *shaida*.

profanely, to act, v., e.g. he acted p. *ya yi swaḡon Allah*.

profession, n. (of an art or craft) *ḡwani*; the termination *-chi* is often used to denote a person's p., e.g. the p. of a *boka* = *bokanchi*, the p. of a *malam* = *malamchi*.

profit, n. (both lawful and unlawful) *kūra*, *rība*, *moriya*;

unlawful p. *haramiya*; to make a p. *chin rība, mori*; a man who sells a second time at a p. *mai-sari*; men who make unlawful p. *masu-riba da kūra*; to p. by *anfāni, anfāne*.

profitable, to be, v. *yin moriya*.

profligacy, *karma, karuwanchi*.

profligate, n., a p. *ashēge, farka*; a p. man *fāsiki*, pl. *fāsikai, dan karma, mai-yin zina, mai-zina, mai-nema*; a p. woman *fāsika, karuwa*.

profligate, adj. *shege*; to be p. *yin zina*.

prohibit, to *hāna*.

prohibited, a p. place *bataka, hurumi**; it was p. *an yi hani*.

prohibition is expressed by *kada*, also by *kada dai*, e.g. do not hinder them *kada ka hana su* or *kak ka hana su*.

prohibition, n. *hani, doka*, kashedi, kasheji* (S.).

project, to *gota*; (e.g. of a single man in a row) *saba, zaba, hillo, hulo, bullo*.

prolong, tr. and intr. v. *dadi, dade, tsawo, wanzu*, e.g. may God p. your life *Allah shi dade da ranka*; impers. we prolonged our stay here *mun zamna nan ya dade*; the last idea can be expr.

by *dade* alone in personal constr., e.g. I prolonged my stay in Tripoli to four months *na dade ga Tarabulus wata fudu*.

promenade, intr. v. *yawo, yin yawo*.

promise, n. *alkāwali, alkāwari, wa'adi*; to make a p. *yin alkāwali*; to break a p. *sāki* and *warwari alkāwali*; to keep a p. *chika alkāwali, chika magana, kama magana*; a p. to pay *waka*.

promise, v. *yin baki daya, yin magana daya*.

prone, (on the back) a *rigin-gini*.

pronounce, v. (to declare openly or positively), see **declare**.

pronunciation, n. *halshe, harshe*, pl. *halshina* or *halussa*.

proof, n. *shaida*; to adduce p. *kai* or *kawo shaida*; p. (e.g. from the Koran) in support of conduct or statement *dalili*.

prop, n. *mādōgara, makari, tankari*; see **bar**.

prop, to, v. *dogare, tankare*.

propagate, tr. v. (to have young) *haife, haife diya*.

propel, tr. v., e.g. a canoe *tunkuda*.

proper, adj. *na-kwarai*, fem. *ta-kwarai, halal, halas, sosai*,

daidai; that which is p. *sawaba*.

properly, adv. *kwarai*, *daidai*, *tamau*, *sosai*, *bajau*.

property, n. (goods, riches) *dukiya*, pl. *dukoki* and *duki-yoyi*, *jāli*, *mallaka*, *tarkache*; a man of p. *mai-dukiya*, *mai-abin dukiya*, *mutum da dukiya dayawa*, *mai-wadachi* and *mai-wadata*.

prophecy, n. *annabanchi*, *an-nabchi*, *waliyanchi*.

prophecy, v. *yin annabanchi*.

prophet, n. *annabi*, pl. *anna-bawa*; the office of a p. *annabanchi*.

proprietor, n. gen. (owner) *mai-abu*, conn. *mai-abin*, *mai-chi*; (house owner) *ubangiji*; see under *mai*.

propriety, n. *halalchi**.

prosper, v. 1. tr. *ba* (or *bada*) *arziki*, e.g. may God p. you *Allah shi ba ku arziki*.

2. intr., see **prosperous**.

prosperity, n. *arziki*, *abki*, *afki*, *auki*, *katari*, *katarta**, *yalwata*, *bijinta*, *alkariya*, *gata*, *gatanchi*; he has enjoyed p. *ya sha ruwa*; he has enjoyed p. in this world *ya sha duniya*.

prosperous, adj. *da arziki*, *mai-arziki*, *mai-katarta*; he is p. *ya yi bijinta*; he

shall not be p. *ba a yi masa arziki ba*.

prostitute, n. *karuwa*, *kwar-tuwa* (fem. of *kwarto*), *falka*, *farka*, *mai-nema*.

prostrate oneself, to, v. *yin afi*, *kafa goshi*, *gurfana* and *yin gurfani*; (of prostration in worship) *yin sujada*, also with *na*, e.g. follow after God, p. yourselves before Him *ku bi Allah kuna sujada*.

prostrate, to be, v. *rubda* (or *rufda*) *chiki*, *yin āfi*.

prostration, n. (i.e. in prayer) *raka*.

protect, tr. v. *tsāra*, *tsāri*, *tsāre*, *tsāro*, *batāka*.

protection, n. *lamuni**, *kā-riya**; he has the king's p. *ya shiga rigar sariki*.

protector, n. (defender) *mai-taimako*.

protopterus, n. (mud-fish) *gai-wa*; the noise made by the p. *chiwuki*.

protrude, to *zazzale*.

protruding, e.g. of an eye after a blow *zazzalo*.

proud, adj. *mai-girman kai*, pl. *masu-girman kai*, *da girman kai*, *mai-girima*, *mai-foma*, *mai-homa*.

proudly, adv. *da girman kai*; to speak p. *yin raha*; to

walk p. *takama*; one who walks p. *mai-takama*.

prove, tr. v. (to establish the truth of anything) *gaskata* or *gaskanta*; (to evidence by testimony of any kind) *kai* (or *kawo*) *shaida*; (by exposition or argument) *gaya*, *nuna* or *nuni*.

proved, particip. (attested, certified) *shaidadde*, fem. *shaidadda*, pl. *shaidaddu*.

proverb, *karin magana*, *sara*.

provided that, this conj. is expressed by adding emphatic particles *dai*, *fa* to *in*, *idan*, e.g. *in dai*, *idan fa*.

provision, n. provisions for a journey *guzuri*; to make or obtain p. *yin guzuri*; fig. of p. for the next world, e.g. repent, seek p. for the way that thou mayest prepare to make a journey *ka tuba ka nemi guzuri don ka shiriya yinin tafiya*.

provoke, tr. v. *harzuka ga*, *hasala ga*, *haye**; I was provoked at this saying *na ji fushi da maganan nan*.

prowl, to p. round *zaga*, *zazzaga*.

proximity, see **nearness**.

proximo, adv. (e.g. next month) *watan gobe*.

prudence, n. *hankali*, *fahimi*, *basira*.

prudent, adj. *mai-hankali*, pl. *masu-hankali*; to be p. *shiga hankali*, *hankalta*.

prudently, adv. *da hankali*.

Psalms, n. *zabura**.

puberty, one who has reached, n. *balagagge*, pl. *balagaggu*; children approaching the age of p. *banawa*; a boy approaching p. *matashin balaga*; a girl approaching p. *mata-shiyar balaga*; the age of p. *lokachin balaga*.

puberty, to reach, intr. v. *balaga*.

publish, tr. v. (i.e. to p. a thing or news of a thing) *labarta*, *habarta**.

pudenda, n. *al'aura**, *matu-chi* fem.

puerility, n. *halin yaro*.

puff-adder, *kasa*.

puggaree, a red. p. *jan tunka*.

pull, tr. v. *ja*, *jaka*; to p. out *chira*, *chire*, *fitas da*, *fusge*, *fizge* or *fisge*, *tahe*, *tabi*, *sakatta*, *sakache*, *tuge*, *zara*, *zare*, *zari*, *zaro*, e.g. he pulled a pistol out of his pocket *ya fitas da akotiya daga alji-funsa*; to p. out (as a hair, grains from a stalk) *tsefe*, (as roots) *tona* or *tone*, *tumbuke*; p. out the grass *a tumbuke chiyawa*; to p. towards oneself *jawo*; to p. in towards

oneself *miko*; to p. up a horse *zami*, *zame*; p. up here! *zami nana*.

pulley, on a Hausa loom on which the peddles work *chikalkora*; see under **weaving**.

pulse, *daldal*.

pumping beam, n. *kutara**.

pumpkin, n., names of different species are: large garden p. (Cucurbitapepo) *kābewa* (K.), *kuḅewa* (S.), *goji* (Z.); a smaller p., used in making soup *miya*; a white p. not eaten, used for making water-pots *dūma*, masc. pl. *dumai-mai* or *dumaye*.

punch, to *fidda naushi*.

punctuation, signs of *fāri*.

punish, tr. v. *fallasa*, *pallasa* or *pallashe*, *foro*, *yin wahala*, *yin foro*.

punishment, n. *fallasa* or *pallasa*, *azāba*, *foro*; a legal p. *ukuba* (S.).

pup, n. *kwikuyo*, *kwikwiyo*, *kuyikuyu*, pl. *kuyikuyai*, followed by *kare*.

pupil, n. 1. (a school-boy) *ḁan makaranta*, pl. *yan makaranta*, *yaron* (pl. *yaran*) *makaranta*; (of adults and spec. those of a religious teacher, i.e. disciples) *almajiri*, fem. *almajira*, pl. *almajirai*.

2. p. of the eye *ijiya*, *ijiyar ido*, *matsokachin ido*.

puppy, n., see **pup**.

purchase, tr. v., see **buy**.

pure, adj. 1. (in a material sense) *tsari*, *tsalka* or *tsatsalka*, *da tsalki*, *tsatsarka*, e.g. p. wheat, i.e. clean, in good condition *alkama tsari*, (of metals = unalloyed) *safi* or *safe*, e.g. p. silver *azurfa safi* = *azurfa babu ha'inchi*; (= simply) *tsāba* and *tsala*, *kūna*, e.g. p. and simple cowries, i.e. nothing but cowries *tsāban kurḁi*; nothing but water *kūna ruwa*.

2. (in a ceremonial or moral sense) *tsari*, *chari*, *da tsarki*, *da tsabta*, *halal*, *halas*; p. water *ruwa da karari*; to be p. *yin tsabta*, *tsalkaka*, *tsarkaka*.

purgative medicine, n. *maganin zawo*, *maganin gudundaji*; purging nut *binidazugu*.

purge, to *kawashe*.

purification, n. esp. ceremonial p. *tsalka* or *tsatsalka*, *lullo*; p. of a woman after the birth of a child *bīki*.

purify, tr. v. *tsarkake*, *char-kake*.

purity, n. *tsarki*, *tsalki* (S.), *tsabta*, *tsapta*, *tsauta*, *halal-chi*, *karari*.

purloin, tr. v., see **steal**.

purple, *shuni*.

purpose, n. *ganganchi*, *hamzari*, *hanzari*.

purpose, on, adv. *da gangan* ;
to no p. *hanna*.

purring, e.g. of cat or hyena
gurnani.

purslane, *fasa kaba* ; horse p.
gadon machiji.

pursue, tr. v. (as in war)
farfaro or *faffaro* ; he pur-
sued his way *ya kama*
hanya.

push, tr. v. *tūka*, *iza*, *ije*,
surmuḳa, *tura*, *turi*, *ture*,
zungura, *damfare*, the last of
pushing so as to cause one to
stumble ; to p. towards one-
self *ture* ; to p. aside *tunkuda*,
bankada, *bankade*, *kide* ; to
p. into water *gangante* ; push-
ing with the knee *gūla*.

pushing, *turo*.

pustule, n. (boil) *kurji*, pl.
kuraje, *kureje*, *kuraraji*.

put, tr. v. *sa*, *sanya*, *aje* ; to
put one thing on another *āza*
or *aza ma* ; to p. aside (to
cease from) *sa*, e.g. let us p.
aside quarrelling *mu sa kan-*
ḳanchi (to lay up) *aje* ; to p.
away *kauda*, *kawas* ; to p. on
(of clothes, etc.) *sa* ; to p.
together *tara* ; to p. down a
load *jūde*.

puzzle, n. *zauranche*, see **rid-**
dle.

puzzle, tr. v., see **perplex**.

pyramid, see **cone**.

python, n. *mesa*, *mulwa**.

quack, n. (a pretender to
medical science) *boka*, pl.
bokaye.

quackery, n. *bokanchi* ; cf.
prec.

quake, intr. v., see **tremble**.

qualm, n. 1. (a feeling of
nausea) *kumallo*.

2. (a conscientious scruple
or hesitation) *kumya*.

quantity, n. (an amount of
anything) *mashasha*, *afki*,
sununu, *tsibi* ; a large q.
gugu, *gugi*, e.g. a large q. of
sand *gugin rairai*, *jibgi*, the
last esp. of food ; *taro*, *taru*,
yawa, *yawanchi*, also *dayawa*,
e.g. his discourse was noth-
ing but a great q. of words
wa'azinsa saiyawan magana ;
see **much** ; a small q. *ka-*
ranchi.

quarrel, n. *fusūma*, *jaya*, *ja-*
yayya, *husūma*, *tsalmi*, see
seq.

quarrel, intr. v. *yin jaya*, *kan-*
ḳani, *yin kanḳanchi* ; to q.
with *yin kanḳanchi da*, in
the sense of to maintain
opposite opinions *gardama*

with the forms in *na* or with *yi*; *fada* (lit. to fight) is also used.

quarrelling, *kankanchi, sāba*.

quarrelsome, adj. *futsu, hutsu, mafadachi, mai-ijiat yaki*; he is q. *ya tarika fada*.

quarter, n. 1. (a fourth part) *rubu'i**.

2. (a division in a town) *shiya*, pl. *shiyoyi, unguwa*, pl. *unguwai* and (in Sokoto) *ungunni*; cf. seq.

quarters, n. (place of stay, lodging) *masabki, mazamni*, also loosely *wuri*.

quash, tr. v. (to make void) *wofinta*.

queen, n. 1. (a female sovereign) *sarkanya*.

2. (a king's wife) *sarauniya, matan sariki*.

quench, tr. v. (to put out a light or fire) *kufuli**; pass. to be quenched (to go out) *mutu*, e.g. the fire is quenched *wuta ta mutu*.

query, n., cf. seq.

question, n. *tambaya, binchike, mas'ala**.

question, v. *tambaya, yin tambaya, yin binchike, tantambaya*.

questioning, n. (discussion about something doubtful) *kokanto, binchike, binchiki*.

quick, adj. 1. (rapid, immediate) *sauki, da sauri*; a q. death (or a sudden death) *saukin mutuwa*.

2. (alive) *da rai*.

quickly, adv. (at once, with the least delay) *da sauki, da sauri, nan da nan*; (at a rapid rate) *māza, ribta, rupta, garr, kīdis, kūdis, samli, rugu**; very q. *maza maza* contr. *malmāza*, e.g. he is counting the cowries very q. *yana kilgan alkawara māza māza*; to go q. (lit. to blow a hole through the ground) *fura ƙasa*.

quicksilver, n. *zaiba*.

quiet, adj. (implying cessation from speech or cries) *da kawai, jurum*; to be q. *yin shiru* (or *shuru*), *yin kawai, kawaita, rūma* (S.), *yin kurum*; (of disposition) *lalafa*; cf. seq.; keep q. *kame bakinka*.

quietness, n. *kāwai*; (of disposition) *lalafanchi*.

quit, v. (to leave or abandon) *bari* or *bar*, e.g. q. this custom *ku bari tadan nan*; of a path *sau*.

quite, adv. 1. (wholly, nothing but) *sai* which is either applied to the entire clause, e.g. if he refuses this you may call him quite a coward

in *ya ki nan sai ka kira-wo shi matsorata*, lit. you may quite call him a coward, or, as in Engl., applied to a particular term, e.g. his face was q. bloody *fuskassa sai jini*; he is not q. dead *ba ya ida mutuwa*; so in the very common expression *sai lafiya* quite well.

2. (less precisely = very much, indeed, truly) *dayawa*, *kwarai*, e.g. we are q. pleased *muna jin dadi dayawa*; I was q. frightened *na ji tsoro dayawa*; I q. understand *na ji s̄arai*; adv. phr. quite so *ashe*, *da gaskiya*, *ya yi haka*.

quiver, n. *kwari*, *kwarin kibiya*, *gidan kibiya*.

quiver, intr. v., see **shake**, **tremble**.

rabble, n. (low class of men, the mob) *taro banza*.

rabid, adj. *mahaukachi*, e.g. a r. dog *mahaukachin kare*; see **mad**.

race, n. 1. (ancestral stock) *ūsali*, *asali*.

2. (a particular breed of men or animals) *iri*, pl. *irare*.

3. (a running in contest of men or horses) *tsēre*, *tserayya*.

raddish, a kind of *fijir*.

radiant, adj. (emitting light) *mai-haske*, pl. *masu-haske*.

rafter, n., used in roofs *āzara*; see **reed**.

rag, n. (in the sense of a small piece of any stuff) *da*, e.g. a cloth r. *dan zane*, *dan barki*, *dan yanki*; see **rags**.

rage, n. *fushi*.

rage, intr. v. *haukache*, *yin fushi*, *jin fushi*; see **angry**.

rags, n. coll. *ragga*, pl. *rāgguna*, *tsūmma*, pl. *tsummokarai*, *tsummoki*, *kēso**, *chuna**; singulars of both are used as collectives, old r. *chukuchuku*; trop. (in the sense of old or tattered clothes) *rāga*, *ragga*, pl. *raggogi* (S.), *tsumma*; clothed in r., adj. *funtu* or *da funtu*.

raid, n. *sati*, esp. a surprise slave r. by horsemen *hāri*; raiding of a town *bāsāsa*.

raider, (i.e. slave-raider) *ma-hāri*, pl. *mahara*.

rain, n. *ruwa*, pl. *ruwaye*, *ruwan bīsa*, *ruwan sama*; spec. gentle r. *yayyafa*, *yinyifi*; a cloud which threatens, or produces rain *zirnaniya*; heavy or lasting r. *malika* (S.), *marka* (K.), *mako*, *ma-mako*, *pashi*, *taguwa*; light r. *tsatsafa*; the night has been passed in the r. *an*

kwan da ruwa; the r. pours down *ruwa ya zuba*; in the r. *da ruwa*; a r. cloud *jita'u*.

rain, v. 1. impers., it rains *ana ruwa* and *yana ruwa*; it rained *an yi ruwa*; to r. heavily or long *yin taguwa*, *yin malka*, *sarafa**; the r. stopped *aka dauke ruwa*; it is raining slightly *ana yayyafa*.

2. used in a fig. sense to cast or shower down like r. turn by means of a comparison common in Hausa *kaman ruwa*, e.g. our guns r. bullets on the enemy *bindigoginmu sun jefa da harsashe a bisa abokan-gaba kaman ruwa*; he speaks fluently *ya yi magana kaman ruwa*, lit. he speaks like r.

rainbow, n. *masha-ruwa*, *mashan-ruwa*, *bakan gizo*, *bakan Allah*; the spirit of the r. *gajimare*.

rain-drop, n. *tarfi**.

rainy, adj., see **rain**; r. season *damana* or *damuna*, cf. *rani*; a break during the r. season *fari*.

raise, tr. v. (to make or cause to rise, also to set up) *tada*, *tayas*, *tayas da*, *tashe*, *tasä'd* *da*, *hanka'da*, *hau da*, *haushi*,

hausa; (to lift or pick up anything) *dauka* contr. *dau do*.

raisin, *zabibi**.

rake, n., with two prongs *mashari*.

rake, tr. v., spec. to r. together cinders or embers of a fire *aza* (or *hasa*) *wuta*; I r. up cowries towards me *na ton kurdi*.

ram, n. *rago*, pl. *raguna*, *bun suru*, pl. *bunsurai* or *bun suraye*; spec. a large Bornuense r. *äraära*; a red and white r. *kargo*; a long-eared r. *uda*.

Ramadan, n. (the mohammedan fast month) *watan azumi*.

ramble, intr. v. (to wander about) *yin yawo*.

rambling, n. *yauwa*.

rampart, n. *ganuwa*.

ramrod, n. *tsatsagawa*, *marwashi*.

rancid, to be or become, intr. v. *ruša*.

range, n. (of hills) *kuduniya*.

range, tr. v. (to dispose in regular order) *daidaita*.

rank, (i.e. line) *jeri*, pl. *jerori*, to form r. *jera*.

ransom, n. *pansa*, *fansa*, *hansa*; or r. paid for a captured slave *gumki*, *kurḍin turu*;

money paid to set a slave free *kurđin kariya turu*.

ransom, tr. v. *panshe*, *panshi*, *fanshe*, e.g. pass. let him be ransomed *a fanshe shi*.

ransomer, n. ag. *mai-fansa*.

ransoming, n. *pansawa*, *fansawa*.

rapid, adj., see **quick**.

asp, n., see **file**.

asp, tr. v. *gogi* or *yoge*.

at, n. *dambariya*, *bera* or *hira* (K.), *kusu* (S.); large palm r. (cane r. or ground r.) *gyabji*, *gyauji*, or *kusun kyamro*; large Gambian r. *burgu*, fem. *gafiya*; the stinking r. or shrew *jāba*.

attle, a *chāki*; a pod used by children as a r. *baran-chaki*, *kachokacho*.

attle, to *yin chāki*.

ave, intr. v. *haukache* and *hauka*, see **raving**.

evening, n. *zowari*, *zuari*.

evenous, to be *kwaraka*.

vine, n. *kanga*; a r. with water in it *kogi*, pl. *koguna* or *kogai*, *korāma*; a waterless r. *kwazazzabo*, *kwāri*.

iving, adj. *mai-hauka*, *mai-haukachi*; to become r. *yin raurawa*; see **mad**.

tw, adj. *danye*, *danyi*, pl. *danyoyi*.

ray, of sun *giraza*, *girazal rana*.

raze, to, a town, *baji*, *baje*.

razor, n. *aska*, pl. *asake* or *askake*.

reach, v. l. tr. (to extend, or hold out) *mika*, e.g. I reached my hand to him *na mika masa hannu*.

2. intr. (to arrive at) *isa*, *ishe*, *iske*, *kai*, e.g. the boys swam and reached the land *yara sun yi iyo sun kai kasa*.

3. (to overtake) *taras*.

4. trop. (to be sufficient as in Engl. 'the money will r. so far') *iya*, *isa*, *ishe*, *kai*, e.g. it wont r. (it is insufficient) *ba shi kai*.

read, tr. v. *karātu*, *yin karātu*, *karanta*; to r. through *shide*; to r. a second time *tūsa karanta*.

readiness, n. *shiriya*.

reading, n. *karatu*, *bita*.

ready, participial adj. (prepared or in readiness) *shiriyayye*, fem. *shiriyayya*, pl. *shiriyayyu*; r. money *hannu da hannu*; cf. seq.

ready, to make, v. l. (in a general sense but also very commonly of preparation for an expedition, journey etc.) *yin shiri*, *shiriya*, e.g. a

prudent man would prepare for to-morrow's journey to-day *don tafiya gobe mutum mai-hankali shi kan yi shirin yau*; we have a journey before us which cannot be put aside, whether you are prepared or unprepared *muna da tafiya ba fasawa in ka yi shiri da izan ba a shiriya ba*; so also *gyara*, e.g. to make r. a way or a load *gyara hanya* or *kaya*; to make r. (by mending or by putting to rights and in order generally) *gyarta*.

real, adj. *na gaskiya, da gaskiya*, also *gaskiya* and *gaske* added to the term to be thus qualified; of persons *mai-gaskiya*, e.g. he is a r. friend *shi ne aboki mai-gaskiya*, which may also be expressed by *shi ne aboki da gaskiya*, lit. he is a friend in reality.

reality, n. *sakankanchewa, gaskiya*, e.g. whether this be r. or falsehood I know not *ko gaskiya ko kariya ban sani ba*; cf. seq.

reality, to assure of the r. of, tr. v. *gaskanta*.

really, adv. *da gaskiya, gaskiya, gaske, jidda**, e.g. it is r. so *da gaskiya hakanan shi ke* or simply *gaskiya ne*; (used as

interrogatives or expressions of surprise) *ashe, ai, ainin. anya*, e.g. r.? or r.! *ashe*.

realm, n. *sarauta, mulki**, *zati*.
reanimate, tr. v. (to recall to life) *raya*.

reap, tr. v. *girba, girbi, yanka, yanke, yin sara*.

reaped, e.g. r. corn *sankache, jene*.

reaper, n. *mai-girbi*.

reason, 1. (cause) *sababi, kibin (S.), sabili, sanadi*.

2. (a r. given as an excuse) *huja* or *fuja*.

3. (authority from Koran etc. or origin of a myth, story etc.) *dalili*.

4. (the intelligent faculty) see **ability**; adverbial phrases, for this r. *domin haka, don haka*, for that r. *domin* or *don wannan, domin chewa**; this is the r. *ita che dalili* or *shi ya sa*; it was past r. *ya wuche misali*; what is the r.? *ina sabili?*

reasonable, to be *shiga hankali*; be r. *shiga hankalinka*.
reasonable, *mai-dalili*.

reasoning, n. *kokanto*; to engage in r. *yin kokanto*.

rebel, n. *makangari*.

rebel, intr. v. *yin kangara*.

rebellion, *tawaye*.

rebellious, pl. *tawaye*.

bound, n., e.g. of an arrow
tura.

bound, intr. v. *tankwashe*,
lankwashe, e.g. the spears
rebounded from the coats
of mail *masussuka sun tan-*
kwashe daga lifida.

buke, tr. v. *tsaushi*, *tsawata*
da, *yin tsawa*, e.g. the learned
man rebuked his disciples
malami ya yi tsawa ma
almajiransa; he rebuked me
ya yi ma ni tsawa.

receipt, *amsa*.

receive, tr. v. 1. (to take what
is offered) *karba*, *karbi*, *dau-*
ka, *doka*, *samu*, imperat.
receive *karbo*.

2. (of a salutation) *karba*,
e.g. they received, i.e. acknow-
ledged your salutation *sun*
karba gaisuwakka; (of news
etc.) *ji*, e.g. we received news
nun ji labari; to r. as a
guest *shide*, e.g. they received
me joyfully *suka shide ni da*
nurna.

received, particip. (approved
of, agreed to, believed in)
yardadde, fem. *yardadda*, pl.
yardaddu.

receptacle, n., any kind of r.
may be expressed by *gida*,
l. *gidaje* or *gidadaji*; by
means of this are formed
the Hausa equivalents of

various Engl. terms, e.g. a
needle-case (lit. r. of needles)
gidan allura; a quiver *gidan*
kibiya; an envelope *gidan*
takarda.

reception, a royal, n. *turaku*.

recess, n. (nook, closet, small
room etc.) *loloki*, pl. *lokokai*,
lungu; secret recesses coll.
lolokin asiri.

reciprocal, adj., turn by the
recipr. pron. *juna*.

reckless courage, with, adj.
jan namiji.

reckon, v. *kida*, *kilga*, *kirga*,
see **count**, **number**; to r.
up (take account of) *zāna*.

reckoning, n. 1. (computing,
calculating) *kidaya*, *kida* and
kididdiga, *hisabi* (S.); (of
accounts) *lisafi* or *lasafi*.

recline, intr. v. *dangana*, *ki-*
shingida or *kishinkida* (this
also = to sit with crossed legs),
jingina, *jingine*.

recognise, to *gani**, *gane**.

recollect, tr. v. (to remember)
tuna, *tuna da*.

recollection, participial n.
tunawa.

recompense, n. (both of pe-
cuniary reward, wages, and
also generally) *lada*.

recompense, tr. v., see **repay**,
requite and **reward**.

reconcile, tr. v. *gama dadi**.

reconciliation, *sulhu, sulfa**,
*sulba**.

record, n. *ambāto*.

recover, v. 1. tr. (to get back),
e.g. he recovered his property
ya samu dukiyassa kuma.

2. intr. (of health) *samu*
afuwa, yin rangwame, mīke;
he recovered his health *ya*
samu lafiya; to r. from a
swoon *yin hankali*; he is
not quite recovered *ba ya ida*
warkewa ba; I recovered *na*
samu sauki.

recovery, n. (of health) *rang-*
wame, afuwa.

red, adj. *ja*, pl. *jajaye*; staining
r. *jaje*; very r. *ja wur*; a r.
dye *garura*.

reddish, adj. *jaja kadan, jache*.

redeem, tr. v. *fanshe, panshe*,
yin fansa, e.g. we redeemed
him from slavery *muka fan-*
she shi daga bauta.

redemption, n. *fansa, pansa*,
fansawa; *diyauchi* (lit. free-
dom) also bears the pregnant
sense of r.

reduce, tr. v. 1. (generally, to
lessen, to decrease) *ragi* or
rage; to be reduced *ragu*.

2. to r. amount of an
account or charge *yin ran-*
gwame, rangwamta.

3. (to conquer, subdue)
chi.

reduction, n. 1. (lessening
assuaging of anything) *ra-*
guwa.

2. (of an account) *ran-*
gwame, e.g. make me a
ka yi ma ni rangwame.

reed, n. *gōra*, pl. *gorori, kārē*,
pl. *kārāre, kara, jiniya*; spec.
of various qualities and uses
a kind of r. or rough grass
Spanish r. *gabara*; a r. grow-
ing amongst and resembling
guinea-corn *kusumburuwa*; a
edible water r. *bindu, bindu*;
a r. used for making arrow
kyamro (S.), *kyauro* (K.), p.
*kyamare, gazara**, *shemu*;
reeds such as are used for
making doors etc. *asaban*,
tsabre; reeds forming circ-
lar bindings near the *kwana*
inside a roof *murḍaka, mā-*
ḍaka, magwadi (S.); a place
where reeds meet in the
centre inside thatched roof
kwando; reeds bound to-
gether forming inside bind-
ing of a thatched roof *tank*;
a r.-like plant of which nati-
ropes are made *rama*; a
used as a pen *alkālamī*;
also *garanya* (K.).

reed-buck, *kaji*.

reeling, n. (staggering) *n-*
gagi.

reference, with r. to *bātun*.

reflection, n. (consideration, thought) *tunanne*, pl. *tunannu*.

refrain from, tr. v. *bari*, *bar*, e.g. r. f. falsehood *ka bar kariya*; r. f. laughter *rike dariya*.

refuge, n. *matsira*, *macheto*.

refusal, n. *kiwuya*, *kiyuya*, *hānawa*, *tayazwa*; r. to hear *kin ji*; r. to work *kiwuya*, *indaında*.

refuse, n. *kazamta*; r. food *kamzo*, *kanzo*.

refuse, v. *ki*, *kiya*, *kinkinta*, *rena*, *yin kishi*, *dakile*, *tayaz*; to r. an offer in buying and selling *hāna* and *saidaba**; to r. exertion (or labour) *yin kiwuya*; to r. to keep a promise *yin gase*; to r. to listen *kyale*.

refuses, one who r. to work, n. *makiyachi*, *mai-kiwuya*.

refusing, n. participial form *hanawa*, *kiyawa*, *kiyaya*.

regard, n. 1. (attention, heed) *hankali*.

2. (affection) *soyayya* or *soyaiya*, *kauna*, *kamna*, e.g. an object of r. *abin kamna*; you have forfeited my r. *ka yanke ma ni kauna*.

regard, tr. v. 1. (to look at attentively both physically and mentally) *duba*.

2. (to heed) *yin hankali*, *kula*, construed with *da* before the object regarded.

regent, n. *makadashi*, *makadashi*, *makadas*.

region, n. *waje*, pl. *wajeje*.

regret, v. (to repent) *tuba*.

reign, n. 1. (royal authority, power) *sarauta*.

2. (the time a r. lasts) *zamani*.

reign, intr. *mallaka*; see **rule**.

rein, v., to r. in *zami*, *zame*.

reining-in, n. *zamiya*.

reject, tr. v. *ki*, *kiya*, *yada**, e.g. they rejected the right way *sun yada hanya*; to r. as something bad *yin tsan-tsani*.

rejoice, v. 1. intr. *yin* or *jin* *farin chiki*, *yin* or *jin* *murna*; to r. with anyone *yin bishara*.

2. tr. *bada* (or *sa*) *murna*.

rejoin, intr. (to answer) *yin amsa*.

rejoinder, n. (answer) *amsa*.

relate, v. *fadi*, *fada*.

related, to be *danginta*.

relation, n. *dangi* or *dāgi**, pl. *dangogi*, *kwatana**; cf. seq.

relations, coll. *dangi* both in the sing. and pl., *kibanta*, *makusata*.

relationship, n. *zumunta**, *juna*.

relax, v. 1. tr. (of bonds etc. to loosen) *kwanche*, *kunche*, *sāke*; (of efforts, rule etc. to make less severe or strict) *ragi*, *rage*.

2. intr. (to become less strict or severe, of anything, e.g. pain) *ragu*.

relaxation, n. 1. (in sense of 2. prec.) *raguwa*.

2. (rest) *natsu*, *natsuwa*.

release, tr. v. *saki* and in a looser sense *bari*, *bar*; see **let**.

reliable, adj. (vulg.), see **trustworthy**.

relieve, tr. v. (e.g. one of a load) *tariyo**; (to assist) see **help**.

religion, n. *addini*; the true r. *addinin gaskiya*; the mohammedan r. *musulumchi*; he was converted to the mohammedan r. *ya zama musulmi*.

religious person, n. *mai-addini*, pl. *masu-addini*.

rely on, v. *dangana*, *ingata*, constr. with *da* or *ga*, *yarda* with *da*; to r. on God *ka-sada*; to r. upon a person *shaduda* or *saduda*.

remain, intr. v. 1. (of staying or stopping in a place) *zamna*, *zauna*, *kasanchi**, *kwana* (lit. sleep), e.g. we remained there

two days *mun kwana nan kwana biyu*; we remain for this one day only *mu ke yini ranan nan*.

2. (of remaining in one state as well as place) *duma*, *dawama*, *kasanchi*, *tabbatawa*; (to be over) *yin raguwa*.

remainder, n. *saura*, *shaura*, *shawara*, *dudduga*, *kanfa* (S.), *kingi*, *raguwa*, *ragowa* (S.), *shingi* (K.), *ringi*; r. of food *marmashi*, *sudi*, *suddi*; r. of nuts, food, etc. *kāla*.

remaining, 1. participial adj. (also r. over) *mai-wanzuwa*.

2. (continuing) *mai-dawama*.

3. n. (continuance, staying) *dawāma*, *tābbata*.

remains, see **remainder**.

remedy, n. (in medicinal and also in general sense) *maganin*, e.g. the *filasko* plant is a r. for diarrhoea *filasko maganin gudawa*; prov. if a town be far off the r. is travel *maganin gari da nesa tafiya*.

remember, v. *tuna*; to come to r. *tuna* with *da* before object.

remembrance, n. (recollection) *tunanne*, *tunawa*, *tun-tuna*.

remind, to *taso**, *tuna ma*.

remiss, adj. *lalafa*.

remission, n. (forgiveness) *gafara, yafewa**.

remissly, adv. *da lalafanchi*.

remissness, n. *lalafanchi*.

remit, tr. v. (to forgive) *yarda, gafarta, yin gafara*; to r. a debt *yarda bashi*; to r. a law *tsaida*.

remnant, e.g. after cloth has been measured, n. *gutsura*, see **remainder**.

remorse, n. *nadāma* (S.), *ni-dāma, ladāma, da-na-sani*; where there is no wrong, there is no r. *babu laifi, babu tunanne*.

remote, adj. 1. (distant in place) *na nesa*; also *da nesa* and *daga nesa*, e.g. a r. town *gari da nesa*.

2. (distant in time) *na dā*, also *da wuri* or *dauri*, e.g. r. customs *tadodi na dā*.

removal, *ķaura*.

remove, tr. v. *kauda, kaushe, kawwa, kawas, karwas da*.

rend, tr. v. *keche, kiche, keta, murtsuka, tsāga*; to r. in pieces *fatattake, tsatsaga*.

render, tr. v. 1. (to give) *ba* or *bada*.

2. (of an account, to give, give in, present) to r. an account *yin lisafi*.

3. (to translate) *juya, sau-ya, fasara, yin fasara*.

4. (to cause to be or become) periphr. e.g. the heat of the fire rendered his face very red *zafin wuta ya sa fuskassa ta zama ja wur*.

rending, n. *fatattāka, tsāga*, see **tearing**.

renew, to *sabunta*; renewing *sabunchi* (K.), *sabuntaka* (S.).

rent, n. *ijāra, sūfuri*.

rent, tr. v. (of houses, etc.) *sūfurche, sufurchi, sufurta, yin sūfuri*.

repair, tr. v. (to mend) *gyarta, gyara, lallaba**, *yin adana*.

repairing, *adana*.

repast, n. 1. (a meal) *kalachi*.

2. (food, victuals) *abinchi, chima, chimaka*.

repay, to *yika*.

repeal, tr. v. *kauda*, e.g. the king repealed the prohibition *sariki ya kauda doka*.

repeat, v. 1. (to do again), see **again**; to r. an action *yin maimai, maimaita, ķara, ribbi**.

2. (to say a thing over again) *tusa*.

repel, tr. v. *kora, kore*; to be repelled (of an arrow, etc.) *tankwashe*.

repent, intr. v. *tuba*, e.g. repent! *ku tuba*; if he refuses to r. *idan ya ki tuba*.

repentance, n. *tuba*, *nidama*, *nadāma* (S.), *ladāma*.

repents, one who, n. *mai-tuba*.

repetition, (i.e. doing anything over again) *takidi**.

reply, n. *amsa*, *amshe*; to give a r. *ba* (or *bada*) *amsa*; cf. seq.

reply, intr. v. *amsa*, *yin amsa*, e.g. he replied to them *ya amsa ma su* or *ya yi ma su amsa*.

report, n. 1. (rumour, news) *labāri*, e.g. we heard a r. about war *muka ji labarin yaki*.

2. (fame, repute) *yābo*.

3. (noise of gun) *āmo**, *kārar bindiga*.

4. false r. *tsēgumi*, pl. *tsegunguma*.

report, v. (to bring news) *yin labāri*, *ba* (or *bada* or *fadi*) *labāri*; to r. against (to inform against) *sare*, *sara*.

repose, n. 1. (lying at rest) *kwantawa*.

2. (rest, quietness) *futa*, *futawa*.

3. (sleep) *barchi*, *kwana*.

repose, v. 1. tr., to r. confidence in *sa* with *bisa* or *bisa ga* and substantives given under **confidence**, q.v.

2. intr. (to lie, to be placed) pass. of *aje* and *sa*; (to lie at rest) *kwana*.

reprehend, tr. v. (to reprove, censure), see **blame**.

reprehensible, adj. *da laifi*

representative, n. (an agent or substitute) *wakili*.

repress, *kwābe*, *kwāba*, *kwābo*, see **hinder**.

reproach, n. *zargi*, *zagi*.

reproach, tr. v. *yin zagi*, *ḡache*.

reproaching, *zagi*, *zage*.

reproof, n. *foro*; *harasa*, *ra-rauka* (K.).

reprove, tr. v. *yin foro*.

reptile, n. *mai-rarrafe*, pl. *masu-rarrafe*, *abin ḡasa*, *igi-yar ḡasa*.

reputation, n. *yabo*, *suna*, e.g. his r. spread throughout the Sudan *mutane duka su ji sunansa chikin Sudan*.

requital, n. *fansa*, *pansa*, *hansa*, *saka-mako*.

requite, tr. v. *biya*; (in a bad as well as good sense) *rama*.

rescue, tr. v. *kwache* or *kwache*; see also **deliver**.

resemble, to *daidaiche*, *yin kama*.

reserve, (i.e. support in war) *ribadi*.

reside, intr. v., see **dwell**.

resign, tr. v. (to give up,

abandon) *bari*, *bar*; to r. office *maida rawani*.

resignation, n. *hanḱuri*, *hanḱura*, *hakura*, *hakuri*.

resigned, to be, v. *jīn sanyi*, also *hanḱuri* with *yi* or the forms in *na*, e.g. I am r. to this *ina hanḱuri da wannan*; he was r. to this pain *ya yi hanḱuri da azaban nan*.

resist, tr. v. (gen. to withstand, baffle) *hana*; to r., request etc. *hana* q.v., *ki ji*, e.g. he resisted every proposal *ya ki ji magana duka*.

resistance, n. in sense of prec. init. *hanawa*, *makarwa*.

resolution, (i.e. firmness) *ha-rama*, *hazama*.

respect, n. (i.e. esteem) *hasafi*, *kauna*.

respond, v. (to answer) *amsa*, *yin amsa*.

rest, n. 1. (remainder) *shawara*, *saura*, *kingi*, *shingi* (K.).

2. (repose, quiet) *fūta*, *fūtu*, *futawa*, *huta*, *mugāma**, cf. **repose**; (of the grave) place of r. *makwanchi*; (of death) the last r. *maḱarin barchi*.

rest, v. 1. tr. (to lay, place) *aje*, *sa*, e.g. he rested his hands on the book *ya sa hannu-wansa bisa litafi*.

2. intr. (to be at rest)

futa, *fucha*, *yin mugāma*; (to be laid, placed) pass. of *aje*, *sa*.

resting-place, n. (lodging) *mā-shidi*; his last resting-place *makwanchinsa*.

restitution, make, v. *rama*.

restive, be, intr. v. *yin tuma*.

restlessness, *kiriniya*.

restore, tr. v. 1. (to give or bring back) *maida*, *mayas*, *kwanda*, *ramka*, *bayas da*.

2. (to make good) *rama*.

3. (to r. to life) *raya*; (to be restored to life) *rayu*.

4. (to renew) *sabunta*.

restrain, tr. v. *hāna*, *kwābe*, *kwāba*, *kwābo*, *tsere*; see **hinder**.

result, n. *akiba*.

resurrection, n. *tashi daga matattu*, *tayaswa*, *kiyāma*; the r. day *ranan gobe* (lit. the day of to-morrow), *ran gobe*, *ranal* (or *ranan*) *kiyama*; periphr. the day when the sounder of the trumpet shall sound *ranad da mai-busa ya busa kafo nasa*.

retail, a r. seller of corn *dan kwarami*, *mai-sari**; retailers *yan shimfida*.

retain, tr. v. *riḱe*, *riḱa*, *riḱi**.

retained, particip. *riḱakke*, fem. *riḱakkiya*, pl. *riḱakku*.

retainer, to become a r. of
yin chaffa (or *chappa*).

retaliate, intr. v. *rama*, *saka*,
see **revenge**.

retaliation, n. (in a good as
well as bad sense) *saka-mako*;
see **requital**.

retch, to *yünküra*.

retching, n. *yünküri*.

retire, to r. into shelter
noke.

retreat, to *ja da baya*.

return, n. *dawaya*.

return, intr. v. *koma*; to r. to
where the speaker is, to r.
here *komo*, *dawo*, *dawayo*;
to r. from a place *dawaya*;
to r., tr. v. *mayas da*, *mayar*
da.

returning, n. (of place) *ko-*
mawa, *kome*, pl. *kome-kome*;
(of state, = a changing back,
reversion) *juyarwa*, *waiwai-*
yawa.

reveal, tr. v. *gäya*, *waye*, *nuna*,
e.g. they revealed the secret
to the king *sun gäya asirin*
nan ga sariki.

revenge, n. *fansa*, *pansa*,
hansa, *ramuwa*, *tarna*.

revenge, v. *rāma*, *zoje*; see
requite.

revere, tr. v.; cf. seq.

reverence, n. *kwarjini*.

reverence, tr. v. *tsarkaka*,
tsarkaki, *charkaka* and, in

freer sense (= to honour) *gir-*
mama, and *bada girma*.

revile, tr. v. *yin zagi*, *fallasa*
or *pallasa*, *kwāla*.

reviling, *zage*, *zagi*.

revive, intr. v. (as from faint-
ing) *farko*.

revolt, n. *tawaye*.

revolt, to *danka shappa*, *yin*
tawaye.

reward, n. *lada*, *akiba*.

reward, tr. v., see **requite**.

rhinoceros, n. *kilifori*, *kilhore*
(a Fullani word), *karkanda**.

rib, n. *awoza*, *awaza* (S.), pl.
awazu, *awazai*; ribs coll.
haḡarḡari.

rice, n. *shinkafa*, more parti-
cularly = r. in the husk;
husked, clean r. *shinkafa*,
sanshera, *surfaffe*, *gūmi*;
tuft of r. *geza*, pl. *gezuna*;
the swelling of r. when
boiled *auki*, *abki*; a soft
mash of r. *fate-fate*; a mix-
ture of r., milk and honey
gumba; a cake made of r.
and guinea-corn *masa*; a
cake made of r., oil and
honey *tsatsafa*; a large rice-
bag *saulo*; 'hungry' r. *acha*;
a dark coloured kind of r.
*jimero**; r. husks (used for
washing ink off writing
boards) *buntu*, *shēfe*.

rich, adj. 1. (wealthy, also

concr., a r. man) *mai-dukiya*, *marwadachi*, pl. *marwadata*.

2. (abundant) *dayawa*.

3. (splendid as 'r. dress')
na ado, fem. *ta ado*.

rich, to be, intr. v. *tajarta*, *ajar-ta*, *wadata*, *walata*, *yahwata*.

riches, coll. *dukiya*, pl. *dukoki* or *dukiyoyi*, *wada*, *wadachi*, *arziki*, *ajiya*, *atajirchi*, *tajirchi*, *falala*, *gatanchi*.

riddle, n. *marauchi*, *zauranche*.

ride, intr. v., express by periphr., e.g. he was riding along *yana tafe bisa doki*; I rode to the town *na hau doki na tafi gari*; spec. to r. at a gallop *sukuwa* (Kano), *suka* (Sokoto), *sukane*, *sukwane*; tor. for exercise *kilisa*.

rider, n. *mai-doki*, pl. *masu-doki*, *mahayi*; an expert r. *gwanin doki*.

ridge, n. *koḡuwa*; a ridge in a field *kunya*, coll. *kwiya* (S.), *kadada*.

ridicule, tr. r. *dāra*, *shamata*; he turned him into r. *ya ba shi dariya*.

riding, *zaman sirdi*; a place for r. in *fagen doki*; a place for riding in at the gallop *masukwani*.

right, n. 1. gen. *gaskiya*.

2. (authority or privilege)
iko, pl. *ikoki*, *inganchi*.

3. (claim) *alhaki*; to be in the r. in a dispute *hujanta*.

4. (the opposite of left)
dama.

right, adj. 1. (in conformity with truth and justice) *da gaskiya*, *da gaske*, or simply *gaskiya*, *naḡwarai**, *ādili*; to be r. *inganta*, *ingata*, see also **lawful**, **proper**.

2. (opposed to left) *na-dama*, fem. *ta-dama*; the r. hand (i.e. the bodily member) *hannu na dama*; the r. side *wajen dama*.

righteousness, n. *adilchi*.

rightly, adv. (truthfully, justly)
da gaskiya, *da gaske*.

2. (correctly, exactly)
ḡwarai, *sarai*, e.g. if I r. understand you will come to this house in the evening *idan na ji ḡwarai za ku zo gidanga da mareche*; he did not count them r. *bai ḡilga su sarai ba*.

rind, n. *fāta*, *pāta*, *ḡawo*, *ḡawa*.

ring, n. *zobe*; seal r., signet r. *zoben shaida*; finger r. *ḡawainya*; a metal r. placed round the hands and legs of women *ḡarafa*, *chakan-kami*; a r. put through a man's lower lip *baibayi**; a leather r. worn as a charm

on the wrist *kūmbu*, *kūmbuwa*, see *kārau*.

rings, coll. arm r. *mundaye* ;
foot r. *mundayen kafa*.

ringworm, *makëro*, *kʏazbi* (K.), *kʏasfi* (S.).

rinse, tr. v. *darwaye*, *darwaya*.

rip, tr. v. *keta*, participial n. *ketuwa*, *ketawa* ; see **tear**.

ripe, adj. *nuna*, *nina* (S.) or *nunanne*, pl. *nunannu*.

ripe, to be, intr. v. *nina* (S.), *nūna* (K.), *yin tābo* ; to be over-r. *ḡosa*.

ripeness, *tābo*, *tafshi*, *tabshi*, *tapshi**.

rise, n., of a fish *ḡulma*, *ḡurma* ; of a star *keto*.

rise, intr. v. *tashi* ; to cause to r. *tashe* ; to r. up *tasō*, *gusa*, *gulgusa*, *gurgusa* ; to r. up against *yin firmaki* ; to r. high (of the sun) *karu* ; to r. (to swell, of anything cooking or fermenting) *yin auki* or *yin abki*.

rising, participial n. *tashi*, *tasawa* ; *tayaswa* is used in sense of resurrection.

risk, n., he ran a great r. *ya sha hātsari dayawa*.

rivalry, n. *kishi*, *gāsa*, *hamiya*.

river, n. *ruwa*, pl. *ruwaye*, e.g. the r. Benué *ruwan tsada* ; *gulbi*, pl. *gulabe*, *tabki*, *tapki* or *tafki* ; a large r. *kogi*, pl.

koguna, *kogina* or *kogai* ; the r. of paradise *kausara* and *alkausara*.

river-horse, hippopotamus, n. *dorina*, pl. *dorinnai*.

rivers, confluence of, n. *magan-gami*.

road, n. *hanya*, *haya**, pl. *hanyoyi*, *būbe*, *godabe*, *tafarki*, pl. *tafarkoki*, *turba*, pl. *turbobi* ; on the r. (travelling) *chikin tafiya* ; he is on the r. *yana tafiya* ; do you know your r. from this point? *ka sani hanya daga nan ko?* a broad r. *godabe*, *rimdi*, *karabka*, *karauka* (S.) ; a hedged r. between farms used by cattle *burtali*.

roads, n. branching off of r. (pl. of *kwasfa*) *kwasfofi* ; dividing of r. *laloki*, *loloki*, pl. *lulukai* ; meeting-point of two or more r. *mararrabin hanya*.

roar, n. *ḡugi*, *tsawa* ; r. of a lion *gumza*.

roar, intr. v. *yin tsawa*, *yin ḡugi*, *yin kuka* ; (of camel, donkey, fire, etc.) *yin ruri*.

roast, tr. v. *soya* or *suya*, *bandata*, *gāsa*, the last used with *gurasa* bread.

roasted, particip. *gasashshe*, fem. *gasashshiya*, pl. *gasassu*.

roasting, *banda*, *ḡashi*.

rob, tr. v. (to take openly, by force) *kwache*.

robber, n., one who robs openly *mai-sane*; a highway r. (brigand) *māfashi*, *mai-fashe*, pl. *māfasa*.

robbery (with violence), *par-maki*.

robe, n. *riga*, pl. *riguna*; splendid robes *riguna na ado*; silken robes *riguna na alharini*.

robe, tr. v. *sa* (lit. put on), e.g. they shall be robed in white *a sa ma su riguna farfaru*.

rock, n. *dutsi*, pl. *duwatsu*, *duchi*, *falale*, *fa*, *pa*.

rock, tr. v. (to shake or swing to and fro) *reta*, *yin reto*.

rock-salt, n. *gallo*.

rod, n. *sanda*, pl. *sanduna*.

rogue, n. *mazambache mai-zambata*.

roll, v. l. (to move along by turning over and over) tr. *bingira*, *mirgina*, *mirgine*, *layāta*, *layache*, *yin birgima*; intr. to r. down *gangara* or *gangari*; to r. away *gangarad da*.

2. (to fold round on itself) tr. *nāde*; to r. together or up *nāde*; to r. up *kalmāsa* or *kalmashe*; to r. up, e.g. a covering of a doorway, or a piece of cloth etc. *linke*,

ninke; to r. into balls as clay for building *chibra*, *tsibra*, *chura*, *dunkula*; intr. and reflexive to r. up or together *nadu*.

roller, (bird) *tsamwaka*.

roller, i.e. a stone used for crushing rice etc., n. *dan magurji*.

rolling, particip. n. *birgima*; r. down *gangarawa* and *ganguro*.

roof, n. *jinka*; the following apply to the native thatched roofs; the centre of r. *kwan-do*; the conical grass top of a r. *boto*; a beam to support a r. *dirka*; a binding line inside r. formed of two or three reeds *mirḍaka*, *murḍaka*; a band of grass rope outside a r. *jiniya*; an arched r. *damren-guga*, *dauren-guga*; an oblong r. *bakan-gizo*; to bind grass with cords so as to form a r. *yamche* or *yamchi*, *yin kاندama*; the plaited mat-work which acts as the keystone of a conical r. *kirinya*; the horizontal ties of grass which bind the sloping rafters of a r. *tanka*; the sticks which slope from the upright poles of a r. to the cross piece (*mafyadi*) *tsaiko*; the cross pieces tied to the sloping sticks (*tsaiko*) for the grass

of the r. to rest upon *karan tanka*; the sticks placed in a r. to prevent the grass from slipping down *kīni*; the highest part of the inside of a r. *kwankuwa*, *koḳuwa*; a cross piece of wood which rests on two (*gofa*) sticks and supports the r. of a house *mafyadi*; the apex of a r. *kan daki*; house with flat r. *soro*; upper storey of such a house *soron bene*; a flat mud r. *rufi*.

room, n. 1. open, unoccupied space in any sense *sarari*; unoccupied space on a flat surface as a plain, a floor *fili*, e.g. there was no r. for (putting down) my load *babu fili ga kayana*, cf. seq.

2. an apartment or r. in a house *dāki*, pl. *dakuna*; a private sleeping r. *baraya* (S.); an upper r. in a two-storeyed house, *bene*; a small dark r. *loloki*, *laloki*, pl. *lolo-kai* or *lalokaye*; a r. made of mud and thatched with reeds *tsaiko*.

room, to have plenty of r. to sit down, intr. v. *wala*.

roomy, adj. *mai-sarari*, *da sarari*, e.g. this chamber is r. *dakin nan yana da sarari*.

root, n. (of vegetables, etc.)

saiwa (K.), *saye* (S.), pl. *sayu*, *sauya* (Kats.); r. of a tree *tūshi*.

rope, n. gen. *igiya*, pl. *igiyoyi*, *yagiya* (S.); to plait a r. *tumka* (S.) or *tukka* (K.) *igiya*; spec. of various uses and materials: a r. for hobbling horse *tarnaki*, *dangwali*, *da-baibayi* (K.), *dabaibiya* (S.); a r. for leading a horse *āsalwayi*; a r. halter for horses or camels *rāgama*; a r. (also coll.) tied to anything, e.g. to a rafter *ragaya*; a r. tying a horse's leg to a post *gindi*; a r. for tying up a camel *ākala*; a r. fastened between two posts to which animals are tied *rande*; a r. used for tying a thief *kogawa*; a twisted hide r. *kiri*, pl. *kirra*; materials for r. (plaited grass, palm leaves, fibre) *tsaiwa*; leaves and fibre from a large species of palm for r. *kaba*, *yadiya*; a fibre for making r. *yawa*; a reed-like plant (*Hibiscus cannabinus*) for making r. which is called by the same name *rama*; a r. made of *rama*, *tamagi*, *ta-magye*; a large tree from the bark of which small ropes are made *tawatsa*; a trailing r. plant *kuranga*, see also *raba*.

rosewood, African r. *mado-biya*.

rot, intr. v. (to putrefy) *riḅa*, *ruḅa*; (to go bad) *ḅache*.

rote, by, 1. n., saying by r. *tulawa*.

2. v., to say by r. *yin tulawa*; to learn so as to say by r. (by heart) *samu harda*.

rotten, particip. adj. (of fruit, etc.) *ruḅabbe*, fem. *ruḅabbiya*, pl. *ruḅabḅu*, (of corn) *tsadari*, gen. *ḅatache*, fem. *ḅatachiya*, pl. *ḅatattu*, a *lalache*; to become r. *rūḅa*, *riḅa*.

rough, adj. *da kaushi*, *da kurzunu*.

roughness, n. (unevenness of surface) *kaushi*, *kurzunu*; r. of skin *kaushin jiki*.

round, adj. express by the nouns = a r. object *chībiri*, *kumbu*, *kawanya* (K.), e.g. a r. piece of mud *chībirin ḅasa*; to make r. *chībira*; to cut r. *shan kumbu*; v., to go r. *dauraro*, *zaga*, *gewayā*, *kewayā*, *jiwayā*, *kewaye*, *ke-wayo*, *kewayi*, the last also tr., e.g. they went r. the city *sun kewaye birni*; *ḅūlo* or *ḅullo*; to go r. *zāge*, *zāga*, *zwaye* (S.), *zāgi*; to go r. in order to examine a thing *gewayā* or *jewayā*; to look r.

dauraro; prep. *kewaye*, e.g. they made a road r. the pool *sun gina hanya kewayen tabki*; the storm is going r. over there *hadari yana zagawa*.

rouse, tr. v. (to make rise, e.g. from the ground or from sleep) *tashe*, *tayas*, *falkad da*.

rout, n. *kāshi*, to put to r. *bada kāshi*.

row, n. (series, line, rank) *sāfu*, *jeri*; to form a r. *yin sāfu*; in a r. *a jere*; to lay out in rows *tsāra*, *tsāre*.

row, n. (angry dispute), see **dispute**, **quarrel**; (noisy outcry) *kururuwa*.

row, tr. and intr. v. *tuka*, *yin tuka* (lit. to push, or propel). Hausas acquainted with European oared boats employ this word which is the term used for 'paddling' native canoes.

royal, adj. *na-sariki*, fem. *ta-sariki*; r. officers or attendants *fadawa*, q.v.

rub, tr. v. *fafè*, *yāfa* and *yāfò*, *sāḅa*, *chuda*; to r. (or grind) corn *tushe*; to r. anything, e.g. corn in the hands *murje*, *murḁa*, *mulmula*, *murtsuka*; to r. the back of a knife backwards and forwards *dā-dara*; to r. the hair off a

hide or skin *jemi*; to r. out or erase *shafe*, *yin mai-mai*; to r. smooth *chudanya*, *darje*.

rubbed, particip. adj. *murjaje*; *murtsukakke*, fem. *murtsukakka*, pl. *murtsukakku*.

rubber, n. 1. (e.g. a cloth, used for rubbing or wiping) *abin shafe*.

2. (india-rubber) *danko*, *dankon gamji*, *alibida*; rubber-vine *chiwo*, *chuwo*; india-rubber trees *gamji*, *ganji* (K.), cf. *durumi*, *baure*, *bore* (S.), *chediya*, *kawuri*, *wa*, *taba-ni-kasamu*.

ruby, n. *yakutu**.

rudder, paddle used as a, n. *matuki*.

rug, a woollen sleeping r., n. *kilishi*.

ruin, tr. v., to spoil, destroy *bata*; to be ruined or to fall into r. (of a house, etc.) *roshe*, *rushi*; participial n. and pres. form *rushewa*.

ruins, coll. (of a place, town) *kufai*, pl. *kufai fai*, *kofai*, *kango*; falling into r. *rushewa*.

rule, n., government, royal sway *sarauta*; an established mode of procedure *tada*, pl. *tadodi*, *ada*, *kaida*.

rule, v. (to hold sway as a king)

mallaka, *mallaki*, *mallake*, *yin sarauta*, *chude*, *umarche*; (to decide, order authoritatively) *hukumta*, e.g. he ruled that we should do this *ya hukumta mu yi haka*.

ruler, n. *mai-mallaka*, *masarau-chi*, *mahukumchi*, *hakimi*, pl. *hakimai*; (king) *sarki* or *sariki*, pl. *sarakuna* or *sarakai*.

rumour, *rigima*, *waiwai*.

run, intr. v. *gudu*; (to melt) *narku*; to r. away *gudu*, *guje*, *tsire*; to r. away quickly *sheka*; to outrun *tsire*; to r. out (to come to an end) *kare*; of water, to r. over (to overflow) *tuda*, *tude*; at a r. *a guje*; the following expressions are used to denote to r. fast *zura da gudu*, *sheka da gudu*, *karta da gudu*, *fashe da gudu*, *tantala da gudu*, *gudu kar*, *ruga da gudu*; running away *tawaga*.

runaway, n. 1. (of slaves) *gujajje*, pl. *gudaddu*.

2. (in war) *maguji* or *mu-guji*.

runner, a r. in front of a horse *gurguri*, *zagi*.

rush, intr. v. *kutsa*; to r., e.g. out of a crowd *ruza*.

rust, n. *tsatsa*.

rust, intr. v. *yin tsatsa*.

rustling, e.g. of wind in trees *kaya-kaya*; r. of grass *sükun-sükun*.

sabbath, n. 1. (in the scriptural sense = Saturday) *assabat*, *as-sibit*, *ranan assabat*.

2. (Sunday) *lahadi*, *ranan lahadi*.

sabre, n., see **sword**.

sack, n., a largeskins or bag for cowries *jika*, *jikka*, pl. *jikkuna*, *kwasubro*, *buhu* (Z.), *birgami*, *burgame* these are not used as water skins for which see under **skin**; a skin s. for loading camels, donkeys, etc. *waga*, *kyankyandi*, *gurara*, *kaiwa**; a s. made of network *raga*, pl. *ragogi*; a large s. of salt (one donkey load) *lange*, pl. *langaye*, see **bag**.

sack, tr. v. (to pillage or plunder a place or town) *kwache*, e.g. he took and sacked the town *ya chi garin nan ya kwache dukiyassu duka*.

sack, (of a town) n. *buruntu*.

sacred, adj. (connected with religion) *na addini*, fem. *ta addini*, e.g. honour s. things and do not ridicule them *ku girmama abubuwa na addini kada ku ba su dariya*; (holy, pure) *tsarki*.

sacrifice, n. *sadaka**, *laiya*.

sad, adj. (depressed, sorrowful); to be s., see **sadness**; a s. business (causing sorrow or pity) *abin tausayi*; a s. business (i.e. bad, wicked) *abin mugu*.

saddle, n. *sirdi*, pl. *sirāde* and *sirduna*, *siradda* or *sirdodi*, *bukuru*, *bakuru**; a native s. cloth which is laid on the s. *jēlala*, *lappa*, *labba*, *kaḥu* (S.), *mashimfiḍi*; a s. peak *kwachiya*, that in front *kwachiyar gāba*, that behind (the cantle) *kwachiyar bāya*; stuffing or panels of a s. *zubuka*, *zabuka*; a pack s. with pockets for water pots, etc. *mangala*; a s. embroidered in gold or silver *talha*; crupper of a s. *jabaya*, *jakuturi*; the leather thong attached to a s. and passed through the ring of the girth *kaitara*, *kaitaro*; ornamental s. flaps *zaggin sirdi*; a s. of meat *takandar nama*.

saddle, v. (of camels, etc.) *labda*, (of horses) *damre* or *darne* (S.), *sirdi*, *yin sirdi*.

sadness, n. *bakin zuchiya*; to experience s., to feel sad *jin*, *yin* or the forms in *na* with the n., e.g. I experience s., I feel sad *ina bakin zuchiya*.

safe, adj., s. from peril *amin-tache*, pl. *amintattu*.

safe conduct, letter of, n. *watikal lamuni*.

safety, n. (security from harm) *lamuni, amana*; (deliverance from harm) *chira, tsiras, chiraro, tsiraro*.

sagacious, adj. *da basira, da hankali, mai-hankali*.

sagacity, n. *basira, hankali*.

Sahara, *Hamada*.

said, it is, determinative or causal phr. *wai*, e.g. thou art proud because it is s., Thou excellest all *kana kumburawa wai ka fi kowa*.

saint, (fakir) *wali, waliyi*, pl. *waliyai*.

sake, for the s. of, prep. *domin, don, garin, sabad da, sabado** or *saboda**, e.g. for his s. *dominsa, sabili da shi*; for the s. of this *domin* (or *don*) *haka*; for the s. of a walk *garin yawo*; for the s. of what? *domin mi, don mi, dommi*, and *sabad da mi*.

sale, to expose for s. *talla*; it is on s., it is for s. *a sayas da*; on s. *sayarwa, saisuwa*; a cheap s. *gwanjo*; the exhibition of goods for s. *koli*; s. on approval *chinikin shawara*; a s. under a guarantee *uda**; a s. in which the

buyer is allowed time to decide whether he will accept the offer remaining open *chinikin zaɓi*.

saleableness, *sayuwa*.

salesman, n. *mai-saida, dan kasuwa*.

saline, adj. *da gishiri, na gishiri*.

saliva, n. *sallabi, miyau, yau (K.)*, *dululu*.

salmon, fish resembling, n. *faliya*.

salt, n. *gishiri*; prov. a man may boil horns with his own s. (i.e. one may do what one likes with one's own) *mutun da gishirinsa shi kan dafi kafo*; spec. a dark kind of s. *manda*; a s. brought from Asben, *beza*; black s. from Bornu *manda*; hard rock s. *gallo*; an inferior kind of s. *balma*; a s. (or natron) used in dyeing as a mordant, also used medicinally *ashauma, ashoma*; a cake of s. *foche, fochen gishiri mangul*; round flat piece of s. coll. *aserimi**; a load of s. cut small *bakan gishiri*; a pyramidal load of s. *kantu*; a small *kantu* of inferior s. *pashi*; a large *kantu* of s. *azurumi*; a wood ash from which s. is obtained *zakanko**.

alt-bag, n., long, narrow b. for carrying s. *lange, langi*; a small s.-bag *chukurufa**.

altless, adj. *babu gishiri*; spec. of anything eaten without salt (insipid) *da lami*.

altness, (brackishness) *zartsi*.

altpetre, n. *kanwa*; spec. s. used medicinally *jan kanwa*.

alutation, n. *gaisuwa*, e.g. he paid no heed to my s. *bai kula ba da gaisuwata* or *ba ya karɓa gaisuwata ba*; a s. addressed to an important person *ingwayya, ungwaiya*; a public s. *mubaya*. The language is rich in expressions of s., e.g. s. to you (Engl. hail! welcome!) pass. *a gaishe (-ka, -ki) -ku, a tuski*; the commonest expr. of s. is *sanu* or rep. *sanu sanu* and this is most frequently accompanied by a reference to the time of day, or the state and occupation of the person saluted, e.g. good morning (lit. s. to you in the morning) *sanu da safe*, good evening *sanu da mareche*, welcome out of the rain *sanu da ruwa*; s. to you in your bereavement *sanu da kewa*; s. to you at your play *sanu da wargi*; s. to you at your work *sanu da*

aiki or *sanu da aikinku* or *sanunku da aiki*; spec. s. (among moslems) *salam*; shaking a spear or hand in s. *jafi* (S.); see also *jinjina*.

salute, tr. v. *gaida, gaishe, gaisa, jinjini*, e.g. I saluted the man *na gaida mutum*; spec. to go to s. (of sacred persons or places) *ziyara*; to s. several persons in turn *gaggaishe*.

salvation, n. *tsira, tsiraro, cheto*.

same, adj. *ɗaya* (lit. one), e.g. they are the s. *duk ɗaya ne*; this is the s. as that *wannan ɗaya kaman wanchan*; together at the s. time or place *gaba ɗai* or *gaba ɗaya*; the s. *hakanan*; as a determinative employ demonstrative pronouns, e.g. I saw the s. man yesterday in the market *na gani wannan* (or *wannan mutum* or *mutumen nan*) *jiya chikin kasuwa*.

sanctify, tr. v. *tsarkaka, tsarkaki*.

sand, n. *rairai, rerai, jiggawa* or *jigawa*; spec. fine s. *turbaya, turɗa* (S.); white s. in water *yashi*; grains of s. *barbadi*; s. mixed with grain *tarke*.

sandal, n. *takalmi*, pl. *takalma*, *kufita*, *kufuta*, *kupta*, pl. *kufitai* or *kufutai*; sandals with red leather tops and hole for toe *sambatsai*; a light kind of decorated s. *tajawankai*.

sand-fly, *filfilwa*, *fiffilwa*, *ki-yashi*, *kyashi*, *kyafirfita*.

sand-grouse, *kwantatoyi*, *barwa*, *ladin rogo*.

sand-hill, a, n. *jiggawa*, *jigawa*.

sand-piper, *shārafage* (S.).

sangar, *shirgiya*.

sarcasm, *gatse*.

sasswood, *gwaska*.

Satan, pr. n. *Shaitan*, *Shetan* or *Shaitani*.

satchel, n. (leathern) *gāfaka*, *lāki*.

satin, *talashi**, *antalashi*.

satisfaction, n. 1. (of the appetite) *koshi*.

2. (of the feelings and emotions) *daḍi*, e.g. we felt great s. *mun ji daḍi dayawa*.

3. see **requite**.

satisfactory, it is, phr. *ya yi*.

satisfied, to be, intr. v. (of the appetites) *koshi*, *yin koshi*, e.g. they ate, they drank and were s. *sun chi sun sha sun koshi*; (of the emotions) *jin daḍi*; cf. seq.

satisfied, a being, n. *koshi*; one who is s., n. *kosashe*, pl. *kosassu*.

satisfy, tr. v. (of the appetite) *kosad da*; (to pay claims, etc.) *biya*, *rama*.

Saturday, pr. n. of time *āsabat*, *assabat*, *āsabar*, *āsšibit*, *ranan assabat*.

sauce, n. *miya**.

sauciness, *taurin ido*.

sausage-tree, *rahaina*.

saunter, to *ragaiche*, see **idle**.

saunterer, *mai-ragaita*.

savage, n. (barbarians, uncivilised human beings) *baibayi*, pl. *baibai*, *babbawa* or *baubawa*.

savage, adj. (barbarian), cf. prec., (cruel) *da muni*.

savagery, n. (cruelty) *muni*, *zafin rai*, *keta*.

save, tr. v. 1. (to rescue, deliver) *chira*, *chire*, *chiro* or *tsirus da*, *tsarda* (K.), *tsarshe*, *tsaras da* (Daura), *tsirad da*, *cheche*.

2. (of money = to lay by or up) *aje*.

save, exceptive prep. *sai*, see **but** 2.

saved, to be, intr. v. *chira*, *tsira*.

saviour, n. *mai-cheto*, *machechi*, pl. *macheta*.

savoury, adj. *garḍi*, fem. *garḍiya*, *da garḍi*, *da zaki*; for the opposite quality see **insipid**.

aw, n. *zarto*, *sassaḳa*, *sasago**,
magāgāri.

aw, to *gāgāra*.

awdust, *dauso*.

ay, tr. v. *che* with pres. forms
chewa, *fāḍi*, *fāḍa*, *tāne**, e.g.
what do you say? *mi ka che*?
we are saying *muna chewa*;
it is said *an che*, *aka che*; he
said to them *ya che da su*, *ya*
fāḍi ma su; he says, it is
said, they s. (used to deter-
mine a phr. or clause as
uttered or admitted to be
true by others, like Engl.
fam. 'you know') *wai*; s. a
thing over again *tusa*; to s. off
by heart or rote *yin tulawa*.

aying, n. 1. (something said)
magana, pl. *maganganu*; (a
popular s.) *sara*.

2. participial n. (act of s.)
chewa used with pres. forms
in *na*.

cab, n. *ḱurji*, pl. *ḱuraraji*,
ḱuraje; also *ḱirchi*, *gurje*,
ḱamḱaroki, *gyambo*; a s.
which has healed up *tambo*;
scabs coll. *ḱalli-ḱalli*.

cald, tr. v. (i.e. with hot
water) *sale* (K.), *swale* (S.).

cale, n. (as lichen, dandruff)
toto, *tautau*.

cale, to s. a fish *kankale*,
kankare.

scales, n. 1. (of fish) *ḱumba*,

pl. *ḱumbuna*, *ḱumbabi* or
ḱumbai, *fofon kifi*; (of dead
alligator) *ḱirgin kăda*.

2. (balance) *maana*, *ma-*
auni, *magwaji*, *mizani*, *ma-*
gwadi.

scan, v. (to look at with scru-
tiny) *yin kallo*, e.g. we walked
about scanning everything
mun yi yarwo muna kallon
dukachin abu.

scandal, *tsēgumi*, pl. *tsegun-*
guma; one who spreads s.
mai-tsēgumi, *mai-tsēgunchi*.

scar, n. (cicatrix) *tabo*, *tambo*,
ḱūfa; scars *ḱalli-ḱalli*; scars
made on face serving as
tribal marks *shaushawa*; see
marks.

scatter, v. 1. tr. *watsa*, *wache*,
watsar da, *barbaḍa*, *wal-*
wanche, *warwache*, *warwatsa*,
rarraba or *rarrabi*.

2. intr. *watse*; they scat-
tered or were scattered *an*
watse su.

scattered, particip. pass. *watsu*.

scattering, *barbaḍuwa*, *kacha-*
kacha.

scent, n. 1. (characteristic odour
of animals) *wari*, cf. seq.

2. (a sweet or agreeable
odour) *ḱamshi*, *ḱanshi*, *ḱamsa*,
turare, *wardi*; a plant the
root of which furnishes a s.
jiji.

scent, tr. v. (to recognise by the odour) *jin wari*; the dog scented the lion *kare ya ji warin zaki*.

scent-bottle, n. *wakiya, wakiyya*.

scented, keen-, adj. (of hounds) *mai-jin wari*.

scheme, n. (artful contrivance) *wayo, wayau*.

scholar, n. (a great scholar or teacher) *mālam, mālami*, pl. *malamai; masāni*, pl. *masana*; (a pupil) *almajiri*, pl. *almajirai, dan makaranta, makoyi, makoyi, makaranchi*; (used adjectively = learned), *mai-karatu*.

school, n. *makaranta*.

scissors, n. *almakashi*; joint of s. *gwarmi, kwarmi*, pl. *kwarmu*.

scoff at, to, v. *ba'a* and *yin ba'a*.

scold, v. *yin tsawa, buga tsawa, tsawata da*, e.g. he scolded her well *ya yi ma ta tsawa dayawa*.

scold, a, *mai-fitina*.

scorch, tr. v. *farcha, yin farsa*.

score, n., of number *lāso, hauya*, the latter is esp. used in counting cowries, e.g. he loses two thousand cowries *ya bar hauya dari*.

scores, to pay off s. *rama gaya*.

scorn, n. *gaya, ba'a, bananchi*.

scorn, v. *rena*, see **despise**.

scorpion, n. *kunāma*, pl. *kunamomi* or *kunamai, duwu munumunu*.

scourge, n. *bulala*.

scourge, tr. v. *yin bulala*.

scout, n. *majewayi*, see **spy**.

scowl, intr. v. *damre fusha*.

scramble for anything, v. *wasashe, wawashe, yasash (S.)*.

scrambling, *wasoso*.

scrape, tr. v. *karkari*, (to s. clean and so polish) *gogi o goge, fafe, kwarzane*, e.g. he is scraping the axe-handle *shina gogewa bakin gatari* to s. or s. out *rede, tutuje*; to s. up or grub up e.g. roots *tona, tone*; to s. out a dish *sude*.

scraper, a *gurzago, gurjago* a s. used in dressing leather *kartaje*.

scrapings, e.g. of a dish *sudi*.

scratch, tr. v. *yin susa, yizuzza, yin farta, gurza, ya yaga*; to s. up with the nail *karche, kwarzane*.

scratching, *susa*.

scream, n. *ihu, ifuwa, ufi kururuwa, tsuwa*.

scream, intr. v. *yin ifu, yiztsuwa*.

screw, v., to s. up the eye *rumchi, rumtse*.

scribe, *marubuchi*, pl. *marubuta*.

scum, n. *kunfa*, *kumfa*, *yana*;
s. from molten lead *kāshin-tāma*.

sea, n. *gulbi**, *kogi**.

seal, n. *zobe*, *zoben shaida*, *mazubi*, *hatumi*, *hatimi*, *hadufi*, *tambari*.

seal-ring, n. *zoben shaida*.

seam, n. (in cloth) *albada*, pl. *albadu* or *albadodi*, *shafi*, *shafe*, pl. *shafofi* or *shafe-shafe*; spec. a breadth between seams of cloth *chiki*.

seamless, adj. (applied to cloth) *liwasa*.

sear, tr. v. (with hot iron, to cauterise) *lalas*, *sa lalas*.

search, n. *chigiya*, *chiwirwiri*, *tsiwurwuri*; to make diligent s. *yin chigiya*, *bada chigiya*, *bīda*.

search, v., to s. after or for *nema*, *bīda*, *chigita*, *nūfe*, *nūfi*, *nifa**; to s. for with the hand *lalabe*, *fafake*; make search *nema*.

searching after, n. (desire and object of desire) *maradi* or *muradi*.

season, n. 1. gen. (usual or proper time) *sa'a*, *lokachi*, *loto*.

2. (division of the year with respect to weather, etc.) dry (and hot) s. *rani*; it is

the dry s. *ya yi rani*; the hottest part of dry s., when the rains are beginning *bazara*; the wet s. *damana*, *damuna*, *damina*.

seasoning, *yakuwa*.

seat, n. *mazamni* (i.e. spot on which anyone sits), *kujera*, *bige**, *turāka* (K.); a s. outside a house *dakali*; judgment s., also s. on which a king is carried about *karaga*.

secede, intr. v. (to separate from, withdraw from) *raba* and *rabu* with *da* or *daga*.

second, ord. num. *na-biyu*, fem. *ta-biyu*, also *na-baya*, fem. *ta-baya*.

secrecy, *asiri*, *ashiri**.

secret, n. *ḥoya*, *asiri*, *kara**; in s., see **secretly**.

secret, adj. *na-asiri*, fem. *ta-asiri*, *da asiri*; a s. place *lalokin asiri*; vv. to keep s. *rufe*, *rufa*, *rufi* or *rife*, *karata**; to make s. or to discuss secretly *asirta*; to talk secrets *yin gāna*.

secretly, adv. *da asiri*, *a ḥoye*; see prec.

section, n. *gedawa**.

secure, adj., see **safety**.

secure, tr. v. (from danger, harm, etc.), see **guard**, (fam. to catch, capture, e.g. a prisoner) *kama*, (to guarantee

payment of a debt, etc.) see seq.

security, n. 1. (part payment of a debt as s., earnest money) *amāna*.

2. (a thing left as s., a pledge) *jingina*.

3. (responsibility for a debt, etc. = guarantee) *la-muni, taulahi, tallafi*; I stood or went s. *na yi lamuni*.

sedge, fragrant s. *kajiji*; wild s. *dan tunuga, gemen kusu, aya aya*.

sediment, n. *gwiba, gwibi* or *guibi*.

seduce, tr. v. *farke, rude, bashe*.

see, tr. v. *gani, gano*, often contracted to *gan*, e.g. I saw her *na gan ta*, also to *gā* which is very commonly used as an imperative, e.g. s. him, or s. here *ga shi*, *gani* is also used in a pregnant sense to perceive, recognise, understand; to s. from afar *tsinkaya, tsinkayi, hango*.

seed, n. gen. (of plants, men, creatures) *iri*, pl. *irare, iri-iri*; spec. seeds crowded together *gurguzu, gurgusu*.

seedling, *shuka, shukakke*.

seeing, participial n. *ganewa*.

seek, tr. v. (to search for) *nema, bida*, e.g. wait till you are

sought for *sai am bide ka*; to s. after (often implying to set the heart upon) *dawainiya*; to s. again *zobe*; to s. for *tuski, tuske*; pregn. s. and return with *bido*, e.g. let her be sought and brought here, *a bido ta*; to go to s. and return with *nemo*.

seen, pass. particip. *gananne*, fem. *gananiya*, pl. *ganannu*.

segment, e.g. of a kola-nut *azara (Z.), bare (K.)*.

seize, tr. v. (to lay hold of) *kāma*, intens. *kankama, make*; to s. (esp. in order to eat) *rida*; to s. forcibly as in war *yin buruntu, kwache*; (to snatch) *amshi*; to s. and bring *kan-kamo*; to s. in the arms *da-dume*; to s. a person by the collar *dagume*.

select, tr. v. *zaba, zabe, zabi**, *wari*, the last often used of choosing out one or more pieces.

selected, pass. particip. *zababbe*, fem. *zababba*, pl. *zababbu*.

self, n. expressed by *kai* and *rai* with possess. pronouns, I, myself *ni da kaina, ni kaina*, also less commonly *ni raina* and *raina*.

selfishness, *kurmusu**.

self-laudation, n. *kirari*.

sell, tr. v. *sayas, sayar*, and when followed by an object *saida* or *sayas da, saishē, sawo, talla*; the last also esp. of having or exposing on or for sale, e.g. good camels are to-day selling in the market *raḱumma nagargaru ana sayar da su yau chikin kasuwa*; in the sense of consenting to s. the pass. of *sallama* is often used, e.g. I agree to s. = I let it go or you can have it *a sallame shi*; it is unsaleable *ya ḱi sayuwa*.

seller, n. *mai-saida*, pl. *masu-saida*.

selling, *saisuwa*, buying and s. *sayā da sayarwa*.

send, tr. v. *aika, aike*, which also = to s. forth, from or to; to s. to where the speaker is *aiko*, (with a person only as obj., lit. to rouse up, to start) *tāda*, e.g. I sent a messenger *na tāda manzo*; to s. back *mayas da, mayar da, yārda*; to s. away *tayas da*; to cast, throw, e.g. a bullet *jefa*.

sending, n. *aike*.

senna, n. *filasko**.

sense, n. l. (i.e. good s., understanding) *hankali*; a man of s. *mutum mai-hankali*.

2. (signification) see **meaning**.

senseless, adj. (stupid, foolish) *maras-hankali, mayagachi*; (insensible, unconscious) see seq.

senses, n. (the faculties of sensation) *hankali*, e.g. he is in a faint and senseless but in a little while he will come to his s. again *shina suma hankalinsa kuwa ya ḱache amma jima kaḱan hankalinsa zai komo kuma gare shi*.

sensible, adj. (prudent, intelligent) *mai-hankali*.

sensibly, adv. (with good sense) *da hankali*.

sent, pass. particip. *aikakke*, fem. *aikakka*, pl. *aikakku*; one s., n. *ma-aika, manzo*; spec. one s. from God *rasulu**.

sentence, n. (judicial decision) *shari'a*; to pass s. *yin shari'a*.

sentinel, n. *gāta*, pl. *gataye, bage*.

sentry, n., see prec.

sentry-post, *mabāga* (S.).

separate, adj. *bambam, akeḱe*, e.g. s. from that *bambam daḱa wanchan*.

separate, v. l. tr. *rāba* and *rābi**, *rabda, rabshe, kēḱe, keḱanche, keḱanta, wāre*.

2. intr. *rābu*; to s. from *zau-da**; separating *ḱamḱaruwa*.

separated, pass. particip. *rababbe*, fem. *rababba*, pl. *rababbu*.

separately, adv. *dāki dāki*.

separation, n. *rābo*, *rābuwa*, *baran-baran*.

serene, adj., see **calm**, **clear**, **quiet**.

serious, cf. the matter has become s. *magana ta bunkāsa*.

serjeant, *saje**.

sermon, n. *wa'azi*.

serpent, n., see **snake**.

serval-cat, *rabji*, *rabbi*.

servant, n. (not slave) *bāra*, fem. *bāranya* or *barainya*, pl. *bārori* and pl. of multitude *bāruwa* or *barwa*, which implies a large number such as a king would have, *ḍan daki*; a female s. *maaikiya*; s. of God *barwan Allah* (lit. slave of God).

serve, v. 1. (of one not a slave) *yin barantāka*.

2. (of a slave) *yin bauta*; this is also the proper term (as the more respectful) for to s. God or to s. false gods.

service, n. 1. gen. *ibāda*.

2. (of one not a slave) *barantāka*, that of a slave being *bauta* (servitude, slavery), hence its use as given in prec. 2.

3. (relig.) s. of God *ibāda*;

concr. divine s. (public worship) *salla*.

servitude, n., see **slavery**.

sesame, n. *riḍi*, *liḍi*.

set, tr. v. (gen. to place) *sā*;

intr. (of the sun) *fāḍi*, e.g. the sun s. *rana ta fāḍi*; combinations of to s. with particles, etc. are: to s. apart from *raba*, to s. aside (to reject) *ki*, to s. aside (to omit for the present) *bari*, *bar*; to s. by and to s. down (e.g. on the ground) *aje*; to s. forth (to exhibit, state) *gaya*; to s. up *tayas*, *kafa*, to s. upon (to assault) *yin firmaki*; he is s. upon *ana yi da shi*.

setting, the s. of a fractured limb *ḍori*; a bone setter *mai-ḍori*.

settle, v. 1. tr. (gen. to arrange, set right) *gyara*; (to pay, liquidate) *biya*, e.g. I settled the debt *na biya bashi*; he settled the dispute *ya raba gardama*.

2. intr. (to alight, or to fix one's habitation or stay) *sauka*.

seven, card. num. *bakwai*; s. times *sau bakwai*; by sevens *bakwai bakwai*; s. thousand *saba'a*.

seventeen, card. num. *goma sha bakwai*, *sha bakwai*.

seventh, ord. num. *na-bakwai*,
fem. *ta-bakwai*.

seventh, one-s. part *subu'i*.

seventieth, ord. num. *na-sabaïn*, fem. *ta-sabaïn*.

seventy, card. num. *sabaïn*.

sew, tr. v. *dumke, dunke, dumka* or *dumki, läfe*.

sewing, u., s. at edge of a garment *tindumi*; v., to darn or tack in s. *yin lalabtu*; s. thread *mandawari*.

sh! n. (the sound of hissing) *shishita*.

shackle, v. *sā* with seq. and *ma*, e.g. we shackled them *mun sa ma su malwa*; let him be shackled *a sa masa gigar*.

shackles, n. *malwa, marwa, gigar*, see also **fetters**.

shade, n. *inuwa*; a broad s. *inuwa mai-fadi*; to enjoy the s. of *sha inuwa*.

shadow, n. *inuwa*, e.g. a man does not leave his s. behind him *mutum bai bari ba inuwa tasa ga baya*.

shake, v. 1. tr. *gilgiza, girgiza, yin shillu, rauda*, e.g. he shook his head *ya rauda kai nasa*; to s. the head in token of assent *kāda kai*; to s. as in winnowing *tankade, motsa*; to s. off, e.g. dust *kalkada, kalkade, kankade, karkade* and *kakkabe*; to s. out *wal-*

wache, walwanche, warwache; to s. to and fro *yin reto, yin shillu*; to s. violently *jijiga*.

2. intr. *motsa*, also fig. in the wider sense of being agitated, influenced, moved, e.g. the whole multitude were shaken at the news of war *taro duka ya motsa da labarin yaki*; to s. (as to tremble, shiver, shudder with cold, etc.) *raura*.

shaken, pass. part. *gilgizazze*, fem. *gilgizazzaya*, pl. *gilgizazzu*.

shaking, n. (or trembling) *raurawa*; s. hands *ban hannu, masāfiha*.

shall, aux. v. 1. (of futurity) *za*, e.g. what s. I do now? *mi za ni yi yanzu?*

2. (of obligation), see **must, necessary**.

shallow, adj. *ba* (or *babu*) *zurfi, ba mai-zurfi*.

shambles, n. *wurin fawa*.

shame, n. *kumya* (S.), *kunya* (K.), *fulako*; the parts of s. *al'aura*; to feel s. *jin kumya*; to put to s. *sa* (*ba* and *bada*) *kumya, kumyata, kumyache*, e.g. he put him to open s. *ya sa shi kumya* (*abuḍe* or) *a sarari*.

shameful, adj. *na kumya, da kumya*; a s. thing *abin kumya*.

shameless, adj. *da kwarkwasa, shākiyi, maras-kumya, babu kumya.*

shamelessness, n. *kolkosa, kor-kosa, shākiyanchi, walle.*

shape, n. (form) *kama, sifa.*

shape, tr. v. (to fashion, create), see **make** 1.

share, n., see **part**, **portion**.

share, tr. v., see **divide**; spec. to invite to s. in one's food *chuna*; to s. a house *tara gida*; a room shared with another *ḍakin taraiya*; one who shares *abokin taraiya*.

sharing, (i.e. possessing in common) *taraiya* (K.), *tarewa* (S.).

sharp, adj. 1. (having a fine edge) *da kaifi, da chaḥi.*

2. (finely pointed) *da tsini, mai-tsini.*

sharp, to be *chaḥe, kaifafa.*

sharpen, tr. v. *wāsa, yin washī, chaḥa, dāda, yin dādi, fika, feke, kaifafa, gyarta*, e.g. let this knife be sharpened *a wāsa wukagga*; it is sharpened *ta wasu*; to s. a sword *koda*.

sharpening, *wāshi.*

sharpening swords, a tool for, n. *magagari.*

sharper, a *ḍan tugu.*

shatter, tr. v. (intens.) *farfasha* or *palpashe.*

shave, v. (with razor) *aski, aske, aska*, and *yin aski.*

shaving, verbal n., spec. s. the front of head or so as to leave only a tuft on top of head *kwambe*; s. one side of the head by a woman as sign of sorrow *faskare*; baldness caused by s. *kundumi*; s. the whole head or s. in two longitudinal lines each side of the crown *sariya.*

shavings, of wood *totuwa.*

shawl, made in strips, n. *al-killā.*

she, pers. pron. fem. 1. separate and emphatic *ita*, e.g. it is s. *ita che.*

2. in combination with verbs *ta*, e.g. s. saw him *ta gan shi*, the woman said no *mache ta che a'a.*

shea-butter, n. *danḥon ka-ḍanya*; the s.-b. tree *ka-ḍanya*; fruit of the s.-b. tree *kāde.*

sheaf, n. (also bundle of anything) *dāme, dāmi*, pl. *damma*; spec. s. of arrows *shiba**.

shear, tr. v. *yin sosaiye.*

shearing, verbal n. *sausaye.*

sheath, n. (for knife, sword) *kube.*

shed, n. *rumbu, rumpa, rumfa*, pl. *rumfuna, rinfa* (K.), esp. used of a s. or booth in a

- market-place; a temporary s. *bukka*, pl. *bukkoki*, *ambuta*, *dābi*; a cattle s. *garke*, *garage* (S.), *zauren shanu*.
- shed**, tr. v. (to pour out or down) *zuba*, *zubo*; to s. tears *yin hawaye*.
- sheep**, *tumkiya*, pl. *tumāki*; a s. with two wattles hanging from lower jaw *tumkiya mai-lawaye* (or *mailayu*).
- sheep-fold**, n., see **fold**.
- sheet**, n. (of paper) *taba'al takardu*; a winding s. *likka-fani*, *kafan*.
- sheikh**, *shaihu*.
- shelf**, a *alkuki**; rope supporting a s. *ragaya*, pl. *ragayu*; a s. made with mud *zaga*.
- shell**, n. (hard covering of fruit, eggs, etc.) *kwasfa*, *kosfa*, pl. *kwasfofi* or *kosfofi*, *kwanso*, e.g. break the nut, and peel off the s. *ka kariye gujiya ka bare kwasfa*; s. of snails *katantanwa*, *alkoto*, *alkwato*, a mussel s. *makankari*; s. of a tortoise *kwariya* (K.), *kwachiya* (S.).
- shell**, tr. v. (to take off the peel or shell) *bare*, *fēke* (S.), *yin fira* (or *fira*).
- shell-fish**, an edible, n. *kumba*, pl. *kumbuna* or *kumbobi*, *kumbai*.
- shelter**, n. (protection from

light and heat) *inuwa*, (a place of refuge) *gidan chira*, *wurin chira*; a rough grass s. *sangaya*.

shepherd, n. *makiyaye*, *makiyayi*, pl. *makiyaya* or *makiyaya* (S.).

sherd, of pots, etc. n. *katanga*, *tsingaro* (S.), *sakaina*, pl. *sakainu*.

shield, n. gen. *garkuwa*, pl. *garki*, *garkinne*, *kariya*, also in a loose sense (lit. battle equipment) *kayan dāga*; spec. a large round s. made of skin *kūtufāni*; a large white oblong s. like that of the Zulus, usually carried by high officials *kwangara*; a small s. *kunkeli*; a s. made of skin *makāri*, *dangi*; a s. made from the skin of the white oryx *walwaji*, *warwaji*, pl. *walwazoji*.

shin-bone, *kwabri*, *kobri*, *kwauri* (K.), pl. *kwabruka*, *kwobruka*, *kobruka*.

shine, intr. v. *ba* (or *bada*) *haske*, *haskaka*; the lightning shines brighter than the sun *walkiya ta fi rana haske*; the sun is shining *ana rana*.

shining, adj. *mai-haske*.

shirking, n. *bahilchi*.

shirk work, v. *huji*, see **idle**.

shirt, n. *tūfa*, *tūfuwa*, pl. *tūfafi*

or *tūfofi* worn under the gown; a shirt with narrow sleeves *aganiya*, *riga*, pl. *riguna*, which sometimes = a large s.; a small s. *ya-chiki*; an inside, pleated s. *kwakwata*; a s. without arms *binjima*, *bi-jima*; a s. like a robe but smaller with short sleeves *tāgo* (S.), pl. *tagogi*, *taguwa* (K.), pl. *taguwoyi*; a s. worn by women *shaya*; a quilted s. of mail worn by horse soldiers *lifidi*, *lifdi*.

shiver, (to tremble, shudder) *firgita*, *firgiche*, *raura*.

shivering, n. *makarkata*.

shoe, n. *takalmi*, pl. *takalma*, *wufi**, *wupi**; he took off the s. *ya fitas da takalmi*; a s. strap *ma-ballin takalmi*; spec. small s. worn inside boots *sufadu*, pl. *sufadai*; two odd shoes *gamin bauta*.

shoot, v. 1. tr. (to hit with a shot, etc.) *halbi*, *harbi*; e.g. he was shot *aka halbe shi da bindiga* (if with an arrow *da kibiya*); cf. the leopard is hard to s. *damisa da wuyan halbewa*; to s. towards the speaker *halbo*, past particip. shot *halbebe*.

2. intr. (to discharge a gun) *halbi bindiga* or *buga bindiga*.

3. of plants to s. or s. forth *yin tofo*, *sumbula*.

shooting, n. (the killing of game) *farauta*; to go s. *yin farauta*.

shooting star, n. *mashin tam-raru*.

shoots, of plants *yabainya*.

shopkeeper, *sambani*, see **trader**.

shore, *gāḅa*, *gāchi*, see **bank**.

short, adj. 1. (of length) *gājēre*, fem. *gājēra* and *gājēriya*, pl. *gājēru*, also *karami* (lit. small), cf. *guntu*; s. sighted *garara*; to give s. measure *bante*, *tsakare*.

2. (of time) *kaḁan*, e.g. a s. while *jima kaḁan*.

short of, fall, intr. v. *kāsa*, *gāza*, e.g. thy days are numbered, thou canst not pass them nor come s. of them *kwanukanka madudai ne ba ka wuche su ba ka kāsa su*.

shortness, n. *gajarta*, *gajerta*, *hilafa**.

shot, n. (ball, bullet) *harsashe*, *yahaya**.

shoulder, n. *kafaḁa*, pl. *kafaḁu*, *kafaḁoḁi*, *kanfāle* (S.), *karfata*, *karpata* (S.); the two last are especially applied to the shoulders of animals, the part from the

s. to the elbow *damtse*, pl. *damutsa* or *damatsu*.

shout, n. *ifu, wu, guda*; see **cry**.

shout, intr. v. *yin ifu*.

shouting, *sowa, sowwa*; there was s. *ana sowa*; much s. *sowa sowa*.

shove, tr. v., see **push**.

show, n. (ornamental display) *ado*.

show, tr. v. (to point out an object, also to inform, explain) *gwada, gōda, nūna, nuni*, e.g. he showed me it.

showing, verbal n. in both senses of prec. *nunawa*.

shrew-mouse, with bad odour *jabā*.

shrike, n. *bambami*; helmet s. *kare-dangi*.

shrink, intr. v. (from cold, etc.) *firgita*; (to shrivel up) *takura*; to s. from *toge ma*; they shrank from him *sun kare da shi*.

shrinking, *tsika*.

shrivel, intr. v. *yin yaushi, kandare*; it shrivels up *ya yi yaushi*.

shrivelling, n. *yaushi*.

shroud, n. *likkafani*.

shrub, n., see *kaikaya, yaḍia, biyarana, fidali*, etc.; a shrub forming hedges (*Jatropha curcas*) *bi-ni-da-zugu, chi-ni-da-zugu*.

shudder, intr. v. *raura*.

shuddering, *tsika*.

shun, tr. v., see **avoid**.

shut, tr. v. *rufe, rufi* or *rife, sāda*, e.g. let not the door be s. *kada a rufe kofa*; to s. a box, door, etc. *yane*; to s. up *sada, turbude*.

shuttle, n. *masaka, koshiya*; the sliding wooden cylinder which works longitudinally in the s. *kwarkwaro*.

shy, v., of a horse *baude*.

sick, adj. *da chiwo, marili**; one who is s. *mai-chiwo*, pl. *masu-chiwo, maras-lafiya, majinachi, majinyachi, majiyachi*.

sick, be, v. 1. (to be in bad health) *jin* (or *yin*) *chiwo*, also *da chiwo* with forms in *na*, e.g. he is s. *shina da chiwo*.

2. (to feel nausea) *jin kumallo*.

sickle, a small semicircular s., n. *lauje, laushe* (Zanf.), *magirbi*.

sickness, n. *chiwo, chiwuta, chiwurwuta, jinya, jinya-jinya*; the following words designate special forms: (a cold) *mājina*; (a fainting fit) *falfada*; (pestilence, plague) *alloba, bala'i*; (vomiting) *amai*.

side, n. 1. gen. *waje*, pl. *wajeje*;

one on this s. and one on the other s. *ḍaya ga wajen nan ḍaya ga wajen chan*; from this s. (of a room, glen, etc.) even to that s. *dāga sassan nun har ga sassan chan*; the right s. *wajen dama, duma*; the left s. *wajen (hauni or) hagum, hagum, hagun*; s. of a body (also = edge) *ḵauye*; the s. or edge of a stream *ḵauyen ruwa*.

2. s. of the body (esp. between the bottom of the ribs and the thigh-bone) *kwibi*; s. (rib) of an animal *awaza*, pl. *awazzai*; on one s. *a ḵauye*.

sieve, n. *rariya, rairaya, leleya**; a vessel with holes used as a coarse s. *tukunya, matachiya, mararaki, marari**; a s. used for separating gold from sand, etc. *matankadi*.

sift, to *tuche, tankade* or *yin tankade, bakache*.

sigh, n. *sheda*, pl. *shedodi*.

sigh, intr. v. *yin sheda, sinihi**, *sinishi**.

sighing, n. *ajiyar zuchiya*.

sight, n. 1. (the faculty of vision) no precise equivalent, turn, e.g. he lost the s. of his eye *idonsa ya ḥache*.

2. (the act of seeing, also view) *ido, gani* thus, in the s. of all men *idon duniya*; the s. of her will console them *ganinta zai ma su hankuri*; the s. of them made everybody laugh *ganinsu ya sa kowanne dariya*; dim (or dimness of) s. *ḥamḥarokai*; one who has defective s. *garara*.

sign, n. gen. *shaida*, pl. *shaidodi*, which also = s. or mark made by one who cannot write his name; (important or wonderful token, intimation) *alama* often pronounced *halama*, pl. *alamomi*; *aya*, pl. *ayoyi, nūni*; a s. adduced or appealed to as a reason or authority *dalili*.

signet, n. *mataushin watika*; s. ring *zoben shaida*.

silence, n. *shiriyu, shiru, shiyu, shuru* or *shu, kurum, kawai, kurumta, kurumchi, zugum* (S.); in s. *shiriyu, kurum*, e.g. leave them in s. *a bar su kurum*; to keep s. *yin kawai*; he kept s. *ya ja bakinsa*.

silence, to *kawaita*.

silent, adj. *kawai* or *kauwai, jurum*.

silent, to be, v. *shiriyu, kurum* and *kawai* with *yi* or

the forms in *na*, e.g. be silent! *ka yi shiru*, *kame bakinka*; we were *s. mun yi kurum*; he is *s. shina kurum* or *shina yin kawai*.

silently, adv. *shiru*.

silk, *alharini*, *sirki**, *adalashi*; a cord or chain of *s. siliya*, pl. *siliyu* and *siliyoyi*.

silk cotton tree, n. *rimi*, *rini*; red-flowered *s. c. t. gurjiya*; the seed of the *s. c. t. guriya* (S.), *anguriya* (K.).

silken, adj. *na alharini*.

silkworm, a species of, n. *tsamiya*.

silly, adj., see fool, foolish.

silver, n. *azurfa*.

silver, adj. *na-azurfa*, fem. *ta-azurfa*.

similar, adj., see like.

similar, to be, v. *daidaiche*, see under like.

similitude, n. *misali*; to speak by a *s. yin misali*.

sin, n. *zunufi*, *zunubi*, *laifi*, pl. *laifufuka*, *kuskuri**; to commit *s.*, see seq.

sin, intr. v. *yin zunubi* (or *zunufi*), *yin laifi*.

since, l. prep. (after, from the time of) *tun*, e.g. *s. your birth tun haifuwarka*; *s. the commencement of the war tun farawar yaki*.

2. conj. of time (after that, from the time that) *tun da*, e.g. *s. we learnt that he was an infidel tun da mun sani shi kafiri ne*.

3. adv., long *s. tun daɗe*, *tun daɗewa*, *tuntuni*, *tuni*; how long *s.*? *tun yausha*? e.g. how long *s. did you learn Hausa*? *tun yausha ka koyo Hausa*?

4. conj. (because) *don*, *zama*, e.g. they cannot move since they are lifeless *ba su iya yin motsi ba don ba su da rai*.

sincere, adj., see honest.

sing, v. *yin waka*.

singe, to *babbake*.

singer, a mounted *bambaɗe*, pl. *bambaɗawa*.

single, adj. *barābara*; a *s.* one of a pair, of which one has been lost *kangarwa*; see alone, one.

singly, adv., e.g. question them *s. (one by one) ka tambaya su daya daya*, see also alone.

singular, adj. *mufuradi*, see plural.

sink, n. (a place of filth, also fig.) *salga*, pl. *salgagi*.

sink, v. l. intr. (to go under water) *nutsa* (K.), *nuta* (S.), *nutse*, *nitso*, *ninkāya*, e.g. the boat is sinking *jirigi*

shina nutsa; to s., i.e. to fall, e.g. of a man wounded or of the sun descending *fadi*.

2. (to subside) *kāfe*.

3. tr. (to immerse) *nuche*, *nutse*; spec. to s. a well *gina rijiya*.

sinless, adj. *maras-laifi*.

sinner, n. *mai-zunubi*.

sip, n. *guwa*; to take one s. *sha ḍaya*.

sip, v. *kurḅa*.

sipping, n. *kurḅi*.

sister, n. *shikikiya*, *zumniya* (S. and Daura), (usually = younger s.) *kanuwa*; elder s. *ya*.

sit, intr. v. (also to s. down) *zamna* or *zauna*; to s. on the ground with legs crossed and elbows on knees *gishin-kida*, *kishinkida*, *gijirta*; to s. with outspread legs *tagan-gana*; to s. at ease *mimiḱe*; to make to s. down *zamshe*; a sitting place *mazauni*, *ma-zamni*.

site, n. *wuri*, pl. *wurare*; to mark out a s. *sha wuri*.

six, card. num. *shidda*; s. times, adv. *sau shidda*; by sixes or s. each *shidda shidda*.

sixth, adj. *na-shidda*, fem. *ta-shidda*; one-s. part *sudusi**.

sixtieth, ord. num. *na-sittin*, fem. *ta-sittin*.

sixty, card. num. *sittin*; also *gomiya shidda*.

size, n. *girma* employed thus: its fruit is large in s. *ḍiyata suna da girma*; the s. of the jerboa exceeds that of the mouse *kurege ya fi ḅera girma*; to become (or grow) large in s. *yin girma*.

skewer, *tsinken nama*; to fix on a s. *soke a tsinke*, *tsire**, *done*.

skilful, adj. (in an art, etc.) *goni*, *gwani*, *gwanaye*, *mai-gwani*; (in artifice) *mai-wayo*, pl. *masu-wayo*, (esp. in war) *gardaye*.

skilfully, adv. *gwani*, *da gwani*, *da wayo*, *da dubara*.

skill, n. (in an art or profession) *gwani*, *gwaninta*; (in artifice) *wayo*; (in contrivance, resource) *dabāra* or *dubāra*; (with implication of opportunity and readiness) *tsarafi**.

skim, tr. v. (milk) *yāḍe*, *kwalfe*, *kolfe*.

skimming, of milk *kwalfa*, *kolfa*.

skin, n. gen. *fāta*, pl. *fātuna*, *pāta*, *fiska*; (hide) *kilāgo*, pl. *kilagai*; *kilabo*, *agalemi*, *lan-gaḅu**; s. after tanning *kir-gi*; cast s. of serpent *swaḅa* or *saḅa*, *zana*; he casts his

s. *ya yi swaba*; a s. bag or bottle *salka*, pl. *salkuna*; a s. used for drawing water from well *guga*; a covering of skins *tunku*; a s. wrapper *walki*.

skin, tr. v. *kware*, *kwari*, *feda*, *fede*; see also **flay**.

skink, banded s. (*Scinopus fasciatus*) *damatsiri*, *tamatsiri* (S.); red-bellied s. (*Ma-buia Perrotteti*) *kulba*.

skip, v. (to spring along or over lightly) *bira*; (to pass over without reading passages in a book) *chingara*, *tsälache*.

skipping, *tsalle*.

skull, n. *kwalluwa*, *kwakwalurca*, *kollo*, *kwanya*, *kwanyan kai*, *kashin kai* (lit. bone of the head).

kunk, a kind of *tunku*, see under **cat**.

ky, n. *säma*, pl. *samaniya* or *sammai*, *duniya*, *gari**.

lacken, v. 1. see **loosen**.

2. tr. v. (to relax, mitigate) *rägi* or *rage*; intr. (to be relaxed, mitigated) *ragu*, e.g. the heat of the fire slackened *zafin wuta ya ragu*.

ackness, *sainyin jiki*.

ander, *chimbaya*, *tsurutu* (S.), *hardi*.

anderer, *maradi*.

ap, v. *kalle*.

slash, tr. v. (to cut by striking, i.e. not by drawing the edge along, which is *yanka*) *sare*.

slaughter, tr. v. *yanka* or *yanke*, *karkäshe*, *kakkäshe*; to s. animals *yin fauta*.

slaughter-house, n. *wurin fawa*, *mahauta*.

slaughtering, n. *fawa*.

slave, n. *bawa*, fem. *baiwa*, *bauya*, *boya* (S.) or *bawuya**, pl. *bayi* or *bai*; spec. chief s. of a king *kachalla*, *yari*; a female s. *baiwa* (as above), *kuyanga* or *kuiyanga*, pl. *kuyangai*, *kuyangi*; *yan turäka*, (also concubine) *sadaka*, *kwarakwara* or *kwarkwara*, *bawan gida*; the son of a s. but free *bachucheni*, *dimajo*; a s. the offspring of a negro father and Tuarek mother *buzu*; a s. who begs *mauro*; a s. about 14 years old *magudanchi*, *mugudanchi*, pl. *magudantai*; a strong s. *kato*, fem. *katuwa*; a run-away s. *gujajje**; a s. holder *mai-bawa*; a s. raiding expedition *samame*, *shäri*; v. to free a s. *yanchi*; a s. raider *mahäri*.

slavery, n. *bauchi*, *bauta*, *ba-wanchi*; liberation from s. *diyauchi* or *diyanchi*; redemption from s. *fansa*

usually pronounced *pansa* ;
to redeem from s. *yin fansa*,
bada (or *ba*) *diyauchi*, e.g.
he freed them from s. *ya*
bada su diyauchi.

slay, tr. v., see **kill**.

sleep, n. *barchi*, *kwana*, *kwan-*
chiya ; the last s. (death)
maḡarin barchi.

sleep, intr. v. *barchi* with *yi*
or forms in *na*, also *kwana*
or *kwanche* ; the former refer
rather to the physical con-
dition, the latter convey also
the idea of reposing, lying
down to s., e.g. we did not
hear the howling of the dogs,
we were sleeping *ba mu ji*
kukan karnuka muna barchi ;
we slept at that place *mun*
kwana a wurin nan ; sleep-
ing *kwantawa*, *kwanchiya* ;
cf. my foot has gone to s.
mijiriya ta kama kafata.

sleepiness, n. *gyangyadi* ; to
be overcome by s. *yin gyan-*
gyada.

sleeping-place, n. *makwanche* ;
spec. s.-p. (e.g. in a tree)
affording protection from wild
beasts *saura**.

sleeping sickness, *bamota*.

sleeve, n. *hännu* or *hännun*
riga ; a sleeve-knife the
blade of which is worn along
or up the s. *wuḡar hännu*.

sleight of hand, *dabo*.

slender, *lange lange*, see **lean**.

slice, a *gunduwa*.

slide, intr. v., see **slip**.

slight, adj., see **thin**.

slight, tr. v. *rēna*, *raina*.

slim, *shallali*.

sling, v., to s. anything over
the shoulder *sāba*.

sling, n. *bindo*, *elawa*, *maja*
jaiwa, *majejawa*, *majajawa*
majujawa ; sword s. *hamila*
a s. for carrying a child on
the back *gumya*.

slinging, *ragaya*, *rataya*.

slip, n. (loss of foothold by
sliding) *samtsi*, *santsi*, *sand*
(S.) ; to make a s. *yin sam-*
tsi, *yin talalabiya*, e.g. h
made a s. *ya yi samtsi*.

slip, intr. v. 1. (to lose foot
hold by sliding) *samtse*, *yi*
samtsi, *yin talalabiya*, *gwal-*
chi, *tuzga*, *tuzge*, *rabkana*
rafkama ; the last also = to s
into, e.g. he slipped into th
well *ya gwabche chikin rijiya*
to s. as in soft mud *kafiya*.

2. (to escape hold) *kubche*
sumbule ; of things, e.g. th
sword slipped from my gras
takobi ya kubche daga han
nuna ; of persons (to leav
or get away easily from
companions, etc.) *zūḡe*, *rabu*
to try to s. out (used of a

animal in a trap) *kūbche-kūbche*; of a knot to s. *sumbule*.

slipperiness, n. *samtsi*, *santsi*, *sandi* (S.), *samche*, *sulbi*, *talabhiya*.

slippery, adj. *dasamtsi*, see **slip**.

slipping down or out, participial n. *sumbulewa*.

slit, n., a s. in a seam *ḥarāka*; a s. in a stick *gebe**.

slit, tr. v. *keta*.

slough, n. (cast skin of serpent) *swaḥa* or *saha*; to cast a s. *yin swaḥa*.

slow, adj. (one who goes slowly or deliberately) *mai-nauwa*.

slowcoach, *maḍuḍu* (S.), see **idle**.

slowly, adv. *sannu-sannu*; very s. *sannu-sannu*.

slumber, n. and v., see **sleep**, **sleepiness**.

slush, *taḥo*, *chaḥi*, *potopoto*.

sly, adj. *da wayo*, *mai-wayo*, pl. *masu-wayo*; see **skilful**.

small, adj. *ḥarami*, fem. *ḥarama*, *ḥaramiya*, pl. *ḥaramu*, *ḥanḥane*, fem. *ḥanḥanuwa*, pl. *ḥanḥana*, *ḥanana*; smallest *auta**; anything s., n. *kima*, *abuhika*, *kusugu**; s. quantity of *ḥaranchi*; s. money (shells) *yaskan kurḍi* (S.).

mall-pox, n. *āgana*, *ado*, *zan-zana*, *ḥarambo*, *yar-rani*.

smart, a s. fellow *dāje*, fem. *dājiya*, pl. *dazoji*.

smash, tr. v. (to break to pieces with violence) *far-fasha*, *palpashe*, *ribde*, *rifde*, *rubde*, *rugunguza**, *murtsuke*.

smashed, particip. pass. *mur-jaje*, fem. *murjajiya*, pl. *mur-jaju*; *murtsukakke*, pl. *murtsukakku*.

smear, tr. v. (e.g. with oil) *shāfa*, *shāfe*, *yafa**.

smell, n. (odour), an agreeable s. *ḥamshi*; a bad s. *ḍoyi*, *ḍwai*, *wari*, *wardi**; s. of damp *fumfuna*; an evil s. as of putrefying animal bodies *ḥarni*, *ḥazni*, *ḥauri*.

smell, tr. v. 1. (to perceive by the sense) *ji*, *sunsuna*, e.g. I s. the scent of lions *na ji warin zakoki*.

2. (to s. at with the intent to enjoy or test) *shaḥa* (S.) or *sheka* (K.); to emit a bad s. *yin ḍoyi*.

smelt, tr. v. *narke*.

smile, intr. v. *yin murmushi*, *yin mulmushi*.

smite, tr. v., see **strike**, **kill**.

smith, n., see **blacksmith**.

smithy, *mākēra*.

smoke, n. *hayaki*; spec. s. of a conflagration *turnuka*.

smoke, v. 1. (to emit s.) *yin hayaki*.

2. (to s. tobacco) *shan taba*.

smooth, adj. *da* (*samtsi* or *santsi*, *nani*).

smooth, tr. v. (of wood, by paring, shaving) *sassaḳa*, *sabche*, *sabta*, *sanche*; (by daubing, plastering, etc.) *yāḅa*; to rub s. *darje*.

smoothed, particip. adj. (by plastering, etc.) *yāḅāḅḅe*, fem. *yāḅāḅḅa*, pl. *yāḅāḅḅu*.

smoothly, adv. *sansamtsa**, *sarr**.

smoothness, n. *samtsi*, *santsi*, *sanche*.

snail, n. *katantanwa*, *alkoto**.

snail shell, *alkoto* (S.).

snake, n. *machiji*, fem. *machijiya*, pl. *machizzai*, *igiyar ḳasa*, *sago* (S.); names of different species many of which await identification are: a small s. with a tail which resembles a second head and a double mouth *bīda*; a s. which spits like a cat *dan mussa*; a green s. (*Philothamnus semivariegatus*) *damatsiri*, *danyen chi-yawa*; a black s. *masasau*; a black cobra from 14 inches to 6 ft. in length without spectacles *kumurchi*, *kwamarchi*; another species of cobra *gamshēḳa*, *gamshiḳa*, or *tamatsiri* (in S. this = a skink); a black

s. about 18 inches long *dan magurji*; a puff adder *kasa*; a long, slender, light-coloured s. *kwakiya*; a python *mesa*, *muluwa**; a short black and white viper *gajera*, *kubu buwa**; a harmless s. *shanono*; a yellow viper with flat head *injiḥau*, *tsada-raki*; a poisonous s. *sanadi*; a brown harmless s. which comes out at daylight *tafi ga rana*; a large spotted s. *tandara*; a large s. *uwayara*; a plant used as antidote to s. bite *filasko*; a s. charmer *gardi*, pl. *gardawa*; *turḍe*, pl. *turḍawa* or *turḍodi*; a s. skin *swaḅa* or *sāḅa*, *zana**, a water s. *ani*.

snare, n. *hako*, pl. *hakoki*, *tarko*; to lay a s. *yin hako*; a bird s. *asuta*, *asibta*.

snatch, tr. v. *ḳwache*, *karḅa*, *karḅi*, *amshi*, *fisge* or *fusge*; spec. to s. goods *wasashe*; to s. with violence *rupta*, *rupto*.

snatcher, n. *mai-ḳwachewa*.

snatching, *wasoso*, *wasaso*.

sneeze, intr. v. *atisha*; sneezing *atishawa*, *furji*.

sniff, v. *sheḳa*, *shaka*; to s. up (for the purposes of smelling) id.

snore, intr. v. *minshari*, *hansari*, *nāsari*, *hansāri*, *gwarti*.

snort, to *sheka hiska*.

snow, *talji** (Ar.).

snuff, n. (powdered tobacco)
garin tāba, taban hanchi;
taking s. *shekawu*.

snuff, v., see **sniff**.

snuff-box, n. *batta*, pl. *battochi*.

so, adv. (thus) *hāka, hākanan*,
e.g. or is it not so? *ko ba hāka ba?* so it is *shi ke nan*;
kāza, or *kāza da kāza* is
often used in a less demon-
strative sense and when
something is referred to not
named = so and so, e.g. he
did so and so *ya yi abu kāza*;
wāne is similarly used of
persons, e.g. where is so and
so? *ina wāne*; about so much
kwatanchin kaza; so, express-
ing doubt or some surprise,
so! *to*; so it is *ana nan*; so
that, see under **that**; so
then (therefore), see **there-**
fore.

soap, n. *sabuni* (S.), *sabulu*
(K.), *toka*; spec. a superior
kind of s. used for washing
the face *sabunin sālo*.

socket, n. *kwarmi*, pl. *kwarmu*,
gwarmi; s. of the eye *gurbin*
ido; prov. the s. of the eye
is not the eye itself *gurbin*
ido ba ido ne ba.

sodomy, *luḍu, lutsu*.

soever, affix to words to em-

phasise the notion of con-
tingency *ko* (used as a prefix),
e.g. where? *ina*; wheresoever
ko ina; who? which? what?
wa, wanne; whosoever, which-
soever, whatsoever *kowa, ko-*
wanne, e.g. whomsoever you
find seize him *kowanne ka*
samu ka kama shi.

soft, adj. (e.g. of mud, dough,
etc., also of cloth) *da tafshi*,
da tabshi, *da taushi*, *da lau-*
*shi**, *laḅu-laḅu*; to be or be-
come s. *yin tapshi*, *yin ka-*
bushi; of ripe fruit *yin tabo*
(or *tambo*), e.g. the date is s.
dabino ya yi tabo.

soften, tr. v. *yin tafshi*,
zabki.

softly, *lako-lako, sāko-sāko*.

softness, *kabushi, tabo, tapshi*,
*tafshi, tabshi, taushi, laushi**.

soil, n. 1. (ground, land) *kāsa*,
pl. *kāsashe, kāsaisai*; very
hard s. *tsandauri*.

2. see **dirt**.

soil, tr. v. *yin dauda*.

sojourn, n. (temporary stay)
zama, e.g. how have you
been faring during your s.
in this town? *ina zaman*
gari?

sojourn, intr. v. (to make a
stay) *zamna, zauna*, e.g. we
sojourned there twelve days
mun zamna nan kwana goma

sha biyu, *shida* or *shide* (lit. to alight at a place).

sojourner, *mai-zamna*, pl. *ma-su-zamna*.

Sokoto, the town of *Sakwato* or *Sakkwato*.

solder, a sort of, (sal-ammonia) *sinādari* (S.), *shinādari* (K.), *sunādari*.

soldier, n. *māyaki*, pl. *māyaka*, *dan yaki*, pl. *yayan* (or *yan*) *yaki*; *askar*, pl. *askarawa*; spec. a s. of a king's body-guard *dogari*, *dakāre*, *dakāra*, pl. *dakāru*; a foot s. *dan kasa*; foot-soldiers coll. *kirma*, *sa'ati**; see *guriguri**.

sole, n. (of the foot) *sau*, *sawu*, *sauwainwai*, pl. *sauwuna*, *mataki*, pl. *matakai*, *tāfin kafa*.

sole, adj. *makadaichi*, *mukadaichi*, s. in its idiomatic use, however, is best expressed by means of *sai*, e.g. his s. request was this *ba ya roko ba sai wannan*; our s. food is guinea-corn *abinchi namu sai dawa*.

solely, adv., see **alone**.

solid, adj. (sound, trustworthy) *ingatachi*.

solitary, *gwabro**.

some, 1. (used adjectivally and pronominally) *wani* (often pronounced *woni*), fem. *wata*, pl. *wadansu*, *wasu*, *yasu* (S.),

wansu; wait, I have something to say *bari ina da wani*.

2. *wani* is also used to express the correlatives s. one...another, pl. s....others, also s....s., e.g. s. one said yes, another said no *wani ya che i wani ya che a'a*.

somersault, the act of turning *zuragadauniya*, *juyen-māsa* (see under *māsa*).

sometime, adv. *wani yayi*.

son, n. *da*, connective *dan*, pl. *yaya*, *ya*, connective *yayan* and *yan*, e.g. first-born s. *da nafari*; the s. of Amina *dan Amina* (i.e. Mohammed); used as an expression of regard, e.g. my s. *dana*; s. of my mother (i.e. friend) *dan uwana*; also used (as at times in English) to express contempt or aversion, e.g. s. of the ignorant (heathen) *dan jahili* (stronger than *jahili* alone); s. of the wicked *dan mazugu*.

song, n. *waka*, pl. *wakoki*, *wake-wake*, *sara*, *wasu*; v., to sing a s. *waka* with *yi* or the forms in *na*, e.g. I sang them a s. *na yi ma su waka*; to compose a s. id.; a religious s. *tsāri*; foolish songs *wake-waken banza*.

sonship, n. *diyauchi*, *diyanchi*.

soon, adv. (after a little while) *jima kaḍan*, e.g. I shall s. return to you *jima kaḍan ni komo gare ku*, cf. also **while**; (in a short time, with quickness) *maza* and frequently *maza maza*, e.g. I will s. catch him *zan kama shi maza maza*.

soot, *finfin* (S.), *finfini* (K.), *kunkunniya*, *kunkumniya* (S.).

soothsayer, n. *boka*, pl. *bo-kaye*; to act as a s. *yin dubi*.

soothsaying, n. *arwa*, *duba*.

sorcerer, n. *maye*, *mayi*, fem. *mayiya*, *mayya*, pl. *mayu*.

sorcery, n. *maita*, *ḍabu*, *ḍabo*, *kwarche* (S.), *sihiri*, *kandu*, *akokari*, *tsubu*.

sordid, adj., see **filthy**, **base**.

sore, n. *kushe kushe*, *miki*, pl. *miyaku*, see **ulcer**, **boil**; s. on a horse's back *gets*i.

sore, adj., see **painful**.

sores, pl. *ḥalli ḥalli*.

sorrel, red s. *yakuwa*.

sorrow, n. *baḳin chiki*, *mayāta*, see **affliction**, **grief**.

sorrowful, to be, intr. *sinihi*.

sorry, (distressed, pained) *da wahala*; to be s. *haiya*; I am very s. *ya ḥata ma ni zuchiya* or *zuchiyata ta ḥache*, see **grieved**; to be or feel s. for, see **compassion**.

sort, n. *iri*, pl. *irare*, *launi*; see **species**.

sort, tr. v. (to divide, distribute into classes) *raba*; (to s. out) see **choose**.

sorted, pass. part. *rababbe*, fem. *rababba*, pl. *rababbu*.

soul, n. *rai*, pl. *rayu*, *kuruwa*, both are used of the disembodied as well as the embodied s.; (the seat of the mental feelings and qualities) *rai*, e.g. of haughty s. *da girman rai*; patient of s. *da sanyin rai*.

sound, n. (e.g. of bees, a bell, gun, trumpet) *amo*; a confused s. *dūmi*.

sound, adj. (trustworthy) *ingatachi*; s. (in health) *da lafiya*.

sound, intr. v. *yin āmo*.

soup, n. *romuwa* (S.), *romo* (K.), *miya*, *ruwan nama*; spec. s. in which *fura* has been made *farau farau*, *faro faro*, *ruwan fura*; red sorrel, a common ingredient in s. *yakuwa*; a herb the leaves of which are used in making s. *sure*.

sour, adj. *da tsami*; to be s. *yamama*, *yanyama*; the soup has gone s. *miya ta yi yami*.

source, n. (spring of water) *idon ruwa*; s. of a river *gindi*; (origin, beginning) *mafari*; (of words, the primitive meaning or derivation)

gutsu, e.g. what is its s.? *minene gutsunsa?* (first cause)
sababi, e.g. the s. of the illness
 was this *sababin chiwuta ke nan*.

sourness, *tsami*, *tsamiya*, *yami*.

souse, tr. v. (to immerse) *tso-ma*, *nuche* (S.), *nutsa*.

south, n. *küdu*, *küdus*, *güşum*,
tsäkar rana; adv. id., e.g.
 he went s. *ya tafi küdu*.

southward, adj. (towards the
 s.) *güşumchi*, *kudanchi*.

sovereign, n., see **king**.

sovereignty, n., see **kingdom**.

sow, n. (female of wild swine)
gadoniya, *gyadainya* (S.);
 (of domestic) *gursuna mache*.

sow, tr. v. *shipka*, *shibka*,
shuka; a hole in which to s.
 seed *sära*.

sower, n. *mai-shipka*, *ma-shipki*.

sowing-time, n. *manomi*, also
 fig., e.g. this life is a s.-t.
 for the future life, *ita du-
 niya nana che manomi a
 lahira*.

space, n. (open, free room)
sarari, *fage*; unoccupied sp.
 (e.g. on the ground, etc.)
fili, pl. *filaye*, *kanwuri*, *far-
 fajiya*, *sarari*, e.g. there is
 no s. here for my load
*babu fili a wurin nan ga
 kayana*; in a less precise

sense *wuri* (place) may be
 used.

spacious, adj. *mai-sarari*, *mai-
 yalwa*.

span, n. (a measure of length,
 i.e. the space between ends
 of thumb and first finger
 extended) *täki*, *dani*.

sparks, *tsartsatsi*.

sparrow, n., the African s.
magwara.

speak, v. *fäda* and *fädi*, *täne*,
zanta (K.), e.g. I s. the truth
 to you *ina fäda ma ku gas-
 kiya*; (in the sense also of
 conversation) *yin zanche*; to
 s. with *zantad da*; to s. a
 language *yin magana*, e.g.
 we are able to s. Hausa *mu-
 na iya yin maganar Hausa*;
 to s. evil of *hächi*; to s. evil
 of behind one's back *chim-
 baya*; to s. proudly *yin raha*;
 to s. secretly or to s. in
 whispers *räda*; speaking *fä-
 dalle*, see **say**.

spear, n. *mäshi*, pl. *masu-
 suka*, or *masu*; spec. a long
 s. not thrown *kasausawa*;
 a small s. for throwing *han-
 kaltilo*; a small s. tied to
 wrist and which after being
 thrown is pulled back *hargi*,
 pl. *harugga*; a s. or dart for
 catching fish *hägu*, *margi*;
 v. to cast a s. as a sign of

declaration of war *yasda* (or *yada*) *mashi*; s. throwing *nāshi*, pl. *nashe-nashe*.

spear, tr. v. *soka*, *soke* or *soki*, *halbe*, *halbi* or *harbi*, *chäke*, e.g. he speared a fish *ya soka kifi*.

spearman, n. *mahalbi*, pl. *ma-halba* and *masu-halbi*.

species, n. *iri*, pl. *irare*, *launi*, e.g. they had collected stones of various s. *suka tattara du-watsu na iri dabam dabam*.

speckled, adj. (of birds, etc.) *wake-wake*, see **spotted**.

specks, coll. (spots or dots, e.g. on plumage of birds) *zane*; spec. s. in eyes of blind *tsauriya*; see **spot**.

spectacles, n. (the optical instrument) *minzari**.

spectre, n. *fatalwa*.

speech, n. 1. gen. *magana*, which can be used in all the following senses.

2. (the uttering of words) *fadi*, pl. *fade-fade*, *fada*, *jawabi*, e.g. he would hear my s. *shi kan ji fadata*; until s. be heard (i.e. is ended) *har magana a ji ta*; confused, noisy s. *dumi*.

3. (uttered words and so talk, discourse) *zanche*, *kalam**, *aljama*, *aljima*, *jawabi*.

4. (native language) *hau-sa**, pl. *harata*, *halshe*, *harshe*,

pl. *halshina*, *halussa* (S.), e.g. in the s. of the Fulahs *da halshen Fillani*; he understands the Hausa s. *ya ji maganar Hausa*.

speechless, adj., see **dumb**, **silent**.

speed, n., see **haste**.

speedily, adv., see **quickly**, **soon**.

spell, n. (charm) *magani*, pl. *maganguna* and *magunguna*.

spend, tr. v. *kāshe*, *kāsa*, *kāsa*, *bātas*, (with the idea of waste more or less implied), e.g. he spent much money *ya kāshe kurɗi dayawa*; *aikata da*; to s. time *samu*; he spent one month *ya samu wata guda*.

spew, v. *tofi*, *kurkure*.

sphere, *azurumi**.

spice, hot, n. *yaji*, *chefane* (S.); cf. *kula**; spices coll. *jauwi**; see **pepper**.

spider, n. *gizo*, *girgizo*, *toto*, *tautau*, *rozo*; female s. *koki*; spider's web *sumya*, *shau-shaudo* (S.), *tautauchi*, *yana*; the spider's wife (in stories) *koki*.

spiderwort, *bulasa*.

spike, n., an iron s. *tsinke*, *chinke* (S.), pl. *tsinkai*; also = a little s. of straw; s. for making holes in skin, etc. *tsiko*, pl. *tsikuna*.

spill, v. 1. tr. (to let run over) *tuddas*.

2. intr. *tuda* or *tude*.

spilling, *barbaḍuwa*.

spin, v. 1. tr. (to twist into thread) *zare*, *zari*, *yin kadi*; to s. yarn *sabi**.

2. intr. (to revolve) *kewaye*, *kewayi*, e.g. the top spins *ma-kodi ya kewaye*.

spinach, native s. *alayafu*, *alayapo*.

spindle, n. *mazari*, *kadamin abduga*; a sort of s. made of skin *mataki*; a mud ball on a kind of s. used in winding thread *gululu*.

spine, (backbone) *tsatso*.

spinning, n. *kadi*, *wāḍira**, *wodira**.

spinning round, anything, n. *makodi*, e.g. ball, top, etc.

spinster, n. *gwabruwa*; an old s. *tuzuruwa*.

spirit, n. *ruhu**, (soul of man generally, also as the seat of feelings, etc.) see **soul**, (an immaterial being, a s.) id.; the evil s. *eblis*, *shaitan*, *shaitan*, *shaidane*, *iblis*; an evil s. *aljani*, fem. *aljana*, pl. *aljannu*, *janziri**, *janzari**, *kankama*, *kaura*; evil spirits coll. *jinnu*, also the pl. *rayuka*; (a ghost) see **spectre**; (mind) *zuchiya*,

e.g. tranquillity or happiness of s. *daḍin zuchiya*; spec. terms connected with popular superstitions are: a s. described as having hair hanging down its face and often appearing in trees *dodo*, pl. *dodani*; a s. that renders a man mad or delirious *bori*; evil s. said to kill mother and child at birth *uwayara*; an evil s. supposed to injure tamarind and other trees *doguwa*; an evil s. in form of snake *gajimare*; persons and esp. women possessed by an evil s. *masu-bori* or *masu-boli*.

spiritless, adj. *da karamar zuchiya*.

spit, n. *tsinke*.

spit, v. 1. *tofa*, *tofi*, *fēsa*, *pēsa*, *furji*, *furza*, *kaki*; to s. out *tofi*, *tofar da*, *miyau*, *yau*, *tsalga* (S.), *tsalte*, *tsarta*; to s. out water from the mouth *tsartso*, see **spurt**.

2. see **pierce**.

spite, n. *chegi*, for s. *don chegi*.

spitting, participial n. *fēsawa*, *feshi*, *tofi*, e.g. s. accompanied by s. of blood *fēsawan jini*.

spittle, n. *dalele*, *salabi*, *miyau*, *yau* (K.).

splashing, e.g. of water *bundum-bundum*, *funjum*, *tsin-*

*dum, pinjum, jirwaye**; an exclamation descriptive of *s. tsut, tsulut.*

spleen, n. (the bodily organ) *sefa, saifa*, pl. *saifoji*; (disease of the s., splenitis) *chiwon saifa*; trop. (vexation) *haushi*, e.g. his s. was roused at this *ya ji haushin wannan.*

splendid, adj. (of dress, ornaments, etc.) *naado*, fem. *taado.*

splendour, n. (of dress, etc.) *ādo.*

splenitis, n., see **spleen.**

splinter, n. (e.g. in the skin) *sartse.*

split, n. *tsāga, tsāgi.*

split, tr. v. *tsāga, kēta, firda, farde, datse* (S.), *fāsa*, the last also used of cold, *faskara.*

splitting, 1. participial n. *kētuwa, fasawa, faskari.*

2. adj. *mai-fasawa.*

spoil, 1. tr. v. (to waste, injure) *bāta, bāchi, bāche.*

2. intr. (to be spoiled, wasted, etc.) *bāche*; of fruits, etc. (to go bad, rot) *riḡa* or *ruḡa.*

3. n. and tr. v., see **plunder.**

spoiled, pass. part. *bātache*, fem. *bātachiya*, pl. *bātattu*, *ruḡabḡe*, fem. *ruḡabḡiya*, pl. *ruḡabḡu*; to be s., see **spoil** 2.

spoils, a half share of s. paid

to the leader of an expedition after a raid *hamushi.*

sponge, n., *soso* (K.), *susu* (S.), i.e. the fibrous network of the fruit of a species of gourd, the 'loofah' gourd; anything used as a s. *abin shafe.*

spool, *matari.*

spoon, n. (made of wood) *chokali, koshiya, kwiyaḡa, kuyafa* (S.); a s. used for measuring *madebi*; a large wooden s. *moda*; spoons made from pumpkin rinds pl. *lūddai.*

spoor, *lawali.*

sport, n. (play, diversion) *war-gi*; (mirth, also mirthful contempt) *dariya*, e.g. we made s. of him *mun ba shi dariya*; (of the field, as fowling, hunting) *farauta.*

spot, n. *tabo*, pl. *tabuna, tambo* (S.), *dangole*; a s. or blot, e.g. of ink *dole, kyanda*, pl. *kyandu, zane*, pl. *zane-zane*; (a blemish in an article) *aibi, aibu*, pl. *aibobi, sōfane*, pl. *sofanai*; a s. of grease *maski*; fig. (moral blemish, fault) *aibi, aibu*; (a particular locality) *wuri*, pl. *wurare*; (speckle) *rodi*, pl. *rode-rode.*

spots, having s., adj. *wake-wake.*

spotted, *mai-rodi.*

spout, n. *mazurari*.

sprain, n. *targade*.

spread, tr. v. (e.g. a cloth, a mat) *shimfida*; intr. (to separate, scatter) *watse*, *wache*; to s. out, tr. (esp. used of spreading out goods for sale on a mat) *shimfida*; to s. out (the legs) *tantana*; to s. out wheat to dry *baza*; (to expose to view) *bayāna* or *baiyana*; intr. to s. out or abroad, increase *yado*, *yadu*, *malala*, *nasa*.

spring, n., of water, *idon ruwa*, *maromaro*, *marmaro*, *mar-maru*; the mouth of a s. or well *bakin rijiya*; for other senses see **source**.

spring, intr. v. l. see **jump**.

2. to s. or s. up out of the ground (of seeds, plants) *tsira*, *tsire*, *tsiro*, *chira*; (of water) *balbadi*, *barbadi*.

sprinkle, to *buta*, *bursuna* (K.), *fantsama*.

sprinkling, n. *kurmuwa*.

sprout, n. (of guinea-corn, etc.) *karmāmi*; (of trees) *tofo*, pl. *tofuna*; spec. new sprouts after trees, etc. have been cut down *kankama*; sprouting corn *yabanya*.

sprout, intr. v. l. (to spring up out of the ground) *tsira*, *tsiro*, *tsiri*, see **spring**.

2. of trees and plants (to put forth buds, leaves, etc.) *tofu*, *yin tofo*, *yin foge*, *yin gunda*, e.g. the trees s. *ita-tuwa sun tofu*; the melon sprouts *kabewa tana gunda*.

sprouting, *gauro*, *gyauro*.

spue, v., see **spew**.

spur, n. *kaimi*, pl. *kayame*; s. of a cock *kāfa*.

spur, i.e. to prick with a s. *chāchāka*.

spurs, long riding-boot with, n. *kufita* or *kufuta*, pl. *kufitai*, *kufutai*, *kubutai* (S.), *kufitai* (K.).

spurt, to s. out *tartso*, *tudas*, *fantsama*.

spurting, *tartsatsi*, *tudaswa*.

spy, n. *gāta*, pl. *gataye*, *majewayi*, *magewayi*, pl. *majewayi*.

spy, to s. or s. out *jewayi*, *jewaye*, *leka*, *leki*, *leko*, *yin shigoro*.

spying, n. *dauraro*, *dararo*, *jewaya*, *shigoro*.

square, n., a s. of men *kewanya*.

squash, to (e.g. with the foot) *latse*, *lowatse*.

squat, intr. v., to s. down with legs crossed *kishinkida*, *gi-jirche* (S.); to s. on the ground *tsugunna*.

squatting, n. *tsugum*; (the body resting upon the inside

of the thighs with the feet splayed outwards) *zaman rakumi*; s. with outspread legs *tantāna*.

squeeze, tr. v. *mache, matse, matsa, taushe* (S.), *tausa* (K.), *damfare, tsamki, tattara, rumchi, rumtse*; to s. a lemon, etc. *tatsa, tatse, twatsa, twache*.

squeezed, pass. particip. *taushashe*, fem. *taushashiya*.

squeezing, participial n. *taushewa*; s. through a narrow place *bokoto*.

squint, n. *idon māge*.

squirrel, n. *kusum-bisa*; African flying s. *heran bisa*; the spiny ground-squirrel *kurēge*.

squirt, to *tsurara*.

stable, n. *muri, barga, mai-turke*; and less precise (a place for horses) *shamaki*, pl. *shamakai, shamakoki*.

stable-man, n. *dan muri, barga, birga*, see also **groom**.

stack, a s. of corn *matāra, mataran hatsi*.

staff, n. *sanda*, pl. *sanduna; kulki*, pl. *kulake*.

stagger, v. 1. intr. *magagi* with forms in *na*, e.g. he was struck by a bullet, he staggered and fell *aka halbe shi da bindiga yana magagi ya fadi*.

2. (to confuse, perplex) *dāme, dāma* and pass. to be staggered *damu*.

staggering, n. (e.g. of a dying man) *magagi*.

stain, n. (colouring matter), e.g. a red clay used for staining eyelids, etc. *koya, kowa*; a red vegetable s. for the teeth *kuriya*, see **dye**; (spot, blemish, fault) *aibu, kufa*.

stain, v. (to tinge fabrics, etc. with colouring matter), see **dye**; pass. to be stained (in a wider sense), turn by general terms for 'change' with the appropriate complements, e.g. the field was stained with blood *wurin fada ya sauya ja da jini* or *wurin fada sai jini*; the waters were stained all red *ruwaye sun sauya ja wur*; to s. the face *dambara, dan-dambara*; esp. to s. the face blue *dambara*.

staining, *yanayi*.

stairs, pl. n. (steps) *mahayi, karangama*; see **steps**.

stake, n. *rino, rinu**, *shishike* (S.); a s. in gambling *riko*.

stalk, n. (of plants) *kāra*, pl. *karare, alkājiya, tsirgagiya*; (of corn, etc.) *zangare, zangarniya*, pl. *zangarnu, karmāmi, firchi*; stalks (of

beans, ground-nuts) *harāwa* ; stalks of grass used for horses' food *tattaka* ; corn stalks used by tanners *karandāfi* (S.).

stalk, to s. an animal *raḥe*.

stall, n. 1. (for cattle) *garke*, pl. *garkuna* ; s. (or paddock) *barga*.

2. (a stand in the market) *rumbu*, *rumpa*, pl. *rumfuna*.

stallion, *angarma*, *ingarma* ; mounting of a mare by a s. *nuni*.

stammer, intr. v. *inina*, *inna*.

stammering, n. *ininan halshe*, *kikiniya*.

stamp, n. (seal) *mazubi*, *ma-taushin watika*.

stamp, to s. down *dāḥe*, *tattaka* ; stamping down (e.g. a floor) *dāḥe-dāḥe*.

stand, on which things are exposed for sale, n., see **stall** 2.

stand, intr. v. *tsayi*, *tsaya* or *tsai* which also = to s. up and to s. still, e.g. s. there till I am ready *ka tsayi nan har na yi shiri* ; to cause to s. still *tsaishe* ; I s. upright *na tsaya daidai* ; to s. by or up for (to aid), see **help**.

standard, n. 1. (of proportion, measure), see **measure**.

2. (flag of a king) *tuta*, *tuti*, pl. *tutochi*.

standing, *tsaye*.

star, n. *tamrāro*, *taurāro* (Daura), pl. *tamrāru*, *taurārai*, *tatsuniya*, pl. *tatsuniyoyi* ; spec. the morning s. *gam-zaki* ; a shooting s. *mashin tamraru*.

stare, n. *kallo*, *zuru*.

stare, v. also = to s. at (of curiosity) *yin kallo*, *yin zuru*, e.g. you keep staring at me *ka faye kallona*.

starling, *dokin buntu* ; the glossy s. or grackle *tsakwai-kwaiwa*.

start, n. *sabko*, *safko*.

start, v. 1. intr. (to move suddenly through fear, etc.) *razana* or *razani* ; (of a horse) to s. or s. back *zabura* ; to cause to s. *zaburi* ; (of a restive horse) to s. *tuma*.

2. intr. (to move off, set out) *tashi*, *sabko*, *safko*, *sapko*, *yin sabko*, e.g. he prepared to s. *ya sake tashi* ; tr. (to send off) *tada*, *tayas da*, e.g. I started a messenger *na tada manzo*.

starve, intr. v. (to perish by starvation) *mutu da yunwa*.

state, n. (condition) *zama* and *zamanchi* ; intr. v. to come into a s. *zāma*, *zam* (S.), *zama*, e.g. he came into a s. of distress *ya zama matsiyachi*.

state, v., see **narrate**.

statement, e.g. before a judge
biyaya.

stay, intr. v. *zamna, zauna, sauka*; *wanzu*, which also means to delay; to s. at a place (i.e. to rest) *yin mugāma*; to s. at a place or occupation for a day only *yini*, e.g. there we s. a day *nan mu ke yini daya*; I s. at work the whole day *ina yini aiki*; a s.-at-home (person) *kāfin rijiya*; to s. proceedings *tsaida magana*; to cause to s. *zamnas da, zamshe*.

steal, tr. v. *sache, yin sata, yin swane* (or *sane*); spec. to s. goods *kwache*.

stealing, n. (theft) *sata, bara-wonchi, sane, swane, barauchi*; s. earnest money *chin amāna*; cattle-s. *wāgi**, *wōgi**.

tealth, he went by s. *ya yi sanda*.

tealthily, *sullup*.

tealthy, s. walk as of a thief
sanda.

team, *surachi, tururi*.

team-boat, n., a s.-b. is usually designated by Hausas who have seen one by *jirigin wuta* or *jirigin hayaki*; a locomotive s.-engine *dokin wuta*.

teep, to s. in water *tsīma, tsoma*.

teeping, in water *tsīme, tsīmi*.

stem, n. (of plants) *kara, kare*.
stepchild, *agola*, pl. *agololi, taliyo*.

stepfather, n. *uban rana*.

step-parent, *tālaḡi, taulaḡi*.

steps, n. *mahayi, tākarwa, karangama*; spec. s. formed of mud *mataki*, pl. *matakai*; s. by which to come down from a place *mashidi*; s. placed for mounting a horse *likkafa** and *likkafan doki**.

sterile, adj., see **barren**.

steward, n. (manager) *wakili*; to act as a s. *wakilta*.

stewardship, n. *wakilchi*.

stick, n. *sanda*, pl. *sanduna, kurki, kulki*, pl. *kulake, kuma*; walking s. *kandiri, kwagiri*; (such as is used by a blind man) *jagōra, gwālma*; a s. cut from a tree and in this sense usually fem. *iche* or *itache*; a thin bending s. *tsumanjiya*; a heavy s. *guduma*; a s. carried by porters *loko**; a s. used for stirring soup etc. *muchiya, maburgi, maburkaki* (S.); a crooked s., e.g. one used for pulling down fruit *rorami*; a s. with a bent handle *pauma*.

stick, v. 1. tr. (to pierce) *soka, soke* or *soki*.

2. intr. to stick fast (e.g. in a narrow passage) *yin*

barankam; also s. to or together *lazumta*, *lazumche*, *kakkafe*, *like*, *liki*, *nana*, see **adhere, cleave to**.

stickiness, *yauki*, *yapki*, *yabki*.

stiff, to be, intr. v. *gage*, *gaga*, *sankare*, *sandare*, *kāge*, *sāge*; of skins etc. *kandare* (K.), *kangare* (K.), *kangare* (S.).

still, to be, intr. v. *kawaita*, pass. impersonal, be still! *a kawaita*.

still-born, *haifuwa bari*.

stilt, black-winged s. *takabādo*, *takabarbado* (S.).

stilts, *kadarko**.

sting, tr. v. *halbi*, *harbi*, *sāra*, *tāba*, *ḥalle*, *ḥalla*.

stinginess, n. *kalmashen zu-chiya*, *rowa*, *tsimi*.

sting-ray (Trygon), *kunāmar ruwa*.

stingy, adj. *da rowa*, *mai-rowa*, *bahili**.

stink, n. *ḍoyi*, *ḍwai*, *wari*; see **smell**.

stink, intr. v., e.g. they s. *sunā ḍoyi*.

stinking, to become, intr. v. *zama wari*.

stir, v. 1. tr. (for the purpose of mixing) *ruḍa*; to s. about in a pot while cooking *talga*, *talgi*, *tūka*.

2. intr. (to move oneself) *yin motsi*.

stirrup, n. *likkafa*; an iron s. *kebe**; leather cords by which the s. hangs *kinami*; brass stirrups *zarnawi*.

stock, n. (seed, kind, tribe) *iri*, pl. *irare*.

stockade, *kāfi*, *kahi* (S.).

stocks, e.g. a log to which a recaptured slave is fastened *туру*.

stolen, *kwachache*; a receiver of s. property *ḍan tugu*.

stomach, *tumbi*, pl. *tumbuna*.

stone, n. *dutsi*, *duchi* (S.), pl. *duwatsu* and *duwarwatsi**, *pa* (S.), pl. *pāni*; a flat s. for rolling rice on *magurji*; a precious s. *yakutu**; a white s. *zaura**, *idon zaura*; a s. ball *makodi*; slinging a s. *majaujarwa*, *majajaiwa*; a small s. *ḥurguje* (S.); a stony plain *hamāda**; a s. in the path *kauwa**.

stones, n. in coll. sense, small s. *tarki**, *tsākuwa*; s. collected together, e.g. round a well *marmara*; s. used as a support *magirkai**.

stool, n. *kujera*.

stoop, intr. v. *sunkwiya*, *sun-kuya*, *tsugunna*; one who stoops *ḍukau*.

stop, full, n. *kora*.

stop, v. 1. tr. (to make or cause to stand still) *tsaishe*,

kwāḃe, kwāḃa, kwāḃo, tāre, tāra; s. it with your hand *tāre shi da hannu*; to s. up a hole *like, toshe*.

2. intr. (e.g. of one walking, running, etc.) *tsayi, tsaya* or *tsai*; (to come to an end) id., e.g. at that point it stopped *daga nan ya tsaya*; (of a horse etc.) *zame*.

3. to delay *dāḃe*.

4. to s. up *dwade*; stop thief! *ku tāre ku tāre*; (to stay, stay at, etc.) see **stay**.
tore, n. 1. (a supply laid up) *ajiya*; a large s. of anything *tuli, jibgi*.

2. (a place for storing things) *rumbu, rufogo, gun-sakawa*.

tore, tr. v., also to s. up *aje*; to s. up goods *jibga*; to s. up treasure *tarkache*.

tore-room, n. *tasku*, pl. *taskaki*, see **store** 2.

torey, upper, in a house, n. *kandaki*, pl. *kandakuna, soro, tsoro*.

oring grain, a chamber for, n. *rafoniya*, pl. *rafoni*; a large barn for s. g. *rufogo*, see **store** 2.

ork, n., black s. *kasheri, mai-jikka*; the marabout s. *borin-tumki, babba da jikka*; a tall

red and white s. *tsagagi*; the saddle-billed s. or Jabiru, *jahirma*; rosy s. or African wood-ibis *tsagagi*; sacred ibis *jinjimi*; Hadadah ibis *rara*.

storm, n. *hādari*, pl. *hādara*; a whirling dust s. *guguwa, holoko, huluku*; a heavy rain s. or rain cloud *zirnaniya* or *zurnaniya*.

story, n. *kariya**, *tatsuniya*, pl. *tatsuniyoyi* (latter also = a s. told at night, a fireside s.), *gātana, riwaya* (S.), *aljama, aljima*; an untrue s. *kariya, fira* or *hira**; the telling of a s. *riyaya*; a s. (told as an allegory) *almara*.

stout, adj. 1. (of persons = fat, of things = thick) *da kabri, da kauri*.

2. see **brave**.

stove, n. *murufu, madafi*.

stow, tr. v. (to lay up) *aje*.

straight, adj. *sosai, daidai**, e.g. they followed the s. path *sun bi hanya sosai*.

strain, tr. v. (to filter) *rare, tache*; to s. out *rare, tarāre, tarāro*.

strainer, n. *marari, marare*.

straining, n., a calabash with holes for s. *rariya*.

strand, e.g. of rope *nunki, ninki, riḃe*.

strange, 1. (foreign) *baḃo, fem.*

baḳuwa, pl. *baḳuna*, *baḳi* and *baḳokuna*.

2. (odd, extraordinary) *baḳo*; this notion is also expressed by the n. *a'lamari* (matter) in the pregnant sense of 'a s. matter,' e.g. what a s. thing! *a'lamaringa*; this s. war *wannan a'lamarin yaḳi*.

strangeness, n. *baḳonchi*, *baḳontaka*.

stranger, n. *baḳo*, fem. *baḳuwa*, pl. *baḳuna*, *baḳi* and *baḳokuna*, *haḍāka*, pl. *haḍāku*, *ba-ture*; to act as a s. *yin baḳonchi* or *yin baḳontaka*; service done to a s. *baḳonchi*, *baḳontaka*.

strangle, tr. v. *shaki*, *shāḳe*, *maḳure*.

strap, tied to bit, n. *kamazuru*.

stratagem, n. *wayo*, *hila*, *fila*, *yauḍara*, *idon-yaḳi*; to use s. *gama* with *wayo* or *kai*.

straw, n. *tsaiwa*; s. hat *mala-fa*, *malfa*, pl. *malafuna* and *malafai*, *garumfa*, *garunfa*.

stream, n., small running s. *malala*; a fast flowing s. *ḳorama*; the hollow of a s. *kwazazzabo*.

street, n. *hanya*, pl. *hanyoyi*, see *way*.

strength, n. (inherent power or firmness) *ḳarfi*, *ḳarifi*,

*ḳwāri**; (power over something else) *iko*, pl. *ikoki*; these terms differ as absolute and relative, e.g. s. of mind *ḳarifiṇ zuchiya*; he surpassed him in s. *ya fi shi ḳarifi*; we do this by the s. of a charm *muna yin haka da ikon magani*, *kambi**; to exceed in s. *gāḡara*.

strengthen, tr. v. *ḳarfafa*.

stretch, forth, tr. v. *mīḳa*, *mīke*; to s. a bow-string *tanka*; intr. to be stretched forth or out *mīḳu*; to s. out the hand *zurma*; to be stretched out (used of a dog) *lake* (S.); stretching one's limbs sleepily on waking *magagin barchi*.

stride, *chirawa*; to s. *yin chirawa*, *mīke tsawo*.

strife, n. *fāḍa*, *fama*; (s. of tongues, contention) *haya niya*, *gardama*.

strike, tr. v. *māra*, see *beat* and the verbs given under **blow** n.; to s. (and so bruise smash) *falfasa*, *bubbuga*, *ribḍe*, *rifile*, *rubḍe*; to s. a tent *naḍ laima*; to s. with the fist *dan ḳwasa*, *dankwashe*; to s. a drum *buga*, *kāḍa*, *ḳwanḳwasa*.

striking, *taḅi*; s. repeatedly participial n. *marmarawa būga-būga*.

string, n. *igiya*, pl. *igoyi* and *igiyoyi*; *siliya*, pl. *siliyu* or *siliyoyi*; *wadari*, pl. *wadura*; spec. s. for tying up trousers *mazargi*, *zariya*; strong white s. made of flax *kirtani*.

strip, n., of cloth *kwariya*; strips of black leather *kwaro*; to cut into strips *rede*.

strip, tr. v. *kware*, *kwari*, *fige*; to s. (skin of fruits, etc.) *hāre*, *hāra*; to s. leaves from a stalk *kwalde*; to s. off garments *tube riguna*, *debe riguna*.

stripe, n. (blow) fig. *sanda*.

stripe, n. (in cloth, blue) *saki*, *swaki*; stripes (e.g. on a bird, etc.) *zane*; having stripes, adj. *wake-wake*; to draw stripes *zana*, *zani*.

striped, (cloth) *saki-saki*.

strive, intr. v., see **attempt**.

stroke, n. *mari*, pl. *maremare*; see also **blow**.

stroke, to, with the hand *lailaya*, *sāba*.

strokes, n., see **lines**.

strong, adj. *mai-ḡarifi*, pl. *masu-ḡarifi*, *da ḡarifi*, *ḡodago*, *da gazau*, *da tauri*, *ishashe*, fem. *ishashiya*, pl. *ishashu*; very s. *ḡaḡḡarifa*; to be s. *yin ḡwāri*; he is stronger than I *ya buwaye ni*; I am stronger than you *na bu-*

waye ka; spec. s. in war *gargami*, *ḡarḡami*; very s. (epithet of lion) *ḡadanga*; a s. man *ḡodago*, *ḡwarzo*, pl. *ḡwaraje*; to be s. *bunḡāsa*; s. slave *ḡato*, fem. *ḡatuwa*, pl. *ḡatta*.

strongly, adv. *da ḡarifi*.

strophanthus, (used for poisoning arrows) *kwankwani*.

strutting, *tāḡama*; (of a woman) *made*.

stubble, n. *kututtura*, *kututture*, *kotuttura*; the s. of guinea-corn, wheat, etc. *tu-shiya*.

stubborn, adj. *mai-kinji*, pl. *masu-kinji*, *dataurinzuchiya*, *da tsayaya*.

stubbornness, n. *tauri*, *taurin zuchiya*, *tsayaya*.

study, v. (to endeavour diligently) *yin anniya*, e.g. s. to follow the true path *ku yi anniya ku bi hanyar ḡaskiya*.

stumble, intr. v. *tuntsure*, *yin tuntube*, *yin tangadi*; to s. against a stone *kāro da dutsi*.

stumbling, n. *sansarifa*, *sas-sarifa*, *shekarakki**, *tangadi* (K.), *tuntube*.

stump, n., of tree *gutsun itache*, *gatsa*, *ḡori*, *ḡwabri*, *gungume*, pl. *gumagumai*, *guntu*, *kututtura*, *kotuttura*; a small

s. *tsatsage*; s. of a leg or arm *dungu*.

stupid, adj. (wanting in sense) *maras-hankali*.

stutter, intr. v. *i'ina*.

stuttering, n. *i'inar halshe*.

sty, n., in the eye *hazbiya*, *bununuwa*.

subdue, tr. v. (to conquer, e.g. a people) *chi*.

subject, n. (matter) *tada*, pl. *tadodi*, e.g. a s. of enquiry *tadat tambaya*.

subject to, to be, intr. v. (to be characteristically prone to) turn by means of *tarka*, e.g. he is s. to terror *ya tarka razana*, see **character**.

submission, putting earth on the head as a sign of *huruwa*.

submissive, adj. *mai-tankwasa*.

submissiveness, n. *tankwasa*.

submit, intr. v., e.g. I s. myself *na tankwasa kaina*.

subscription, (e.g. a contribution of food) *tarbache*.

subside, intr. v. (e.g. of water) *kāfe*, *wuche*, *fuche*; (gen. to abate, lessen) *rage*, *ragi*, *ragu*.

substitute for something, n. *maimako*, *maimaki*, *madadi*, *madadin**.

suburb, n. *unguwa*, *anguwa*, pl. *unguwai*, *ungwanai*, *un-gunnai*.

succeed, intr. v. 1. (to be suc-

cessful) *iyas*, *iyas da*, *iyar da*, *kārasa*, *yin zama*; impers. it succeeds *ya kama*, *ya yi*; to s. (as heir) *gāda*, *gāji* or *gāje*.

2. to s. (i.e. to take the place of another) *maya*, *mayi*; to be succeeded by *gada da*.

success, *dache**; (in war), n. *nāsara* and *nasarchi*; to obtain s. (in war) *yin nāsara*, *katari*.

successor, *mamayi*.

such, demonstr. adj. 1. (like that) e.g. we cannot do s. a thing *ba mu iya yin abu kaza*.

2. (that referred to, the naming of which is avoided by narrator), e.g. ho! (or here!) s. a one *ya ka mutum kaza*; take this money to s. and s. persons *ku tafi da kurḍin nan ga mutane kaza da kaza*.

suck, tr. v. *tsotsa*, *tsotse*, *sha*; to s. a lime or lemon *sha lemu*; (of infants) *sha nono*; to s. in or up (e.g. as a sponge water), id.

sucked, *tsotsatse*; a s. lime *tsotsatsel lemu*.

sucking, *tsotso*.

suckle, tr. v. (to give suck to) *goyo*, *yin goyo*, *ba nono*.

Sudan, pr. n. *Sudan*.

sudd, (floating grass) *tsamba*, *ḍamba*.

sudden, adj., s. death *sauḱin*.

mutuwa; s. action is sometimes expressed by *wuf*, e.g. he gave a s. jump *ya yi wuf*; see **quick**.

suddenly, adv. *da sauki*, *bum*, *mamaye*, *mame*.

suffer, v. 1. tr. (to endure) *jimri*; (to allow) *bari*, *bar*, e.g. s. me to enter *bar ni in shiga*, phr. s. me *kiyaye ni*.

2. intr. (to undergo pain or distress) *sha wahala*.

suffice, v. *isa* and *ishe*.

sufficient, adj. *ishashe*, fem. *ishashiya*, pl. *ishashu*, also expressed by appending the impers. *ya isa* or *ya ishe*, e.g. we have s. bread *muna da gurasu (ya isa or) ya ishe mu*; exclamatory phr. s. *bus*, which = say no more!; to be s., see **prec**.

suffocate, **suffocation**, v. and n., see **choke**, **choking**.

sugar, *sukur**, *takanda**.

sugar-cane, n. *takanda*, *rake*, *arakke* (S.), *karan sariki*.

suicide, *kiskansa* (S.), *kaskansa* (K.).

suit, n. (claim at law) *kara*, q.v.; to make or bring a s. *kara* and *kai kara*.

suit, v. *gamshe*, *gama*, e.g. it suits me *ya gamshe ni*; this dress does not s. me *riyan nan ba ta karfe ni*.

suitable, adj. *daidai*.

suitor, *mai-neman aure*.

sulk, to *dakile*.

sulphur, *fara wuta*, *kibrit**.

sum, n. (aggregate of numbers) *kida* or *kididdiga*; (of a statement), see **substance**.

summit, n. *kai*, *kololuwa*, *tsololuwa*, *bisa*; s. of hill *kan tudu*, *tuluwa* (K.).

summon, tr. v. *kira*, *kiraya* or *kiraye*; to s. to where the speaker is *kirawo*.

sun, n. fem. *rana*, *ra*, pl. *ra-nuka**; the s. rose *rana (ta fita or) ta tashi*; the s. set *rana ta fadi*, the s. is about to set *rana ta kusa faduwa*; heat of the s. *gumi*.

sunbird, *sha kauchi*; ruddy-throated s. *janbarde*.

Sunday, n. *lahadi*, *ladi*.

sunder, tr. v., see **divide**.

sunken eyes, one with, adj. and n. *mai-kwarmi**.

sunrise, time of, n. *tasuwal hantsi*; cf. it is s. *rana ta fita chim*.

sunset, n. *futuru*, *faduwar* (or *fuduwar*) *rana*.

sunstroke, n. *jiri*.

superfluity, n. *wanji*.

superior, adj. *mafifichi*, pl. *mafifita*; this is s. to that *wannun mafifichi daga wanchan*; to express 'this thing

or this method is s.' use the impers. *gara haka*, or *gwama haka*, lit. it is better so, see also **surpass**.

superiority, *fiyāya*, *fiyāye*.

supplicate, tr. v. (to pray earnestly) *bāra*, *kāma kafa*.

support, n. *madogara*, *makari*, *tankari*; the last also fig., e.g. a king is the s. of the world *sariki shi ne tankarin duniya*; spec. (pole of house) *gimshiki*; he called for s. *ya buga gaya*; see also **aid**, **assistance**, **help**.

support, tr. v. (e.g. as a pole supports a tent) *tōkāra*, *tan-kare*; spec. to s. anything with the hand spread out *tallaba*; to s. oneself with the palm of the hand *dafa*.

suppose, v. *zāto*, *zachi*, *zache*, *tamaha*, *kintata*.

supposition, *wasuwasi*.

sure, adj., see **trustworthy**.

sure, to be or make, v. *tabbata*, *tabbache*; I am s. *na tabbata*.

surely, adv. (certainly) *tabbas*, *ashe*, *da gaskiya*, *da gaske*, *gaske*, *hakika*, *hakika*; s. is also idiomatically expressed by the particle *sai* as well as the v. *tabbata*, e.g. the people will s. rise *mutane sai su tashi*; he is s. there

ya tabbata nan; you may s. assume that he is an infidel *ku tabbata kafiri ne*.

surety for a debt, n. *lamuni*; (a person who is s.) *mai-lamuni*; to be or become s. *lamunta*, *lamunche*; with acc., e.g. we became s. for the merchant *muka lamunta falke*.

surfeit, *ginsa*; to cause s. *ginshe*.

surging, n., e.g. s. backwards and forwards in battle *dau-kakkeniya*.

surpass, tr. v. *fi*, *yin fifiko*, *waye* (S.), *tsere*, *dada*, e.g. the strength of elephants surpasses that of camels *kari-fin giwaye ya fi na rakumma*; this surpasses that *wannan ya dadi wanchan*; to s. anyone at his trade or profession *shashe*.

surpassing, n. *fi*, pl. *fiye-fiye*, *fifiko*.

surpassing, adj. *mafi*.

surrender, tr. v. (to give up, resign) *sallame*.

surround, tr. v. *kewaye*, *ke-wayi*, *kewayo*.

survivor, the sole s. of a family *barau*.

suspect, to *tuhuma*.

suspend, tr. v. *rataya*, *yin rataya*.

suspicion, n. *matsina**, *tuhuma*.

sustain, tr. v., see **support**.

swagger, to *yin tākama*.

swaggering, n. *rangwada* (S.), *rangaji* (K.), *tākama*, *yanga*, *made*; (used of a woman) *alfarma*, *manti*, *yatsuna*.

swallow, n. *tsaitsewa*, *tsaijewa*, *tsetsewa*, *chechewa*, *chichiya*; the large mosque s. *kwar-dodo*; the small mosque s. *mashirare*, *masherera*.

swallow, tr. v. *hade*, *hadiye*; swallowing *hadiya*; the act of trying to s. *kwāra*.

swamp, n. *kāfo*, *kafau* (S.), *tapki*.

sway to and fro, intr. v. *rangaji* (K.), *rangwada* (S.).

swear, intr. v. *rantse*, *ranche*, *yin rantsuwa*, *sāḅa*, *sāḅi*, e.g. I swear by God *na rantse da Allah*.

sweat, n. and intr. v.; see **perspiration**, **perspire**.

sweep, tr. v. *shara* or *share*, *yin shara*.

sweeping, participial n. *shara*.

sweet, adj. (to the taste) *da zaki*, *tutushi*, (nice, agreeable, grateful to any sense or feeling) *da dadi*.

sweetly, adv. *da dadi*, e.g. the bird sings s. *tsuntsuwa tana waka da dadi*.

sweetmeat, n. *allewa*, *alewa*; spec. a s. made from the *aya* reed *dakuwa*.

sweetness, n. (taste) *zaki*, *dadi*, the last gen. and of taste too, e.g. thou shalt taste of its s. *za ka sha dadi nata*.

swell, intr. v. 1. *kumbura* or *kumbure*; (of a sore, etc.) *kaba*.

2. fig. (to be inflated with pride, etc.) *kumbura*, e.g. thou swellest with pride because it is said thou excellest all *kana kumburawa wai ka fi kowa*; the same may be expressed by means of *chichika* (lit. be filled with).

swelling, *kumburi*, *kumburiya*; (with sickness) *kabuwa*; a s. caused by guinea-worm *hangara*; a s. on the back *doro*; a slight s. on the body or itch *kazuwa*, *gūda* (S.); a s. in front of a man's body (elephantiasis) *gugi*; a s. on hand or foot *kakari*; a s. on the foot *kurkushe*; a s. on the throat *hangum**; cf. also *kwiḱwi*, *kullutu*.

swept, pass. part. *shararre*, fem. *shararra*, pl. *shararru*.

swim, intr. v. *iwu*, *yin iyo*,

futo, yin *linkāya*; I can s.
na iya ruwa.

swimmer, an expert *gwanin ruwa*.

swimming, n. *iyō, kurme, linkāya, ninkāya*.

swindler, n. *mai-zambachi* or *mai-zambata, mai-zamba*.

swine, n. (domestic) *gursunu*, see **pig**.

swing to and fro, tr. *reta*, intr. *wo, lilo*.

swinging, n. *reto, shillo*.

switch, n. (i.e. one for driving away flies, made from cow's or horse's tail) *izga, tsagiya* (S.).

swoop, (e.g. of a hawk) *bara masc., sura*.

swoop, to *kawo sura*.

sword, n. *takobi*, pl. *takubba, kansākali*; spec. a s. with a broad blade *findi*; a s. with a double sharp edge *tagomas, tagomashi, tamga, tamogashi*; s. with one cutting edge *ta-malaulo*; a cheap, roughly made s. *tāma*; a rasp for sharpening s. *magagari*; to draw a s. *zare, zware, zari, takobi*; a curved s. worn by Arabs *bisalami**; a wooden s. *pauma*.

sword-sling, n. *hamila*.

synonym, *sauwi*.

syphilis, n. *chiwutan birni, tunjere, kaba, kabuwa, man-*

gyau, mingyau, manjau (K.), *maigyau* (S.), *chusayi* (K.); a medicine for s. *riga kafi*.

syrup, n. *madya**.

table, n. *rumfa, rumpa*, pl. *rum-puna* or *rumfuna, maida**.

taciturn, adj. (habitually silent) turn by *tarka* q.v., e.g. he is t. *ya tarka* (yin *kurum, yin shiru, kurum* or) *shiru*.

tackle, n. (implements, instruments, apparatus) *kaya*, pl. *kayayeki* or *kayayaki*.

tail, n. *wutsiya*; cow's or horse's t. used as a switch *izga, tsagiya* (S.).

tailor, n. *maḍumki*, fem. *ma-ḍumkiya*, pl. *maḍumkai*.

take, tr. v. gen. (seize, lay hold of) *kama, samu, ḍauka, ḍauki, ḍoka, ḍau* or *ḍo, karḇa, karḇi, amshi, make*; to t. (of an object running away, about to escape or resist) *kama*; (with the added notion of reaching, overtaking, finding, *samu*; (of taking or picking up an object from the ground, a table, shelf, etc.) *ḍauka, ḍoka, chāfa*; to t. up and carry away *kwashe*; to t. and bring *kicaso*; (of receiving) *karḇa* and especially as an imperative *karḇo* q.v., also

ūngo, ingo (S.); to t. back *tumbe*; to t. (conduct, guide) *kai*; to t. (of game, fish) *kama*; (of road, way) *id.*, e.g. he took his road (pursued his journey) *ya kama hanya*; (of medicine) if liquid *sha* and *hadē*, if solid *hadē*; cf. the fire caught *wuta ta kama*; t. and bring *tariyo**, *kankamo*; to t. a thing to *gabata da*; to t. away *kai, kawa, kauda, kaushe, kawas, kawas da, jīshe, fige* or *figi, dauka, doka, gushe, jidadda, tafi da*, e.g. he took it away *ya tafi da shi*; *fita da, fishe*; to t. away by force *kwache* or *kwāshe, amshe*; to t. down (gen.) *shida* or *shide, shido*; (a tent) *nade*; to t. for oneself *dauko*; to t. hold of *dauka* or *doka*; to t. in (to let or bring in) *shigas da*; to t. off *debe* or *debo, daibo, fuda, fitas da, fisge, fizge* or *fusge*; (garments) *tube*; to t. off garments as sign of grief *takaba*; to t. off a load, etc. *zubda*; to t. out *fidda, fitar da, fitas, fitas da, dēbe, dēbo, dība* and *daibo, fisge, fizge, fusge, tsami*; t. up and bring it here! *dēbo*; to t. a little of *gutsura*; to

t. to oneself *karbo*; to t. up *dauka* or *doka*; to t. up with hand or spoon *marā*; to t. a handful *dimtso*; to t. care, heed or notice of *tuna da, kula da*; (in proclamations 't. notice that') *jī, jiya, saurara, sorara*; he was 'taken in' *banza ta shashe shi*.

taking away, participial n. *karḡauwa, amshewa*.

tale, n. (story) *tatsuniya*, pl. *tatsuniyoyi, riwaya*; to tell a t. *riya*; (of fiction, unreal or false t.) *karīya**, *fira* or *hira*, see **story**.

talebearing, *annamimi, annamimanchi*; telling tales against anyone *kwarmāto*.

talent, n., see **ability 2**.

talk, n. (= conversation, mutual discourse) *zanche* or *zanchi, batu, roshi*, and in a less precise sense *magana*; loud t. *dumi*, see **talking**.

talk, v. (converse) *zanche, tanka* or *tamka*, the first with forms in *na* or with *yi*, e.g. I am talking with my friends *ina zanche* (or *ina yin zanche*) *da abokaina, zantawa* with forms in *na, yin batu, yin magana*, e.g. we talk in Hausa *muna yin maganar Hausa*; he talks nonsense

shina magana barkatai; (pallaver) *al'amari**.

talkative, very, adj. *mai-garaje** (S.).

talkativeness, *saniya**, *sururi* (S.), *surutu* (K.).

talking, participial n. (conversing) *fadi*, *fade-fade*, *kuchi*, pl. *kuche-kuche*, *zantawa*; much t. *tankiya*; noise of angry or loud t. *hargowa*, *haya-haya*.

tall, adj. *dogo*, fem. *doguwa*, pl. *dogaye*, *zarau*, pl. *zara-zara*; the comparative taller and superlative tallest are expr. by *fi*, cf. H. Gr. pp. 75, 76; a t. thin man *yankare*.

tallness, n. *tsawo*.

talon, n. *akaifa*; spec. inside of a bird's t. *dunduniya*.

tamarind tree, n. *tsamiya*.

tame, adj. (subdued, domesticated), no general term, the distinction between t. and wild species being sometimes expressed by different words, e.g. t. swine *gursunu* opp. to *hanzir* and *gyado*; t. dog *kare* and *karen gida*; t. animals *bisashen gida*.

tame, to *lele*; the hyena cannot be tamed *kura ba ta kiyayuwu*.

tameness, n. (easy disposition, want of spirit) *lalafanchi*.

tan, tr. v. *jemi*, *jima*, *shema*, *shima*, *tuje**.

tank, n., see *cistern*.

tanner, n. *majemi*, pl. *majema*, *mashemi*.

tanning, a tree used for, n. *bagaruwa*, *gabaruwa*, *patako*, *sāri*.

tap, to (e.g. a pot) *kwankwasa*.

tapeworm, *tsila*, *tamza*, *danda-chiki*.

tarry, intr. v. 1. (to stay) *zamna*, e.g. we tarried in Timbuctoo three months *mun zamna chikin Tumbutu wata uku*.

2. t. for (to wait for) *jira* and *jirache*.

3. (to delay) *yin yauchi*.

task, n. *al'amari*, and in a general sense *aiki*.

tassel, *tuntu*.

taste, tr. v. 1. (to try the flavour of) *dandāna* and *dandāni*, e.g. have you ever tasted pepper? *kun tāba dandāna barkono?*

2. fig. (to experience) *sha*, e.g. thou shalt taste its sweetness *za ka sha dadi nata*; he tasted trouble *ya sha wahala*.

taste, n. *dandāna*.

tasteless, adj. *lāmi* and *da lāmi*, *da babu zaḳi*.

taster, n. *maḍandani*.

tasty, adj. (of food, etc., nice to taste) *da dadi, da zaki*.

tattoo, to *kaskasta, shaushauta*.

tattoo marks, *akanza*, see under **marks**.

taut, *tam, tamau-tamau*.

tax, n. *humushi, haraji*; spec. a t. paid on leaving a country *garama, fito*; the latter also = a t. which used to be paid to the king in the Kano market when buying a slave; a caravan t. *fäto*; a t. on cows *jängali*; a t. on an inheritance *tirka*; see **taxes**.

tax, to *tirkata*.

tax-collector, n. *mai-karḥar garama*.

taxes, n. gen. *kurḍin kasa, jinga*; to pay t. *yin jinga*.

teach, tr. v. *koya ma, bada koyo, karantas da, karantasa, karantashe, almajirtad da, sanas da* or *sanda**.

teacher, n. *mai-koya, mai-foro, mafori, shaihu**.

teaching, n. (the act of teaching) *koyawa*; (doctrine) *koya*.

teal, the whistling t. *jalili, kirinjijiya*, the latter also = the African tree duck; a species of t. *kwarra* (S.).

tear, n. (also coll. = tears) *hawaye*; with tears *da hawaye*; to shed tears *yin hawaye*.

tear, n. (rent in clothes, etc.) *yaguwa, ḍan ḥarki*.

tear, tr. v. (clothes, paper, etc.) *yaya, yage, tsāga, tsāge, tsagagge, chage, keta, katsa, katse, keche, kiche, murtsuka, ḥarke, ḥarka, karantsaye*; to t. out *tona* and *tone*; to t. to pieces *tsatsaga, fatattake*; to t. up *chichira*.

tearing, n., e.g. of a gown, *ḥarkuwa, karantseyi, ketuwa, tsāga*.

tease, to *dāme, dāma*.

tease, a *mai-fitina, mai-ta'adi*.

teeth, n., see **tooth**.

tell, tr. v. (to inform, also to command) *fūḍa* or *fāḍi, furta**.

temerity, *gadauniya*.

temper, n. (disposition) *hāli*, pl. *hālaye*; evil t. *hālin muḡu*; (irritation, passion) *hawshi, kumchin zuchiya*, e.g. he is in a bad t. with you *shina jin haushinka*.

tempest, n. *hadari, zirnaniya*; see **storm**.

temple, n. (a place of worship) *masallachi*, pl. *masallatai*.

tempt, tr. v. 1. (to test or put to trial) *yin jaraba*.

2. (in bad sense, to allure, mislead) *rude*.

temptation, n. (trial) *jaraba*.

tempter, n. *marude* or *mai-rude*, pl. *maruda*.

ten, card. num. *goma*, pl. *gomiya*; the latter is sometimes used to express multiples of t., e.g. *gomiya uku*.

tenant, *mai-äro*.

tend, tr. v. (to watch cattle) *kiwo*.

tender, adj. (soft, in a material sense) *da tapshi* (*tabshi* or *tafshi*); to be or to make t. *yin tapshi*; the t. leaf *danye* or *danyi*, pl. *danyoyi*.

tendon of Achilles, *ägara*; t. of foot *matsarbaje* (S.).

tent, n. *lema*, *laima*, *bukka*, pl. *bukkōki*; to pitch a t. *kafa lema*; to take down a t. *nāde lema*; spec. t. of skins or leather only *alfarwa*, pl. *alfaruwa*.

tenth, n. of number, 1. (one part of ten) *ūshuri*.

2. (one t. devoted to religious purposes, alms) *zakka*.

tenth, adj. *na-goma*, fem. *ta-goma*.

tentpole, n. *tankari*; *shika-shiki*, pl. *shikashikai*.

terebinth, n. *gwinki*.

term, n. 1. (limit, end, boundary) *iyaka*.

2. (the time a thing lasts) *zamani*.

termites, (i.e. white ants) n. *gāra* (also used as coll.), pl. *gārani*, *shinge*.

terms, n. pl. (conditions, stipulations) *sharḍi*, *shartu*, *sharatsa**.

terrify, tr. v. *tsorata*, *bada tsoro*, *burga*.

terror, n. 1. abstr. (the emotion) *tsoro*, *tsantsanta*, *matsorachi*, *razāni*.

2. concr. (an object of t.) *abin tsoro*.

test, n. *jaraba*.

test, tr. v. *dandana*, *dandani*; spec. to t. anything by smelling it *sunsuna*; to t. the weight of a load *jijiga*.

testament, (with) *wasichi**.

testator, *wasiya**.

testicles, *gwaiwa*, *marena*, *tsugau*, *tsugwaigwai*.

testimony, n. *shaida*, pl. *shaidai* and *shaidodi*; to adduce t. *kai* (and *kaŋo*) *shaida* which also = to bear t., as do *shaida* and *yin shaida*, e.g. he bore or gave t. *ya shaida* or *ya yi shaida*.

tether, to tie with a long t. *talala*.

thank, tr. v. *goda*, *gode*, *barka*, *gaida*, *gaishe*, *yin albarka*, *sa albarka*; 'thank you' *na gode ma ka* or *godiya*; 'no thank you' *albarka*.

thanks, n. pl. *godiya*; expressions for to give t. are: 1. (to God) *gode*, and with *yi* or pres. forms *godiya* followed by *ma*, *ga* or *zuwa ga*, *shukra*.

2. (to men) *gode*, *yaba*; for the Engl. phrase 'thanks' cf. prec.

that, 1. demonstr. pron. pointing out remote object *wan-chan*, fem. *wachan*, pl. (= those) *wadanchan*; an emphatic form = t. one *wan-chananka*; the following = those as well as t. *chan*, *chana* or (in written Hausa) *chan-anka*, e.g. t. lion *zaki chan*; *nan* is also employed in this sense, e.g. t. business *abin nan*.

2. rel. pron., see under **who**.

3. conj. t. (in order t.), t. not (in order t. not), see **order 3**.

4. Engl. t., as a conjunctive particle, pointing out one sentence or clause as logically the object of another, is unrepresented in Hausa, which expresses such a connection, in nearly every case, by simply placing the dependent after the principal sentence. This is so with

verbs of asserting, knowing, perceiving, judging, wishing, commanding, e.g. this woman says t. she will not go on *machen nan ta che ba za ta tafiya ba*; I said to them t. I did not perceive t. I had been struck by a shot *na faɗi ma su ban sani ba aka halbe ni da bindiga*; I desire t. you give me my money *ina so ka ba ni kurdina*; he ordered t. they should be fettered *ya hakumche a sa ma su gigar*. In the same way may be expressed a consequence, e.g. he terrified him (so) t. he fell down *ya tsorata shi ya faɗi a ƙas*; he beat it t. it died *ya yi ma ta bulala ta mutu*; similarly verbs of causing and the like may govern a clause, which takes the emphatic pronouns, expressing the effect, e.g. I will make him run (= I will cause t. he run) *ni sa shi shi gudu*; permit t. I depart *bar ni in tafi*.

That, used after to say, assert etc. *chewa*, this use is however very limited, cf. *dominchewa*.

thatch, grass used for, n. *bunu*, pl. *bunai*.

thatch, to, with grass *baibaya*,

bebeya, *yin jinka*, *yin kan-dama*.

thatched roof, n. *tanka*, *jinka*.

thatching, a leaf used for, n.

fitta; millet stalks used for t. *maiwa*; a grass rope used in t. *jiniya*.

the (definite article), -n, e.g. where is the woman? *ina machen?*

theatre, n. *gidan wasa**.

thee, pers. pron., see **thou**.

theft, n. *sata*, *sani* or *swane*, *wallo**.

their, possess. pron. suffixed -su, -nsu, e.g. t. town *garinsu*; t. wives *matayensu*; separate, if the object possessed is masc. *nasu*, if fem. *tasu*.

them, pers. pron. suffixed to verbs and prepositions as object, e.g. he destroyed t. *yahal-laka su*; to t. *ma su*, *gare su*.

then, adv. (at that time) *sa'an nan*, *lokachin nan*, *yanda*, *yawan da*, *yayin da*, *yaanan*; (t. and not till t. or and t.) *kana**, *kan**, *kanda**, e.g. do my work (first) and t. do your own *ka yi aikina kana ka yi naka*; (in that case, in its weakest sense) *fa*, *mana*, e.g. come, t. *zo mana*.

thence, adv. *dāga chan*.

there, adv. *chan*, *dāga chan*, *wuri chan*, *a wuri chan*; t.

is, t. are, etc. *akwai*, e.g. t. is a journey before us *akwai tafiya gāban mu*; I went t. *na tafi gurin*.

therefore, *don wannan*, *fa*, *daḍa*.

these, dem. pron., see **this**.

they, pers. pron. prefixed to various forms of past tenses *su*, *sun*, *suka*, suffixed to the aux. verb of the future, e.g. t. will... *za su....*

thick, adj. *da kabri*, *da kauri*.

thief, n. *ḡarawo*, fem. *ḡarau-niya*, pl. *ḡarayi* or *ḡarai*, *mai-sane*, *mai-sata*; a t. who comes in the night *kwaro**; a receiver of stolen property *ḡan tugu*.

thieving, n. *ḡarawonchi*, *ḡarauchi*, *sata*, *sane* or *swane*; secret t. *ja chiki*.

thigh, n. *chinya*, pl. *chinyoyi*, *kātara*, pl. *katatari*, *kar-futa*.

thin, adj. (fine, as flour, dust, etc.) *laushi*; (not stout) *ba kabri*; (lean, emaciated) *a rame*, *shalma*, *siriri*, fem. *siririya*, e.g. her young were quite t. *ḡiyata sai a rame*; to become t. *rame*, *yin rama*.

thing, n. *abu*, connective *abin*, pl. *abubuwa* or *abu*; (in the gen. sense of matter, subject)

tada, pl. *tadodi*; things created *talikai**.

think, v. (to reflect, ponder) *tuna*, *tunane*; to t. of, or about *tuna da*; (to deem) *zato**, *zache*, *tsamāni*; (to imagine, expect) *tamaha* with *yi* and the pronouns in *na*.

thinness, *silili* (S.), *siriri* (K.).

third, 1. ordinal num. *na-uku*, fem. *ta-uku*.

2. fractional num. (one part out of three) *sulusi**; two-thirds *sulusani**; the t. day, i.e. the day after the day after to-morrow *gata*.

thirst, n. *kishiruwa*, *kishirwa*, *kishi*; to feel t. *jin kishiruwa*, *jin kishi*.

thirsty, adj. *da kishiruwa* (or *kishirwa*).

thirteen, cardinal num. *goma sha uku*, also *sha uku*.

thirty, card. num. *talatin*.

this, dem. pronominal adj. *wannan*, pl. (these) *wadān-nan*, *wanga*, fem. *wagga*, *walga*, *warga* (S., Zanf.), pl. (these) *wadanga*; *nan* used for all genders and numbers usually placed after the word to which it refers, e.g. t. woman *machen nan*; suffixed also to the connective is *ga*,

e.g. t. house *gidanga*; t. town *garinga*.

thither, adv. of place *nan*, *chan*, *wurin chan*.

thong, leather *guru*, *karho* (S.), *kangi**.

thorn, *kaya*, pl. *kayayuwa* or *kayoyi*, *karangiya*; spec. a tree with white thorns, from fruit of which ink is made *farak kaya*; a thorny bush *sarkakiya*.

thorn-apple, (*Datura metel*) *zakami*, *haukat yaro*, *babba juji*.

those, demonstr. pron., see **that** 1.

thou, pers. pron. separate and emphatic *kai*, fem. *ki* or *ke*; prefixed to past and suffixed to fut. auxiliary *ka*, fem. *ki*, e.g. t., O woman *ke mache*; t. wilt return here *za ka komo*; t. wast stung by a scorpion *an halbe ka da kunama*; the above also = thee after prepositions and tr. verbs, e.g. along with thee *tare da kai*; to thee *ma ka*; I saw thee (fem.) *na gan ki*.

though, conj. *ko da*, *sai dai*.

thought, n. *tunani*, *tunane*, *lunani**, pl. *tunanu*, *zāto*, *tamaha*, *ruwa**.

thousand, num. *dubu*, *zambar*,

alif; a t. cubits *mil** (S.);
two t. *alfin*, *alfyan*.

thread, n. *zäre*, *mandawari*;
spec. very fine t. *arafiya*;
coarse t. *buruda*.

thread, v., to t. beads *zura*
duwatsu.

threadbare, *jula-jula*.

thread-worm, *kwaraba*.

threat, empty, n. *narko* (S.),
kyachewa, *alwashi*, *kuri* (S.),
ruba (K.).

threaten, v. *yīn kurari*, *kya-*
che (S.).

threatening, n. *kurari*.

three, card. num. *uku*, *talāta*;
the latter in counting cowries
often stands for t. thousand;
t. days ago *wanshekaraniya*.

thresh, tr. v. *dāka*, *dandaka*,
daddaka, *sussuka*, *chasa*.

thresher, n. *mai-taki*.

threshing-floor, n. *masussu-*
ka, *wurin sussuka*, *mabuga*,
mabugiya, pl. *mabugai*, *fāko*,
fagye.

threshold, i.e. a raised ridge
in front of a door, n. *garama*,
dan-garama.

thrice, numeral adv. *sau* (or
so) *uku*, *guda uku*.

thrive, v. (to prosper) *yinarziki*.

throat, n. *maḳwaruwa* (S.), *ma-*
kwarwa (K.), *maḳōgwaro*, *ma-*
ḳoshi; swelling on t. *maḳoḳo*,
hangum; a sore t. *mashako*.

throne, n. *kujeran sariki*, *ku-*
jera, *kursiyi*, *al'arshi*; heir
to the t. *majiran gado*.

throng, n. *taro*, pl. *tarori*, see
crowd.

throttle, tr. v. *murda*, *maḳure*.

throttler, n. *murḍago*, *mir-*
dago.

throw, n. *chāka*.

throw, tr. v. *yas*, *yasda*, *jefa*,
jefi, *jefe*, *jefo*, e.g. he throws
stones *ya jefa duwatsu*; to
t., e.g. a spear *chāka*, *nāsa*,
nāshe; to t. away *yas*, *yasda*,
yāda, *zubas**, *zubas da**,
wulga, *wurga*, *kayas*, *kayas*
da, *watsar da*, e.g. he threw
away his gun and fled *ya*
yasda bindiga ya gudu; to
t. back *mayas**; t. out (also=
to cast out, overthrow) *jefas*
da (K.), *jefad da* (S.), *jefashe*
(Zanf.); to t. with dice *jefa*
kuriya; spec. to t. (food) into
the mouth *hamfude*, *ham-*
fudi; to t. up and catch *chafi*.

thrower, a champion t. *sarikin*
jifa.

throwing, n. *jīfa*, *nāshi*, pl.
nashe-nashe; t. away *wulgi*,
wurgi.

thrush, a yellow-breasted chat
t. *gabachara*, *gwanno*.

thrust, tr. v., see **push**; to t.
through (pierce) *soka*, *soke* or
soki, e.g. he t. their chief

through with a spear *ya soka babbansu da mashi*.

thumb, n. *babban yatsa*.

thunder, n. *tsawa*; distant rolling t. *chidda*; a burst of t. or thunder-bolt *arādu*.

thunder, to *yin arādu*.

Thursday, n. *alhamis* or *ranar alhamis*.

thus, adv. (in this or that way or manner) *hāka*, *hākanan*, *kaza*; the last is also used (see under **so**, **such**) where the speaker mentions the way or manner, but the actual author of the account avoids it, e.g. he said the king spoke (t., or) t. and t. *ya che sariki ya fadi kāza da kāza*; (in a weak sense = so then) *fa*.

thy, possess. pron. suffixed *-ka*, *-nka*, fem. *-ki*, *-nki*, e.g. t. wife *matakka*, t. husband *mijinki*; separate, if the object possessed is masc. *naka*, *naki*, if fem. *taka*, *taki*.

thymself, 1. reflexive *kanka*, fem. *kanki*.

2. emphatic *kai da kanka*, fem. *ke* (or *ki*) *da kanki*; see self.

tick, (insect) *kaska*.

tickle, to *tsikara* (K.), *tsakara* (S.).

tickling, *tsikari* (K.), *tsakari* (S.).

tidings, n., see **news**.

tie, tr. v. *damre*, *daure*, *damra*, *darmi* (S.), *tanka*, *tanke*, *rataya*, *balla*, *sarkafe*; to t. up together *layache* (K.), *goya*, *goye*; spec. to t. up *kumsa*, *kumshe*, to t. the hands together *bankare*; to t. grass in thatching *tsāra*, *tsāre*; to t. two pieces of string together *kulla*; to be tied together *kullu*; to t. in a knot *kumbuche*; to t. up a bag *tsuke*; tied up *kumshashe*, fem. *kumshashiya*, pl. *kumshashu*.

tied, participial adj. *sassabta*, *ballu*.

tiger-fish, (*Hydrocyon lineatus*) *tsagye*; a species of t.-f. *kawara* (*Alestes dentex*).

tiger-nut, *aya*.

tight, adj. (used of a string) *kyar*, (taut) *tam*, *tamau-tamau*.

tightness, *runtsi*.

till, prep. and conj., see **until**.

till, tr. v. *noma*, *nomi* or *nome*, *maimai*.

tiller, n. (i.e. of the ground) *mai-noma* or *mai-nomi*, pl. *masu-noma*.

tilt, to t. anything up against something *jitta*, *kīfa*, *kīfe*.

Timbuctoo, pr. n. *Tumbutu*.

time, n. *lōkachi*, *wakati*, *wakti**, *wakachi*, *sa'a*, *yayji*, *zamani*, *zamanu**; a short t. *zamani*

kāḍan, *jīmarwa*; at that t. *lokachin nan*, *sa'an nan*; at the t. when he returned here *lokachin da* (or *sa'an da*) *ya dawayo*; at what t.? *wache sa'a*? some t. *wani yayi*; (period, age) *yayi*, *zamani*, e.g. in the t. of the prophet *ga yayin annabi* or *zamanin annabi*; his t. is passed (i.e. he is old) *yayinsa ya wuche*; (set t. or proper occasion) *loto*, *wakati*, *wakti**; every t. *wakati duka*; by (or about) this t. *warhāka*; at any t. *ko yaushē*; at what t. (when) *yanda*; at what t.? *yaushē*? before-time *wuri*; in former times or some t. ago *da wuri* or *dauri*; from a long t. *dadadde*; from what t.? *daga yaushē*? since what t.? *tun yaushē*? until what t.? *har yaushē*? one at a t. *gūda gūda*; length of t. *tsawa* or *tsawo*; I have not t. to *ba ni da dama*; what t. is it? *karife nawa*? do not come before your t. *kāda ka rigaya loka-chinka*; see also **times**, **hour**.

times, pl. (of repetition) *sau* or *so*, *gūda*, e.g. five t. *sau biyar*, or *gūda biyar*; how many t.? *gūda nawa*?

timid, adj. *matsorachi*.

tin, n. *chinkal*, *sinādari**, *shinā-*

*dari** or *sunādari**; t. ore *kuza*.

tinder, n. *alfawami*.

tinge, tr. v. *rini*, *rina*.

tinged, pass. particip. *rinanne*, fem. *rinanna*, pl. *rinannu*.

tinkle, n. *dindindin*.

tip, n. (of the finger) *ḍan yatsa*, (of the ear) *ḍan kunne*.

tire, v. intr. (to be fatigued, weary) *gāje*, *gāji*, *jin gājiya*, *dāgagaji*, e.g. he was tired with travelling *ya gāji da tafiya*; we are tired with over-work *muna jin gājiya da yawan aiki*; to be tired of waiting *ḡosa*.

tithe, n. 1. (tenth part) *ushuri*.

2. t. or tithes (one-tenth devoted to religious purposes, alms) *zāka*.

title, n. (name, appellation) *sunā*, pl. *sunuwa* or *sunanaki*.

to, 1. prep. *ga*, with pronouns *gare*, used of both persons and things, e.g. he came to me *ya zaka gare ni*; near to the bank of the river *kusa ga bakin ruwa*; *wa* (no before personal pronouns specially used after verbs to tell; do not tell anyone *kāda ka gaya wa kowa*; *ma*, applied not to persons but to things, mostly to pronouns e.g. to me *ma ni*, also *mini*

to thee *ma ka*; *ma* sometimes expresses the datives of advantage and interest, e.g. grant to me an abatement *ka yi ma ni rangwame*; *a*, found in a few phrases, e.g. he fell to the ground *ya fadi a kasa* or *a kas*, sometimes prefixed to *gare*, e.g. to thee *a gare ka = gare ka*; after verbs of motion etc. the English *to* may be wholly unrepresented, e.g. he went to his house *ya tafi gidansa*; they swam and came to land *sun iyo sun kai kasa*.

2. conj. (in order that, so that, so as to) *in* placed immediately before the verb and rarely used except with the 1st person, see under **order 3**.

toad, n. *pasha*, *kwado*.

to-and-fro, going t. *yauchi*.

tobacco, n. *tāba*, t.-pipe *tukunyar tāba*; to smoke t. *shan tāba*; a stick of rolled t. *sandan tāba*; seed of t. plant *tamna-garḍi*.

tobe, n. *riga*, pl. *riguna*; spec. a black or blue t. *rigal sakī*; a t. of black or shiny blue cloth *kore*; a red t. *jabba**; a white t. *gare*, pl. *garuruka*, *girke*; a white t. with short, lined body and wide single

skirt *kwakwata*, *kwakota*; embroidery on a t. *sharaba*, *tambari*; the pattern on front of a t. *fuskar riga*, *kwashē*, *linzamin riga*, *mumbari*; double thickness of cloth in a t. *sabāda*; for various kinds of tobes see under *riga*.

to-day, adv. *yau*, also pronounced *yo*; existing t. *mai-yau*.

toddle (or to walk on all fours), intr. v. *dūbo dūbo*.

toe, n. *yatsa*, pl. *yatsotsi* or *yatsu*, *yatsa na kafa*; big t. *babban yatsa*; spec. a disease of the toes *kudumbiya*, *kumbudiya**.

together, adv. *tare*, *gaba dai*, *gaba daya*, *jeni*; t. with *tare da*, *gami da*, *game da*; v. to put t. *tara*; to put up t., to gather t. *gangama*; to be gathered t. (to assemble) *taru*; to come t. with violence *kara* or *karo*; to go t. *tare*, *hāda tafiya*, e.g. we will all go t. *duka za mu tare*; keep together! *ku tafi jeni*; collecting t. *jama'a*; a hundred rose up t. *zango ya tashi tsaitsaye*.

toil, n. (fatigue) *ta'ba**.

toil, intr. v., see **labour**, e.g. he toils after vanity *shina dawaniya da abin wofi*.

token, n. *shaida*, pl. *shaidai* and *shaidodi*.

toll, n. *humushi* (lit. one-fifth), see **tax**.

tomato, n., the bitter native t. *gauta*, pl. *gautaye*, *gautan kura*, *kulufita**; a plant with a fruit like large t. *yalo*, pl. *yaluna*.

tomb, n. *kushewa* or *kusheya**, pl. *kusheyi*, *kushewoyi*, *wurin kushewa*, *wurin bisne*, *kābari*, *kabri*.

to-morrow, n. *gobe*, *kashegari* (K.), *wanshekare* (S.), cf. prov. *yau da gobe kayan Allah*; the day after t. *jibi*, the day after *jibi* is called *gata*, that after *gata*, i.e. the third day after t. *chitta*.

tongs, n. *arvartaki*, *hantsaki*.

tongue, n. 1. (the bodily member) *halshe*, *harshe*, pl. *hal-shina*, *halussa*.

2. (a particular language) see **language** 2.

too, adv. 1. (likewise) *kuwa*, *kuma*, *ma*.

2. (more than enough) express by the verbs *faye* and *buwaye*, e.g. it was t. severe for me *ya faye ni karifi*; he was t. big *ya faye girma*; he was t. much for me *ya buwaye ni*; t. much *ya faye yawa*.

tools, n. pl. *kaya* or the pl. *kayayeki*.

tooth, n. *hauri*, *hakori*, pl. *hakora*, *zaga*, pl. *zagogi*; a molar t. *matamni*, pl. *matamna*; back teeth *turame**; spec. a tree the bristles of which are used for rubbing the teeth *dashi*; t.-gaping, n., used of one who has lost two teeth *gibi*, e.g. *shina gibi*; a t. that has been filed *fike*; eye t. *gaboba*; a wide space between two front teeth *wu-shiriya*.

toothless, adj. *mai-dasashi*.

top, n. *kai*, pl. *kanuwa*, *kawana* and *kawuna*, *kōroruwa*, *tso-lolo*, *tsororo*, pl. *tsololuwa*, *tuluwa* (K.), *bisa*; on the t. of a *kan*, *bisa* or a *bisa*; a spinning t. *makodi**.

toper, a *mashayi*, pl. *mashaya*.

topple over, to, intr. v. *yin kunduma*.

torch, n. *bakin wuta*; a display of torches *wowo* (K.), *wauwo* (S.).

torment, n. *tsanani*; spec. place of t. for unbelievers *gumki**, *gamki**, *gwauki**; to suffer t. *jīn tsananta*.

torment, tr. v. *tsananta*, *tsane*, *tsani*, *tsananche*, *hāsada*, *arja* (K.), *alja* (S.).

tornado, n. *hadari*.

torrent, n. *korama*; noise of a rushing t. *bandam-bandam*.
tortoise, n., a land t. with convex shell *kunkuru*; a water t. with flat shell or mud turtle *kififiya*, *yuma* (S.); a small t. *kafarji**, *farkaji*; the shell of a t. *kwachiya*, *kwariya*.
toss, tr. v. (of cattle, etc. when butting or goring) *tunkuda*, *tunkwiya*.
total, n. *dokachi* (sum or amount reached by reckoning), see **calculation** 2.
totter, to, adj. (applied to the walk of the old or blind) *kütup kütup*; (of walls, etc.) *karkache*.
touch, tr. v. *täba*, *täbi*; to engage slightly in, id., e.g. he just touched the work *ya täba yin aiki*.
towards, prep. *ga*, before pronouns *gare*, e.g. some men are coming t. us *wadansu mutane suna zakuwa gare mu*.
towel, n. *bante*, *banche*, pl. *bantuna*, *kalkäfi*.
tower, *bene*; a watch t. *ma-bäga* (S.).
town, n., a large, walled t. *birni*, pl. *birane* or *birnuwa*; a small, unwallled t. *gari*, pl. *garuruwa* and *garigaru*; a quarter of a t. *shiya*, pl.

shiyoyi, *unguwa*; a frontier t. *kain iyaka*.
toy, n. (plaything) *abin wargi*.
track, n. (beaten path) *tafarki*, pl. *tafarkoki*; a broad beaten t. *rimdi*, *godabe*; (a spoor) *lawali*; let him not go back on his tracks *käda ya bi sawunsa na da*.
trade, n. *chiniki*, *jaura*, *korami*, *sana'a*, *fatauchi*.
trade, intr. v. *yin chiniki*; to t. successfully *chin kasuwa*.
trader, n. *falke*, fem. *falkiya*, pl. *fatake*, *mai-fatauchi*, *mai-chiniki*, *mai-dillanchi**, *sambani*, *tajiri*, *dan kasuwa*, *mashimfidi*.
trading, n. *fatauchi*, *dillanchi*; corn t. *kwarami*, traders in corn *yan kwarami*.
tradition, n. (doctrine orally handed down) *sunna*, *tariyo**.
traduce, tr. v., see **calumniate**.
trample, tr. v. *taka*, *bijigi*, intensive form *tattaka* or *tattake*, e.g. let us not t. it under foot *kada mu tattake shi*.
transform, tr. v. *rikäda*, *sauya* and *sawaya*, e.g. by the power of a charm he transformed himself into an elephant *da ikon magani ya sauya kansa giwa*.

transformed, pass. particip. *rikidaddē*, fem. *rikidaddiya*, pl. *rikidaddu*; to be t. *sauya* and *sawaya*, *mayas da rikida*, e.g. he was t. into a sheep *ya sauya tumkiya*; she was t. into something or other *ta mayas da wani abu*, see also **change 3**.

transgress, intr. v. (to do wrong) *yin laifi*, (to commit sin) *yin zunufi*.

translate, v. *mayas da*, see **interpret 1**.

translated, pass. particip. *sauyayye*, fem. *sauyayya*, pl. *sauyayyu*.

transport, n., oxen used for t. *takarkari*, pl. *takarkarai*.

trap, n. *haḳo*, pl. *haḳoḳi*, fig. (a thing leading into harm or error) id.; a t. consisting of a hole in the ground *ḅurma* or *ḅuma**, *mashaḳo*; a t. for wild animals *tarko*, pl. *tarkuna*, *ḅurma*; to lay or set a t. *haḳo* with *yi* or the forms in *na*; a fish t. *sankuja* (K.); a t. consisting of a hole and noose *taskira*.

travail, n. 1. (severe labour) see **toil**.

2. (pains of childbirth) *wahalan haifuwa*, *naḳudar haifuwa*; to be in t. *naḳuda*.

travel, intr. v. *tafi*; also *tafiya* with *yi* and the forms in *na*, e.g. as we were travelling much rain fell *da muna tafiya an yi ruwa dayawa*; spec. money paid to a king for permission to t. *garama*; to t. hard *yin haramat tafiya*.

traveller, fellow, n. *abokin tafiya*, *maraki*.

travelling, n. *tafe*, pl. *tafiyya*.

travelling-ant, n. (or driver-ant) *kwarkwasa*, *kwalkwasa*; a red t.-a. *makwaiwa*.

treachery, *tsēgumi*, pl. *tsegunguma*, *yaudara*, *kissa*.

tread, v., to t. down *taka*, *taki*, *take*, intens. *tattaka*, *tattake*, *bijigi*, *dāḅe*; to t. upon (to crush) *latse*.

treasure, n. *wada*, *wada'a*, *taska*; treasures *ajiya*, *azawa*; royal t. stored up *kambi**; spec. chamber for storing t. *rafoniya*, pl. *rafoni*; to lay up t. *taskache*; t.-trove *galala*.

treasury, n. *taska*, pl. *taskoki*.

tree, n. *itache*, *iche* (the former is sometimes used as a plural of *iche* esp. in Sokoto), pl. *itaturwa*; in this sense the word is masc., a stick cut from a t., i.e. *itache* is usually regarded as fem.; a dried-up, withered t. *koren itache*; a t. used to hang meat on

jigo, pl. *jiguna*; a pair of trees so planted as to grow into one *gāminbauta*; a bent t. *kwandariya*, *ḡondariya*.

The following are some of the more common names of trees found in Nigeria: various species of ficus, e.g. *chediya*, *gamji*, *durumi*, *ḡawuri*, *shirinya*, *uwar yara*, *wa*, *rubiya*; various species of acacia, e.g. *gawo*, *dakwara*, *farak ḡaya*, *tāwasa*, *ḡorowa*, *gabaruwa*, *bagaruwa*, *ḡundu*, *kiriya*; the baobab t. *kuka*; various species of euphorbia, e.g. *kumkumiya*, *fida-sartse*, *fida sarḡe* (S.), *kirana*, *ḡyanara* (S.), *tinya*; the copaiba t. *kadaura*, *maje*; a t. with yellow hard-shelled edible fruit (*Strychnos spinosa*) *ḡoḡiya*; the bloodwood or African rosewood t. *madoḡbiya*; a t. (*Vitex cienkowskii*) from the fruit of which molasses are made *ḡinya*; a t. (*Detarium Senegalense*) from which molasses and gum are obtained *taura*; the 'ebony tree' *kainya* or *kanya*; a tall, straight t. *dilo*; a large t. with flat, winged fruit (*Terminalia macroptera*) *baushe*; a t. with yellow plum-like fruit (*Spondias*) *danya*; a large,

bushy t. (*Zizyphus spina-Christi*) with red edible berries *kurna*; a t. with long thorns, white flowers and edible leaves *chizaki*; a t. (*Zizyphus jujuba*) the fruit of which is made into cakes *magariya*; a small t. with reddish wood and edible leaves (a chew-stick) *marke*; a small t. from which black-smith's charcoal is made *ḡirya*, *ḡariya*; a t. from the bark of which small ropes are made *tawatsa*; the silk-cotton t. (*Eriodendron orientale*) *rimi*, pl. *rimaye*; a red-flowered silk-cotton t. *gurjiya*; a t. the leaves of which furnish a yellow stain and, mixed with indigo, a green dye *magina*; a small t. (*Bauhinia reticulata*) the leaves of which are often used for wrapping food and the bark of which is used as a stain to darken lips *kalgo* or *kargo*; a t., with reddish bark (*Hymenocardia acida*), used for shed supports etc. *janyaro*; a t. (African bdellium) the bristles of which are used as a tooth-brush *dashi*; a large t. the aromatic bark of which is ground up as a medicine *fasa-kwariya* or *pasa-kwari*;

a t. with fragrant flowers and leaves and a black or purple berry (*Eugenia owariensis*) *malmo*, *marmo*; the horse-radish tree (*Moringa pterygo-sperma*) *zagalagandi*; a small t. with yellow blossoms, an infusion of its leaves (*Cassia goratensis*) used by women near childbirth *runhu*.

trek, to *yin tafe*.

tremble, intr. v. (with terror, cold, etc.) *firgita*, *raura*, *zazaga*.

trembling, participial n. (from terror, cold, etc.) *raurawa*, *kaduwa*, adj. form *makarkata*, *makyarkyata*; t. all over *zazzagawa*; t. (from excitement, agitation) *karāya*.

trench, a *hafaru**.

trespass, intr. v., e.g. on a forbidden area *kutsa*, see **transgress**.

trial, n. (a putting to the proof, testing) *jarabi*, *jaraba*; to make t. of, v. *yin jaraba*.

tribal marks, n pl. (cut on face) *shaushawa*, *kyaskyastu* (K.), *kyakkyastu* (S.), (cut from corners of the mouth) *yambaka*, see also *hawayen zaki*.

tribe, n. *iri*, pl. *irare*, *kauwi**, *kabila*.

tribunal, n. *wurin shari'a*.

tributary, adj., a t. stream *hannun rafi*.

tribute, n. *humushi*, *gandu*, *tuda*, *biko*, *jiziya* (S.), *kurḍin kasa*; t. money *kurḍin gandu*; spec. t. paid by the heathen *tara*, *ta'ō*; see **tax**.

trick, n. (dexterous artifice) *wayo*; tricks *wasawa*.

trickery, n. (fraudulent deception) *barkwanchi*.

trickle, to *tarāra*, *tarāro*, *zurare*, see **leak**.

trim, tr. v. (to put in order) *gyarta*.

trinkets, coll. *kayan ado*; see **ornament**.

trip, intr. v. *tuntsure*, *yin tuntube*, the last is used as a tr. and intr. v.; to t. a person up *tade*.

Tripoli, pr. n. *Tarabulus* or *birnin Tarabulus*.

triumph, n., see **victory**.

trodden down, *takakke*, fem. *takakka*, pl. *takakku*.

trombone, *kakaki**.

troop, n., see **company**.

trot, intr. v. (of a horse) *kilisa*.

trotting, *rishi*, *sakaraftu*, *sasaka*.

trouble, n. (distress) *wahala*, *hawāla*, *tsananta*, *kinke*, *alale*, *sanadi*, *sawarwari*, *tono*; to be in t. *yin wahala*; to feel t. *jin wahala*, *tangara**.

trouble, n., one who is in t. *mai-wahala*.

trouble, v. tr. *wahalda*, *wahalsa*, *wahalshe*, *tsananche*, *tsananta*, *hasada*, *alale*, *ar-kāna*, *gayara*, *kinke*, *sawarwara*, *shamache*, *shamata*, *fitina*, *haiyata*; do not t. (i.e. feel distressed) *kada ka wahalda kanka*; (as a polite exp. = spare yourself the t.) *kiiyaye kanka*.

troublesome, adj. *da wuya*.

trough, n. *komi*, *jirigi*, *jirgi*, pl. *jirage*.

trousers, n. (i.e. the loose, baggy native t.) *wando*, pl. *wanduna*, *buje* (K.), *dunhu*; two pieces of cloth sewn on at the bottom of native t. *kamun kafa*; trouser-string *mazargi*; t. embroidered up to the top *wando mai-kamu*; a fold in the waist of t. through which the cord (*zariya*) runs *kubaka*.

true, adj. gen. *da gaskiya*, *da gaske*, *gaskiya* and *gaske*, (of persons, veracious, sound, honest) *mai-gaskiya*; (faithful) *salih**; t. as an adverbial phr. (i.e. quite right) *ainin* as well as the words given in seq.

truly, adv. *da gaskiya*, *da gaske*, *gaskiya*, *gaske*, *ashe*, *ainin*,

hakika, *aiwa*, *ainin*, *wallahi*, *labudda*.

trumpet, n. *kafo*, pl. *kafoni* or *kafuna*, *kakaki*.

trumpeter, n. *mai-kafo*, *mai-busa*, *mai-shantu* (lit. blower); a mounted t. *masarchi*.

trunk, n. 1. (a small box, usually of leather) *sanduki*, *sanduki* (S.), pl. *sandukai*.

2. (proboscis of elephant) *hannun giwa*.

3. (the t. of a tree) *kore* or *koren itache*, *kututtura*.

trust, n. (confidence, certainty of safety) *amāna*, *shaduda* or *saduda*, *dangana*, (a deposit of money etc.) *sabtu*, *saptu*, *sautu*, *sotu*; he betrayed t. *ya chinye amāna*, I left money with them on t. *na yi ma su sabtu*.

trust, intr. v., or t. in (i.e. rely on) *dōgara*, *dangana*, *shaduda* or *saduda*, *ingata**, *sakankanche*, I t. in God *ina dangana da* (or *ga*) *Allah*; follow Mohammed, t. in him *ku bi Muhammadu ku sakananche*.

trustee, n. *madaukan bashi*.

trustworthy, adj. (to be relied on, depended on) *yardaji*, *ingatachi**, *tabbatache*, fem. *tabbatachiya*, e.g. this account is t. *wannan labari ingatachi*;

t. language *magana tabbata-chiya*.

trustworthiness, *inganchi*.

truth, n. *gaskiya* ; to speak the

t. *ba gaskiya* ; to establish the t. *gaskata* or *gaskanta*.

try, tr. v. (make trial of), see

trial ; (endeavour) *yin ko-kari*, *taɓa ko-kari* ; t. diligently

to follow his tradition *ku bada ko-karinku ga sunna tai*.

tsetse-fly, *tsando*, *aworo*.

Tuarek, n. gent. *Azbin*, *Asbin*,

Ba-Azbine, pl. *Azbinawa*, *Asbinawa*.

Tuesday, n. *ranar talata*.

tuft of hair, n., a t. on the

head *tukku*, *tukkuwa* ; t. o.

h. in the middle of the head

zanko ; see **hair** ; t. of grain

geza, pl. *gezuna*, *tuntu*.

tug, tr. v. (to haul along) *ja* ;

see **draw**.

tumour, *kurji*, *gyambo*, *jam-*

baɗe, see **abscess**.

tumult, n. (noisy clamour of a

multitude) *hargowa* ; t. (e.g.

of war) *farmaki*, *rigima*, *fal-*

maki.

turban, n. *rawani*, pl. *rawunna* ;

spec. a white muslin t. with

red edges *zabuta* ; t. of

white muslin *harsa*, *hassa* ;

white stuff for making t.

mabarasa ; a variegated cloth

used for making turbans,

barmushi ; twisting of a

double black and white

t. round the head *barna*,

funi ; a black and white t.

mahawara ; the winding of

a t. *nannāde*.

turkey, n. *talotalo*.

turmeric, *gangamau*, *ganga-*

mu.

turn in, a, at the edge of a

garment, n. *shafi*.

turn, v. l. tr. (to move round)

maida ; to t. away from *juya*

ma ; to t. the head away from

kau da kai ; to t. back, or t.

over *juya* ; to t. upside down

jiche, *jichi*, *jirkiche*, *kīfa*

(K.) ; to t. over (e.g. a mat,

piece of cloth etc. for the

purpose of folding) *linke* or

nimka ; to t. round, or t. over

bankaɗa, *bankaɗe*, *kīfa*, *kīfe* ;

intr. to t. aside (off the road,

or out of the way) *ratsa*,

rache, *ratse*, *baudi*, *karkache*,

e.g. we t. aside from Kano

mun ratsa Kano ; to t. back

tankwashe ; to t. over *kewaye*

or *kewayi* ; to t. round (to

revolve) id., e.g. my head

turned round (of giddiness

etc.) *kaina ya kewaye* ; to t.

round (of a single change of

position) *waiwaya*, *waiga*,

e.g. when he called me I

turned round and saw him

da ya kira ni na waiwaya na gan shi; to t. out (to become eventually) *fita*, e.g. he turned out well *ya fita nagari*.

2. (to change or change into) tr. and intr., see **change**.

turning, participial n. *juyawa, jujuyawo, waiwayanwa, waige* (K.), pl. *waige-waige*.

turtle, n. *yuma* (S.); mud t. *kififiya*.

turtle-dove, n. *kurchiya*, pl. *kurchecheki* and *kurchiyoyi, wala*, pl. *walu*.

tusk, n. *zaga*; an elephant's t. *haurin giwa, hauri*; cf. **ivory**.

tweezers, *matsefata*.

twelfth, ord. num. *na-goma sha biyu*, fem. *ta-goma sha biyu*.

twelve, card. num. *goma sha biyu*, also *sha biyu*; t. times *sau goma sha biyu*.

twentieth, ord. num. *na-ishirin* or *na-ashirin*, fem. *ta-ishirin*.

twenty, card. num. *ishirin, ashirin*; in counting by twenties *hauya* and *lāso* (= a score) are especially employed, e.g. *hauya uku* = *sittin*.

twice, numeral adv. *sau biyu*.

twig, n. *tsumanjiya, tsumajiya, tsumagiya, reshe, rishe, kirare*.

twilight, n. (that before dawn) *jijifi* also *jifjif, alfigir*.

twinkling of an eye, n. (a

moment of time) *kyaptawan ido* or *keptawa da gani*.

twins, n. pl. *tugwaye, tawaye*, spec. next child born after twins *gambo, gumbo**.

twist, tr. v. *gusda, kitso* (e.g. the hair); to t. the neck *nadiye* (K.), *murda, murde* (K.), *mirde* (S.), *murgude, kwakwume*; to t. thread, etc. *murje, burka, nāde, yin nādi, lauya*; (in plaiting rope, etc.) *tubka, tufka, tupka, tumka, tukka, darza*; intens. form *mummurda*; twisting cotton round a pin before spinning *kulla*.

twisted, adj. *a murgude*.

twisting, n. *nādi*; t. of strands into threads *tūka, tukka*.

two, card. num. *biyu*; by twos *biyu biyu*; t. hundred *dari biyu* or *metin*; t. thousand *alfin*.

tying, *kumshi*, see **tie**.

tyranny, *alfarma, yaji*.

udder, n. *nono*, pl. *nonuwa, hantsa*.

ugliness, *kwarjini, muni, mugunta*.

ugly, adj. *da kwarjini, mam-muna, mummuna, da muni*.

ulcer, n. *gyambo*, pl. *gyambuna, mele*; corneal ulcer *hakiya*; see **scab**.

umbrella, n. *lema**, *laima**,
*tuta** or *tuti**, pl. *tutochi*.

unabashed, *da kwarkwasa*.

unable, to be *gāza, kasa*; I am
u. to go *na gāza tafiya*; they
were u. to overcome *sun gaza*
isa; *buwaya*, e.g. I am u. to
do it *na buwaya*.

unalloyed, adj. *safi*; see **un-
mixed**.

unbaked, an u. pot *danyen*
kasko.

unbecoming, adj. *haram, ba*
daidai; e.g. he did what was
u. *ya yi abin da ba daidai ba*.

unbeliever, n. *kāfiri*, pl. *kā-
firai, kāfirawa*; to become
an u. *kafirta*.

unbind, tr. v. *kunche, kunchi,*
kwanche.

unbound, pass. part. *kwanche*,
fem. *kwanchiya*, pl. *kuntu*.

uncertain, adj. *da zuchiya*
biyu; I am u. *ina da zuchiya*
biyu; to be u. *yin tantama*.

uncertainty, n. (a state of
doubt) *kokanto, tambaba, tan-
tama, tachetache*.

unchaste, adj., see **profligate**.

unchastity, n. *zallantaka*.

uncle, maternal, n. *rāfani*,
kawu; (father's brother) *bā-
bani*.

unclean, adj. (dirty, foul) *da*
dauda, kazāmi; ceremonially
u. *haram, da haram*.

uncleanness, n. (in a physical
sense) *dauda*; (in a wider
sense) *kazamta, kazanta,*
tozari, jāraba, jāira, janaba.

uncooked, adj. *danye*; u. flesh
nama danye.

uncover, tr. v. *yaye*.

under, adv. and prep. *kalka-
shin* (S.), *karkashin* (K.), *kas*.

underneath, adv., cf. preced-
ing.

understand, v. *ji, fahimta* or
*fahumta**, *hankalta, yin*
tsimi, e.g. I u. your words,
I u. quite well *na ji ma-
ganakka sarai*; he under-
stood (i.e. you need say no
more) *ya yi kārin magana*;
to u. well intens. *sansanche*;
to fail to u. *gigiche* or *gigi*,
*ruḍi**, *gagata*, the last taking
da before object, e.g. I failed
to u. it *na gagata da shi*.

understanding, n. 1. (compre-
hending, comprehension) *fa-
himchi, jiyayya, tsimi, kari*;
(knowledge, cleverness) *azan-
chi*; lack of u. *gigi*, see also
ability.

2. (a good u.) *jiyayya*.

undo, tr. v., see **untie**; (to
annul, render vain) *wofinta*;
(to ruin) *ḡata*.

undress, v. *debe* or *debo, tuḡe*,
fitas da all with *riguna*,
etc.

undressed, pass. particip., see **naked**.

uneven, adj. (of a surface) *da kurzuna*, see **rough**.

unfasten, to *ɓalle*.

ungird, tr. v. *sunche*, e.g. he ungirded his camel *ya sunche rakuminsa*.

ungrateful, adj. *butulu*, mai-*butulchi*.

unintelligible talk, *baubawa*, *bobawa*.

unique, adj. *kadaichi*.

unit, *gūda*.

unite, tr. v. *gama*; intr., to u. closely *garwaya*.

unity, n. *dayanchi**; spec. to profess the u. of God *tauhida** or *tauhidi**.

unkind, *magaya*, *magauchi*, pl. *magata*.

unlawful, adj. *da haram* or *haram*; n., anything u. or what is u. *haram* or *haramu*, *abin haram*, *shirku*; u. gain or profit *haramiya*.

unless, conj. *sai*, *sai ko*, e.g. he is not without reason, u. he refuses to listen to that which thou showest to him *ba shi rasa huja ba sai ya ki jin abin da ka nuna mai*.

unload, tr. v. gen. *shida* or *shide*; to u. camels, etc *sabka*, *sabki*, *sapka*, *safka*, *sauka*, *sauki*.

unloose, *katsi*, see **untie**.

unlucky, something u. *shu'umi*.

unmixed, adj. (pure from admixture) *tsalka*, *tsatsalka*, *safi*, *kūna*; u. water *kūna ruwa*.

unprofitable, adj. *babu anfani*, *da babu anfani*, *banza*, *babu riba*.

unravelled, to become u. *warwari*.

unripe, adj. *danye* or *danyi*, pl. *danyoyi*, *danyu*; u. fruit *jimbiri* (S.).

unsaleable, *ya ki sayuwa*.

untidiness, *barkatai*; cf. everything in his house is untidy *duka gidansa barkatai ya ke*.

untie, tr. v. *kunta*, *kunche*, *kwanche* (K.), *sunche* or *sinche*, *ɓalle*, *katsi*, *bainye*, *banye*.

untied, pass. particip. *kunche*, *kwanche*, fem. *kunchiya*, pl. *kuntu*.

until, till, prep. and conj. *har*, *hal*, *kamin*, prep., e.g. he followed the true path u. now *ya bi hanyar gaskiya har yanzu*; conj., e.g. let them quarrel u. they are tired *a bar su su fada har su gaji*; *sai*, prep. with nouns of time, e.g. u. to-morrow *sai gobe*; u. evening *sai mareche*; these expressions are elliptical, some such v. as wait, etc.

being understood before them, as is the case also when *sai* is used as a conj., e.g. give up delaying u. you are old *bari jira sai ka tsufa; kana, kan*, kanda, kamin*, conj. = then and not u. then, so that the corresponding English sentence contains a negative, e.g. don't eat our bread u. you have eaten your own *ka chi gurasanka kana ka chi tamu*.

untimely, an u. birth *kwatan-tanwa**.

unto, prep. (a strengthened form of to) *ga*; with pronouns *gare, zuwa, ya zuwa*; in correlative expressions combined with *har*, e.g. from this border unto that *daga iyakan nan har ga iyaka chan*.

untrue, adj. *kakari**; the n. *ƙariya* (= Engl. 'a story') is constantly used in this sense, e.g. whether true or u. I do not know *gaskiya ko ƙariya ban sani ba*.

untrustworthy, an u. person *danyen kasko* (lit. an unbaked pot).

unwell, adj. *rashin lafiya, maras-lafiya*; see *ill*.

up, adv. (upwards, aloft) *bisa, a bisa, ɗaf*; e.g. the falcon

soared up *shafo ya tashi bisa*; he climbed u. the tree *ya hau itache ɗaf ɗaf*.

uphold, tr. v. (to support, e.g. as a tent-pole) *tokāra*.

upon, prep. *bisa* or *a bisa*, which may also be followed by *ga*; e.g. u. it *bisa garesa*; he got u. the horse *ya hau bisa*n (or *bisa ga*) *doki*.

upright, e.g. I stood u. *na tsaya daidai*.

uproot, to *tumɓuke*.

upset, v. 1. tr. *jirkiche, jiche, jichi, kīfa* (K.), *birkichi* or *birkiche*; to u. (so as to spill water, etc.) *zubda, zubda ma, dole, kikkifa*.

2. intr., to u. or to be u. (of men, etc.) *tuntsure*; (of a boat) *durimi, dirimi, dulmiye*.

upside down, to turn, tr. v. *jirkiche, jiche, jichi, shiche, shida*.

urinate, intr. v. *yin bawali, yin bowali, yin boli, yin fitsari*.

urine, n. *fitsari, barwali, bowali, boli*.

us, pers. pron. obj. *mu* suffixed to verbs and prepositions, e.g. he called u. *ya kira mu*; to u. *ma mu*, or with assimilation *mumu*.

usage, n. (custom) *ada, ta'ada, tada* (S.), pl. *tadodi*, see *custom*.

use, n. (utility, advantage, profit, gain) *anfāni*; e.g. what is the u. of ink? *tadarwa minene anfāninta?* of u. *da anfāni*; of no u. *babu anfāni*; a man of no u. *mutumen wofi*; I am making u. of him *ina moronsa*.

use, tr. v. (to employ), no general term, e.g. they u. flesh for food *abinchinsu nama*; they u. skins only for clothing *rigunansu duka sai da fata*; they u. force *suna yin tilas*; he can u. the axe *shina iya yin aiki da gatari*; (to make u. of, i.e. profit by) *anfāni*, *anfāne*; (to be wont) verbal forms with *kan*, e.g. he used to come home at night *shi kan tafo gida da dare*; to be used to (to be accustomed to) *saba da*; e.g. camels are used to men *raḡumma sun saba da mutane*; which do you u.? *wanne ka ke moro?*

useful, adj. *da anfāni*, *mai-anfāni*; it is u. *shinada akiba*.

useless, adj. *babu anfāni*, *banza*; u. toil *wata reran*.

uselessly, to work, intr. v. *sunkwiya* or *sunkuya*.

uselessness, n. *wofi*.

usury, *fifiko**.

uterus, *mahaiḡa*.

utility, n., see **use**.

uvula, *beli*, *belu*, *hakin wuya*, *kwadon halshe*.

vaccination, *dashin yar-rani*.

vagabond, adj. *grijeje*, *ḡan karma*.

vagabondage, *magi*.

vagina, *tsēle*, *fariji*.

vain, adj. (empty, worthless) *banza*, *kakari*, *amēre*; in v. *ḡarna* (K.), *ḡanna* (S.); (conceited) see **conceit**.

valiant, *mai-yaji*.

valley, *kwari*, *kware* (S.), n., see **ravine**.

value, n. (estimated worth in money) *daraja*, *antaya*, see **price**.

vanity, n. (emptiness, worthlessness) *kakari*, *abin wofi*; (conceit, foolishness) *wauta*, *faiḡin kai*, see **conceit**.

vapour, n. (mist, fog) *hazo*; v. rising in hot sun *ḡarwalwal-niya*.

variance, n. (dissension, disagreement), see **discord**.

variation, n., see **difference**.

various, adj. *dabam dabam*, *daban daban*, e.g. v. things are sold in the market *abubuwa dabam dabam a sayas da su chikin kasuwa*.

vase for scent, n. *wakiya*.

vaunt, to *rangwada* (S.), *rangaji* (K.).

veal, n. *naman maraki*.

vegetable-marrow, *kabushi*, *ruguguwa*.

veil, n., long v. *lullubi*, *lulube* or *lillibi*, *zane**; a v. worn over the mouth and hanging down in front *amāwali*.

veil, tr. v. *lulluba*; refl. to v. oneself, id.

vein, n. *jijiya*, pl. *jiwoji* or *jijiyoyi*, *majināya* (K.); veins coll. *dagura*.

velvet cloth, kind of, n. *kadamiskin*, *karamiskin*, *mulufi*, *yapki*, *yauki*.

velvet-mite, *karamiskin*, *karmuskin*.

vendor, of small goods *dan kōli*.

venereal disease, *basiru*, *minyau*, *piyauka*.

vengeance, to take, v. *rama*.

Venus, (the planet) n. *matan wata*, lit. the wife of the moon.

verandah, *shirai*, *shirayi*.

verify, to *hakikanta*.

verily, adv. *hakika*, *an che*, *ai*, *da gaskiya*, see **truly**.

vermin, see **tick**, etc.

verse, a v. of the Koran, n. *aya*, pl. *ayoyi*; verses of a song *tsarin maganganu*.

vertigo, n., see **giddiness**.

very, adv. *dayawa*, most frequently with the expression thrown into a nominal form,

e.g. he was v. fearful *ya ji tsoro dayawa*, etc.; sometimes this idea is expressed by repetition, e.g. v. fast, or v. quickly *maza maza*; v. slowly or v. quietly *sannu sannu*; spec. v. red *ja wur*; v. black *baki kirin*, *baki wur*; v. white *fari fat*; v. much (of habitual actions) is often expressed by v. *faye*, e.g. dogs bark v. much at night *karnuka sun faye hafshi da dare*.

vessel, n. 1. (utensil for holding anything) *tukunya*, pl. *tukane* or *tukwane*; a v. made of clay *kasko*, pl. *kasake*; a v. made of skin *tandu*; spec. a glass v. *tangaram*.

2. see **boat**.

vex, tr. v. *wahalshe*, refl. to v. oneself *wahalda*.

vexation, n. *haushi*; see **anger**.

vexed, to be, intr. v. *jin haushi*, e.g. he is v. with me *yana jin haushina*; phr. my heart is v. *zuchiyata ta tafasa*.

vice, n. 1. (profligacy) *zina*.

2. (a defect, blemish) *aibi*, *aibu*.

vicinity, *habarra* (Ar.).

victory, n. *nasara*, *nasarchi*, *bijinta*; to gain a v. *nasara* with *yi* or *samu*, e.g. he gained a v. *ya yi* (or *ya samu nasara*).

victuals, n. *abinchi, tuwo, chima, chimaka.*

view, n., see **sight** 2.

vigorous, *karsani.*

vile, adj. *kazami, duniya**.

village, n. *kauye*, pl. *kauyuka, unguwa, anguwa.*

villain, n. *mai-masifa, mugun mutum.*

villainy, n. (mischief, wickedness) *masifa, mugunta, she-gantaka, shēge**.

vine, wild v. *ayana, dafara, tsibiri kinkini, chibrikinkini*; edible-stemmed v. (*Vitis quadrangularis*) *ḍaḍori*; rubber v. *alubada, alibada, chiwo.*

vinegar, n. *ruwan tsami, yami.*

violate, to *tāka.*

violence, n. (i.e. tyrannical or wrongful v.) *tsanani*; (physical force) *karifi*, e.g. by v. (by force) *da karifi, da tilas.*

violin, a musical instrument resembling a *goge**.

viper, *gajera, injihau, tsadaraki, kububuwa, sha-nono*, see **snake**.

virago, *kazgama.*

virgin, n. *buduruwa*, pl. *buduruwai, kurkiya*, pl. *kurkoki, kurkiyoyi, bikira, sagara.*

virginity, *budurchi, buduruwanchi.*

visible, to become (of a star) *keto, bullo**.

vision, n., see **sight** 1.

visit, tr. v. *jawayi*; spec. of a religious v. to a shrine or holy person *ziyara, ziyarche.*

visitor, n. (guest or stranger) *ḡako*, fem. *baḡuwa*, pl. *baḡuna, baḡi* or *baḡokuna.*

vital, a v. spot *makāsa.*

vizier, *waziri**.

voice, loud, n. *muriya*, pl. *muriyoyi.*

void, to make, tr. v. *wofinta.*

vomit, v. *yin amai*, (to dribble) *tumbudi, amaye, gātse.*

vomiting, *gashi*, (e.g. after drinking poison) *barā.*

voracious, see **greedy**.

voracity, n. *zowari, zuari, zari.*

vowels, n. *hajatu**; points or v. placed above or below letters *wasali.*

vulture, n. *angulu, agulu, augulu*, fem. *angula, agula*, pl. *angullai*; the crested eagle *angulun kwakwa*; the fishing v. *jayaki, meke, maiki, mikiya, mikiya.*

wag the head, to, v. (in token of assent) *gyāḡa kai*, also *kāḡa kai*; to w. or move the head (in token of dissent) *kauḡa kai.*

wage war, to, v. *yin yaki.*

wages, coll. *lada, jinga, alāro, ijāra*; one who pays w. *mai-*

jinga ; to pay w. *yin jinga*, *ijarta* ; a w.-earner *dan ijāra*, *dan jinga*.

wagtail, *maḍikin ƙasa*.

wail, n. *kuka*.

wail, v. *kuka* with *yi* or the forms in *na*.

waist, *dunu*.

wait, intr. v. gen. expressed by means of *jīma*, e.g. w. a little *jīma kădan*, or *jim kădan* ; w. a while *sai anjīma* ; to w. a short time *jinjīma* ; where the meaning is obvious *tsaya* (stop) is often used ; to w. for *jīra*, *jīrache*, *jīrata*, *jīraya* (S.), *tsumaya* (K.), *yin jīnkiri*, *dakata*, *dakanta*, e.g. I waited for you *na dakanta ma ku*, *yin dāko* ; to w., i.e. to linger *dāde*.

wait, lying in, n. *fako*, *aranfaki*, *kwanto* ; a place for lying in w. *mafaka*.

wait, to lie in, intr. v. *yin fako*.

waiting, *dakachi*, *dāko*, *jīnkiri*, *tsayi*.

wake, to, intr. v. (to cease to sleep) *falka* ; tr., to w. one up *tada*, *tayas*, *falkad da*.

wale, made by a whip etc., n. *kulu*, pl. *kulayi*.

walk, n. (pathway) *hanya*, pl. *hanyoyi* ; also fig. of the religious w., e.g. to follow the true w. *bi hanyan gaskiya*.

walk, intr. v. (to move slowly on foot) *yin yawo* ; this is used of the act of walking itself and of promenading, or taking a w. ; very frequently in this sense the phr. *shan iska* (lit. to drink the wind) is combined with *yawo* or *tafi*, e.g. we walked for an airing *muka yi yawo shan iska* ; to w. about *zago* ; to w. backwards and forwards *zago*, *jawagi** ; to w. on all fours *rarrafe* ; to w. on tiptoe *sanda* ; to w. proudly *taƙama* ; to try to w. (to toddle) of infants *dubbo dubbo*.

walking, verbal n. *yauwa* ; w. fast or excitedly *gagawa* ; w. up and down in weaving *wadari*.

walking-stick, *gwalma*.

wall, n. *katanga*, *garu*, *ringa* (Z.), *shirgiya*, *barza*, e.g. if he comes out his wits are at the house wall (i.e. at home) *idan ya fito hankalinsa da barza* ; the w. of a house built of mud *bango*, pl. *ban-gaye* or *banguna* ; the inner w. of a house *kwasandi* ; a w. round a town *ganwa* ; the grass covering of a w. to keep off rain *boto*.

wand, carried by officials, n. *rukuke*.

wander, to, intr. v.; fig. to w. from (to stray from) a path *sau hanya* or *tafarki*; to w. aimlessly *shishiga*.

wanderer, *landi**.

wandering, n. *yauwa*; w. of animals *matataki*.

wane, intr. v. *ragu*, e.g. the day wanes (or is on the w.) *rana ta ragu*.

want, n. 1. (need, lack) *rashi*; w. of health *rashin lafiya*.

2. (penury) *talauchi*, see **poverty**; v., to be in w. of *rasa*, e.g. he is not in w. of an excuse *ba shi rasa huja ba*.

want, to, 1. (to be without) tr. v. *rasa*, *kasa*.

2. (to desire) *so*, e.g. I w. you to give me money *ina so ka ba ni kurɗi*.

wanting, particip. (lacking, devoid of) prefix *maras-*, e.g. w. sense *maras-hankali*; w. strength *maras-karifi*; w. (in the sense of short) *hilafa**.

wanton, n., see **profligate**.

wantonness, n., see **vice** 1.

war, n. *yaki*, pl. *yakuna* or *yakoƙi*, *gāba**, *zaman*; spec. a holy w. *jihādi*, *jahādi*; a civil w. *basasa*; a proclamation of w. *tāgara*; a charm for protection in w. *maganin yaki*; a day fixed for w. *ranar gamu*; a large bird whose

cry is considered an omen of war *zakaran dawaki*; v., to make or wage w. *yin yaki*; instruments of w. *kayan dāga*.

warbler, grass w. *purpur*, *sari-kin kaɗi*.

ward off, to, tr. v. *tsāra*, *tsāri*, *tsāre*, *tsāro*, *tsārīma*, *kāre*.

warm, to, tr. v. *zāfafa*; to w. the hands *gasa hannu*; refl. to w. oneself at a fire, and intr. to become w. *jīn wuta*; to w. up food *dūmama*.

warm, adj. *mai-dumi*, see **hot**.

warmth, *dumi*.

warn, tr. v. *harbarta*, *kadarta*, *gargāda*, also *galkaɗi* with *yi* or the forms in *na*.

warning, n. *galkaɗi*, *gargaɗi*, *kashedi*, *habartawa**.

warrior, n. *mayaki*, *gungama*, *jajirma**, *zarumi*, *zarmi*, pl. *zarumawa* or *zarumai*, *jarimi**, *sadauki*, *sha-bauje*; fig. (lit. a large snake) *gamshēka*, *gamshika*; (lit. a black snake) *masasau**; a boastful w. *gugara**; a chief w. *rago**; a strong w. *gizgari**; w. without load, i.e. carrying only arms *sunkuru**; see **soldier**.

wart-hog, *alhanzir*, *hanzir*, *durungu*.

wash, tr. v. *wanke* or *wanka*; in pregn. sense w. and bring back *wanko*; to w. over with

- water *yafa*, *yafō*; w. well *kivala*, *kwara*, *wanke kalai*.
- washed**, pass. part. *wankakke*, fem. *wankakka*, pl. *wankakku*.
- washing**, n., w. (ablution) *al-walla*.
- washing**, w. away *zarni*.
- wasp**, n. *zirnako*, *jinako*, *zinako*, *damafifito*, *rina*; the mason w. *zanzaro*, *zazaro* (S.).
- waste**, n. 1. (destruction, harm, loss) *ḥarna*, *ḥanna*.
2. (wilderness) *daji*.
- waste**, tr. v. (to spoil, destroy) *ḥāta*, *ḥātas*, *ḥanna*; to w. money (i.e. dissipate, squander) *ḥātas* (and *kāshe*) *kurdi*; to lay w. *yin kadaita*.
- wasted**, pass. part. *ḥatache*, fem. *ḥatachiya*, pl. *ḥatattu*; v., to be w. (i.e. spent) *ḥache*, e.g. the ink is w. (i.e. dissipated, dried up) *tadarwa ta ḥache*; (of man, with disease) *yankwane*, see **emaciated**.
- waster**, *raggo*, see **idle**.
- watch**, n. (time-piece) *loto**, *sa'a**.
- watch**, v. *tsāra*, *tsāri*, *tsāre*, *tsāro* and *tsārīma*, *kūlo*, *yin shigoro*, *zura ido*; to w. carefully *duba*, *dubo*; to w. cattle *kiwo*.
- watching**, *shigoro*.
- watch-tower**, *mabūga* (S.).
- water**, n. *ruwa*, pl. *ruwaye*,

- ruwaiwai*; cold w. *ruwan sanyi*; hot w. *ruwan zafi*, *ruwan ḍumi*; drinking w. *ruwan sha*; rain w. *ruwan Allah* or *ruwan sama*; a sip of w. *guwa*; a beam for drawing w. *jigo*, pl. *jiguna*, *kutāra**; splash of w. *funjum*, *bundum-bundum*; v., to draw w. *jan ruwa*, *kwalfa*, *ḍēbe* and *ḍēbo ruwa*, *ḍauka ruwa*; pure w. *ḥuna ruwa*; to make w. *yin fitsari*, *boli*; muddy w. *gurbatachen ruwa*; w. which wells slowly up *ruwan jira*; still w. *kuruma*; the sound of running w. *kur-kur-kur*, *war-war-war*.
- water**, to (i.e. to give to drink) *shāda*.
- water-buck**, *ambeche*, *dodōka*, *yakumba*, *gwambaza*.
- water-cress**, *lafuwa*.
- water-fowl**, a black w.-f. *dimilmilo*, *dumulmulu* (S.).
- watering**, *shadarwa*.
- water-lily**, *bādo*, *ḥola* (S.).
- water-pot**, n. *tulu*, pl. *tuluna*; spec. pumpkin or gourd from which w.-pots are made *dūma*, pl. *dumaimai*, *dumame*, *gyan-dama*, *jallo* (K.).
- waterproof**, *rigar ruwa*.
- waterside**, n. (watering-place) *mashaya*.
- waterspout**, *indararo* (S.).

watery, adj. *da ruwa*.

wattles of a cock, n. *leḡatu*,
laiḡatu.

wave, tr. v. (to move to and fro) *yin shillo*, *reto*; she is waving her kerchief *tana gilgiza kallabinta*.

waves, n., of water *raḡumman ruwa*; heat w. in the air *ḡiyal rana*.

waving, *shillo*.

wax, n. *gabduwa** (from the ear) *daudān kunne*; see **bees-wax**.

wax-bill, (bird) *asisi*, *baiwar Allah*.

way, n. (road and also fig. of religion, etc.) *hanya*, pl. *han-yoyi*, *tafarki*, pl. *tafarkoki*, *būbe*, *turba*, pl. *turbobi*; (of temper, character) *hali*, pl. *halai*, e.g. that is his w. *halinsa ke nan*; in this w. *hakanga*, see **thus**; v., to go out of the w. (to make room for) *ratse*; to lose the w. *ratsa* (or *ratse*) *hanya*, *kar-kache*; to build or construct a w. *gina hanya* and gen. to prepare a w. *gyara hanya*; phr. I know my w. about *na sani duniya*.

we, pers. pron. nominative sep., e.g. all we or we all *mu duka*; we two *mu biyu*; prefixed to past tenses, e.g. we saw

him *mun gan shi*; suffixed to auxiliary of the future and to the passives, e.g. we will go together *za mu tare*; we were driven out *aka fitas da mu*.

weak, adj. *rashin ḡarifi*, *maras-ḡarifi*, *babu ḡarifi*, *kumāma*, *raunana*, *dagogo* (Kats.).

weakness, n. *kumamanchi*, *ramni*.

wealth, n. *gatanchi*, *tajirchi*, see **property**, **riches**.

wealthy, adj., see **rich** 1.

wean, tr. v. *yin yaye*.

weapon, *mahalbiyi*, see **arms**.

wear, tr. v. *sa** (lit. put on) used with *riga* etc.

weariness, n. *gajiya*, *gajewa*, *gajiyarwa*, *angaje*.

weary, adj. *da ḡajiya*; v., to feel w. *jin ḡajiya*.

weather, fine, n. *duniya dadi*; it will be fair w. *za a yi sarari*; the w. is bad to-day *yan ba sarari ba*.

weave, v. *saḡa*; a frame used in weaving through which the warp threads pass after leaving the *allera*, *masefi*.

weaver, n. ag. *masaḡi*, *ma-saḡa*; weaver's loom *takala*; weaver's shuttle *masaḡa*.

weaver-bird, the yellow w.-b. *jira*; the long-tailed w.-b. (*Vidua principalis*) *zulaidu*, *zulaidi*, sometimes called

sarikin tsuntsaye; the black-headed yellow w.-b. *kābare*; the black-headed w. finch *shaida*.

weaving, *sāka*; to walk up and down for purposes of w. *wadari*; the pulley on a loom on which the peddles work *chikalkora*; the wooden board to which the unwoven thread of the warp is fastened *kunkuru*; the revolving cage on which the spun yarn is wound before w. *yaro-ba-ki-wuya*.

web, spider's, n. *sumya*, *shan-shando* (S.).

wedding, n., see **marriage**; w. festivities *amarchi*.

Wednesday, n. *ranal laraba*, *laraba*, *larba*.

weed, tr. v. *yin tsintsurwan chiyawa*.

week, this day w. *yāda yau*; to-morrow w. *yāda gobe*.

weep, intr. v. *yin hawaye*; see **cry**.

weevil, a small w. which eats corn *kun-ki-chi**.

weigh, tr. v. *awna*, *auni*, *awuna*, *yin awo*, *gwada*; actions are weighed *ayuka awonsu*.

weighing, verbal n., anything for w. with *abin awo*; anything used for w. *ma-awna*.

weight, n. 1. (measured heaviness) *awo*; for particular measures of w. see *miskal*, *rotal**; v., to feel in order to discover the w. of a thing *jinjini*; giving short w. *tsakure*.

2. (heaviness) *nauyi*, *nau-wa**.

weighty, adj. (heavy) *da nauyi*.

welcome, interj. used as a salutation on meeting after a long time *marhaba*, *māra*, *barka da zuwa*, *barka da yini*; see also under *sanu*.

welcome, tr. v. (to receive as a guest) *shide*, *marhabsh*, *tarairaiya*, *tarba*, *tarbi*.

well, n. *rijiya*, pl. *riyoji* or *rijiyoyi*; a deep w. *rijiya da zurfi*, *timniya*; spec. a beam for drawing water out of a w. *jigo*, pl. *jiguna*; v., to dig a w. *gina rijiya*; falling in of a w. *hurma*.

well, to w. out *tsatsāfa*.

well, adj. 1. (right, proper, advantageous) *da kyau*.

2. (in good health) *da lafiya* and *lafiya*, e.g. are you w.? *kana lafiya?* quite w. *sai lafiya* or *lafiya lau*; he came back here w. *ya komo lafiya*; to be w. *yin lafiya*.

3. adverbial expressions

are: (of approbation) w. *da kyan*; (of doubt, hesitation) w. *! to, aya, aiya*; as w. as (together with) *tare da*; w. then (introducing a statement) *dāga nan*.

west, n. *yamma, magariba*.

westward, adv. *yammachi*.

wet, n. (rain) *ruwa*; cf. seq.

wet, to be, intr. v. (of the weather) e.g. it is w. *ana ruwa*; it was very w. *an yi ruwa dayawa*; (to become wet) *jiki*; (to be wetted or put in water) *a jika tsant-sama, suma* (S.); to be very w. *jika sharkap*.

wet-season, n. *damāna* or *damuna*; to pass the w.-s. *yin damāna*; see under **rainy**.

what, pron. 1. dependent relative (that which) *abin da*, e.g. I see what you want *na gani abin da ka ke so*.

2. interrog. what? *mi, me, mine* and *minene*, e.g. what has happened to you? *mi ya same ka?* what shall we do? *mi za mu yi?* also adj. *wa, wanene*, fem. *wache, wacheche*, pl. *suwa, suwane* and *sunane*, e.g. what is his name? *wa sunansa?* what kind of bird is this? *wanne irin tsuntsuwa ke nan?* see under **who**.

whatever, indef. rel. pron. *komi*, e.g. whatever begins will come to an end *komi ya faru za shi shi kare ne*.

whatsoever, indef. rel. pron. *komine*, e.g. wh. you do, it will be of no use *komine ka yi babu anfani*.

wheat, n. *alkama*; w. in good condition *alkama tsari*; tuft of w. *geza*, pl. *gezuna*; ear of w. *kube*, see **ear**.

wheel, n. *rumbuwa**, *ujala**, *keke*.

whelp, n. *kwikuyo* or *kurk-wiyo*, pl. *kwikuye*.

when, adv. 1. rel. *da, yanda, yawanda, yaushe, sa'an da, lokachin da, ran da, kagada* (S.), *idan* or *izan, kādan, kan, kamin, kur** or *kul**.

2. interrog. when? *yaushé, wache sa'a, wanne lokachi*; since wh.? *tun yaushé, dāga yaushé*; until wh.? *har yaushé?*

whence? *dāga ina?*

whenever, adv. *ko yaushé*, e.g. wh. he gets up he falls down again *ko yaushé shi tashi ya fudi kuma*.

where, adv. 1. rel. *inda, wurin da*.

2. interrog. where? *ina?*

wherefore? adv. *domi? dom-mi* or *domin mi?* see **why**.

wherever, adv. *ko'ina*.

whether...or, correlatives *yal-la...ko, ko...ko*.

which, see **who**.

while, a little, n. *jima kaḍan* and *jim kaḍan*.

while, adv. rel. *tun da*, e.g. while they were speaking together I ran off *tun da suna yin magana na tafi da gudu*; wh. they were about to kill him a wonderful thing happened *tun da za su ka-she shi abin mamaki ya faru*.

whip, n. (of skin) *kurfu*, pl. *kurafu, bulala*, pl. *bulalai*.

whip, tr. v. *yin bulala, yin kurfu*, e.g. he whipped them *ya yi ma su bulala*.

whirling, n. *juyi*.

whirlwind, n. *guguwa*, used esp. for dust storm.

whiskers, *saje*, pl. *sajoji*; w. and moustache *washefe*.

whisper, intr. v. *raḍa, chim-baya*, both esp. in bad sense.

whisperer, n. ag. *mai-raḍa*.

whispering, n. *raḍa*.

whistle, n., made of horn *kwabura* (K.), *kwabira* (S.).

whistle, intr. v. (with the lips) *yin fêto, yin fîto*.

whistling, participial n. *fê-duwa, fîto, feto, shewa*.

white, adj. *fāri*, fem. *fāra, farfara*, pl. *fārare, fāru-fāru* or *farfaru*; very wh. *fāri*

fat; a wh. (i.e. one of a wh. race) *ba-ture*.

whiten, to *faranta*.

whitened, pass. particip. *fā-
raya*, pl. *fārayu*.

whitish, (i.e. dirty white) *furi fari*.

who, pron. 1. rel. (also which, the objective whom, and the rel. that) *wanda*, fem. *wadda*, pl. *wadanda*, also simply *da*; the possess. whose is expressed by the foregoing with the corresponding possess. pron. suffixed to the object possessed, e.g. the man whose camel I killed *mutum wanda na kashe raḱuminsa*.

2. pronominal interrogative who? (also = which?) *wa, wane* and *wanene*, fem. *wache, wacheche*, pl. *suwa, suwane*, e.g. who is this? *wa ke nan*; who are you? *wanene kai*; which are they? *suwane ne*; which of them? *wane chikin su*; which woman among them? *wache chikin su*; who is this? *wanene wannan*; the possess. whose? is expressed by placing the name of the object possessed in the connective before the interrog., e.g. whose daughter art thou? (i.e. who is thy mother?) *ḍiyar wacheche ki ke*; whose son is

he? *dan wa shi ke*; whose horse is this? *dokin wa kenan*.

3. the adjectival interrogative forms are *wanne*, fem. *wache*, pl. *wāḍanne*; who is he? *wanne shi*; what woman is it that has come? *wache mache che wannan wadda ta zo*; what men are these? *wāḍanne mutane ke nan*.

whoever, indef. pron. *kowa*, *duka wannan da*; see **soever**.

whole, n. *dukachi*, *dukanta*, e.g. the w. of mankind *ḍo-kachin mutane*.

whom, rel. and interrog. pron., see **who**.

whore, n. *shakaliya*, pl. *shakalai*, *karuwa*.

whoredom, n. *shakalchi*, *karuwanchi*.

whose, possess. rel. and interrog. pron., see **who**.

why, dependent rel. adv. *domi*, *dommi*, *don mi*, *domin mi*, he did not tell us why he did this thing *ba ya faḍi ma mu domi ya yi abin nan*; interrog. why? *domi*, *dommi* or *domin mi*, *sabīlin mi*, *mi ya sa*, *sabad da mi*.

wick, n., lamp w. made of twisted cotton *lagwami*, *lagwani*.

wicked, adj. *mugu*, fem. *mununya*, pl. *miyagu*; a w.

person *mugun mutum*, *mala-lachi*.

wickedness, n. *mugunta*, *lābo*, *shegantaka*.

wide, adj. *da fāḍi*, *maifāḍi*, *bikiki*, *da faski*; n., a w. place *yalwa*; it is two cubits w. *faḍinsa* (=its width) *kamu biyu*.

wide-opened, adj. *kurkurkur**.

widow, n. *zauwara*, *zaura*, *gwabruwa*, *jaura*, *bazawara*, *gwamruwa*, pl. *gwamraye*; a w. during her time of retreat *tākaba*.

widower, *gwabro*, *gwauuro*, *gwamro*, *jauri*, *zauri*.

widow-finch, *zulaidu*.

widowhood, *zauwarchi*.

width, n. *faḍi*, *faski*, e.g. its w. is this *faḍinsa ke nan*.

wife, n. *mata*, pl. *mataye*; spec. chief w. *uwar gida* or *uwal gidu*; w. of a polygamist *kishiya* (q.v.), pl. *kishiyoyi*; a favourite w. *mowa*.

wild, adj., see **tame** 1.

wilderness, n. *daji*, *dāwa*, see **desert**.

wile, n., see **stratagem**.

will, n. 1. (assent, consent and so, permission) *yarda*, (pleasure, wish, determination) *turn*, e.g. work your w. *ku yi abin da ku ke so*.

2. (testament) *wasichi**.

will, v. 1. (of consent, also willingness) *yarda*.

2. as auxiliary of the fut.

za, e.g. I w. run *za ni gudu*;

he w. return here *za shi komo*.

willow, *rimni*, *ba ruwana*.

win, v. (in gambling) *kasa*, *chi*,

e.g. I w. *na chi*.

wind, n. *iska* or *hiska*, pl.

iskoki or *hiskoki*, *holoko**; a

dusty w. *malalo*; the Har-

mattan w. *iskan buda*; the

w. is now blowing hard *iska*

yana busawa yanzu da karifi;

to break w. *yin tusa*.

wind, tr. v. *murɗa*, *murɗe* (K.),

mirda, *mirde* (S.); to w.

thread *wadarta*; intr. (to

coil) *nade*.

winding-sheet, n. *likafani*,

likkafani.

window, n. (i.e. a hole to look

out) *sakata*, *taga* (K.), pl.

tagaigai; *ɗan kofa*.

wind-pipe, n. *muriya*, pl.

muriyoyi, *janai*, *janyaro*.

wine, palm-, n. *bam*, *bami*.

wing, n. (of bird) *fifike*, *fikafike*,

pl. *fikafikai*, *fukafuki*, pl. *fu-*

kafukai, *faiɓeto*, *fefeto*; w. of

an insect *kallemu* (K.); flap-

ping of w. *fuffuka*, *pupuka*.

winged, adj. *mai-fefeto*.

wink, v. *kyabta* (or *kyapta*)

ido, *jafache*, *rumtsa*; to w.

with one eye *yin kanne*.

winking, participial n. *kyab-*

tawa, *kyaptawa*, *kanne*.

winnow, v. *tankada* and *yin*

tankade, *bakache*, *sheka*, *shi-*

ka.

winnow, n. ag. *mai-bakache*,

*mashekiya**.

winnowing, *tankade*.

winter-season, *buda*.

wipe, tr. v. *shafe*, *karta* (K.),

karche (S.), *katse*; wiping

(e.g. of a dish) *katsa*; any-

thing used for wiping *abin*

shafe.

wisdom, n. 1. (sagacious in-

sight) *lura*, *budi*, *hikima**.

2. (prudence, good sense)

hankali.

wise, adj. in sense of prec. 1.

mai-lura; in that of prec. 2.

da hankali.

wish, n. *abin so*, *fata*; a strong

w. *guri**; unless I w. *sai*

na ga dama.

wish, tr. v. *so*, *nufe* or *nifa*;

to w. for *fache*; to w. rather

fi so, e.g. I w. this rather

than that *na fi so wannan*

da wanchan.

wit, cf. I am at my wits' end

dabara ta kare.

witchcraft, n., see **sorcery**.

with, prep. 1. instrumental,

da, e.g. they slashed him w.

a sword *suka sare shi da*

takobi.

2. comitative, *da* which is commonly used with verbs of motion, e.g. go off w. it (take it away) *tafi da shi*; (in company w.) *tare da*; (near, by) *wuri na* or *wurin, gun*, e.g. w. the king *wuri na* (or *wurin*) *sariki*; thou must seek knowledge w. the Mallams *kai dai a nemi shini gun mallamai*; (of competition and contest) *da*, e.g. he fought w. a certain man *ya yi fada da wani mutum*; he made war w. Kaffi *ya yi yaki da Kafi*.

withdraw, tr. v. *kanda, kaushe, turje, turjo*; to w. the hand *danko*; intr, to w. from (to move away from) *gusa, gulgusa* or *gurgusa, toge ma, kude* (S.); to w. into shelter *noke*.

wither, v. *yaushi, tsotse* and *tsotsi, kwake**; (of plants) *yankwane*.

withered, pass. part. *shanyayye*, fem. *shanyayya, shanyayyu*; spec. w. branches *kwabraka*; w. tree *koren itache*.

withering, n. *yaushi*.

withhold, tr. v. *hana*.

within, prep. *chikin* or *daga chikin, tsakan**; from w. *daga chikin*.

without, prep. 1. (devoid of, wanting) *ba, babu, bamda*, e.g. w. doubt *babu shakka, babu warwa*; with the prefix *maras-* compounds are formed equivalent to the English prepositional phrase, e.g. w. shame *maras-kumya*; v., to be w. *rasa, tafe, tafi, taɓe, kasa*.

2. (not within) see **outside**.

witness, n. 1. (testimony) *shaida*, pl. *shaidai* and *shaidodi*; eye-w. *shaidar ido*; false w. *shaidar zur*.

2. (a person who testifies) *mai-shaida*, pl. *masu-shaida*; v., to bear w. *shaida* with *yi* or the forms in *na*; to bring or adduce w. *kai* (or *kawo*) *shaida*; to bear false w. *damre magana*.

wizard, n. *maye* or *mayi*, fem. *mayya, boka*, pl. *bokaye*.

woe! interj. *wai, tir*, e.g. w. is me! *wai niya*; w. unto you! *tir da ku*; see **alas**.

wolf, an animal resembling a w. (the hunting dog), n. *kyarkechi, kyalkечи, kirkinkiji, kilikinkiji*.

woman, n. *make*, pl. *mata, mutumniya*; young w. *yarinya*, pl. *yammata*; a bad w. *karuwa, shakaliya*; a w.

without a husband *bazawara*;
a woman's loin-cloth *fatari*;
an old w. *gyatuma*, *goma*,
yakumba.

womanliness, *wanchi*.

wonder, n. 1. (the feeling)
*woba**.

2. (something wonderful,
a w.) *mamaki* and *abin ma-*
maki, *ajaba*, *ajub*, *karāma*.

wonder, intr. v. *yin woba*, *jin*
mamaki, *saurara**.

wonderful, adj. *da mamaki*.

wont, n. (= habit) *tada*, *ada*,
e.g. this is their w. *ta-*
dansu ke nan; v., to be w.,
see **accustom** 2.

wood, n. 1. (forest) *rukūki*.

2. (the material of trees)
itache and *iche*; a little
piece of w. *dan itache*; spec.
a long piece of w. tied behind
the ear as a punishment for
thieving *kangalai*.

woodpecker, green *makōkofo*,
makōkofi.

wool, n. *mulufi* or *malufi*, *ulu*,
sufi, *rero**.

woollen, adj. *da* (or *na*) *mu-*
lufi or *malufi*; woollen cloth
mulufi or *malufi*.

word, n. *magana*, pl. *magan-*
ganu, *zanche*, pl. *zantatuka*,
kalma, *kalami**, *karātu*;
pleasant words (lit. ear broth)
romon kunne.

work, n. (employment, busi-
ness, labour) *aiki*, *shāgali*,
*shugala**, pl. *shagulgula*, *tsur-*
fa; concr. (a production, an
act, a w.) *aiki*, pl. *aikoki*;
net-work *aikin raga*; a bad
w. *aiki mugu*; a day's w.
wunin aiki; v., to refuse to
w. or to shirk w. *fi wuya*,
huji; to start w. *kama aiki*.

work, intr. v. *aiki* with *yi* and
the forms in *na*; to w. dili-
gently *yin sawabe*; to w.
uselessly. *sunkwiya* or *sun-*
kuya; n. unwillingness to w.
sassauchi.

working, n. (action, operative
power) *yi** q.v.

workman, n. ag. *maaikachi*,
pl. *maaikata*.

workshop, n. *maaikachi**.

world, n. *duniya*; the next
w. *lahira*, *gidan gobe*.

worm, n., an earth-w. *tana*, pl.
tanu, *tsutsa*; earth-worms
abin kāsā; thread-w. *kwaraba*;
tape-w. *tsīla*; guinea-w. *kur-*
kunu, *girgamu*; worms in
horses or asses coll. *āzumaki*,
āzurmakī.

worry, tr. v. *wahalshe*, *dāme*;
he worried people beyond
endurance *ya chika dama*
mutane.

worse, comp. adj. *mafi mu-*
gunta daga.

worship, n. (religion, creed) *addini**; (divine service) *salla*; Mohammedan w. *musulumchi*.

worth, (deserts) *chinchinta*.

worthless, adj. *banza*, *la'ane*, fem. *la'ana*, pl. *la'anu*, *lalatache*, fem. *lalatachiya*, pl. *lalatattu*, *amere*, *wofi*, *yofi* (S.); n., a w. fellow *dan banza*, *wofin mutum*; to be w. *lalache*, *tunkushe*.

worthy, adj. *kiriki*, *kiriki*.

wound, n. *rauni*, *makami*, *miki*; scar of a healed w. *tabo*, *tambo*.

wound, tr. v. *rauni*; to w. with a spear *chäke*.

wounded, pass. part. *da rauni*.

wounding, *jinaya*.

woven, pass. part. *sakakke*, fem. *sakakkiya*, pl. *sakakku*.

wrap, tr. v. *yafa*, *yafö*, *sunke*, *kunshe**.

wrapper, n. (goatskin loin w.) *walki* (S.), *warki* (K.).

wrapping, grass, for packing salt, etc., n. *burdumi*.

wrath, n., see **anger**.

wrestle, intr. v. *yin kokuwa*.

wrestler, n. *mai-kunche*.

wrestling, n. *kokuwa*, *kokowa*; a. w. game *gumaza*.

wring, tr. v. *murda*, e.g. they wrung the fowls' necks *suka murda wuyan kaji*.

wrinkled, to be *takura*.

wrinkling, n. *yaushi*, *yoshi*.

wrist, n. *wuyan hannu*, *tsint-siyar hannu*; w.-bone *idon hannu*; spec. a w. ornament worn by the heathen *warami*, pl. *waramai*; a wristlet made of leather and wood *däga*; w. bangles *kärau*, *kambu*, *kambuwa*, *warami*.

write, v. *rubuta*, *rubutu*, *yin rubutu*, *rubuche*.

writer, *marubuchi*, pl. *marubuta*.

writing, n. abstr. *rubutu* or *rubuchi*; a w. board *allo*; concr. (anything written, a w.) *laya*, pl. *lawaye*, *layu*, *takarda*, pl. *takardu*, *rubutu*, *rubuchi*, *litafi*, pl. *litatafi*, *litatafai*; a line of w. *shadara*, *shatsära*; spec. writing from God (used of the Koran, the Psalms or Gospels) *zabura**.

wrong, n. (violation of right) *laifi*; v., to do w. *yin laifi*, *karkache*, e.g. he did me w. *ya yi ma ni laifi*; I will produce proof so that anyone may see that you are in the w. *ni kawo shaida kowa shi gani ku ke da laifi*.

yam, n. *doya*, pl. *doyoyi*, *maguraza*; a y. cooked and

beaten up *sakwara*; *kokó* y. *gwaza*; a kind of y. (the Kaffir potato) *rizga*; a root resembling a y. *tumuku*, *chakara*.

yard, (measure of length) *sanda**

yarn, (thick cotton) n. *abāwa*.

yawn, intr. v. *mika**; he does nothing but y. *saishina mika*.

yaws, *kyambi* (S.).

ye, pers. pron., see **you**.

yea, adv., see **yes**.

year, n. *shekara*, pl. *shekaru*, e.g. how many years old are you? *shekarunka nauwa* or *shekara nauwa kana da rai* or *shekara nauwa tun haifuwalka*; last y., adv. *bara*, *bariya*; next y. *baɗi*; this y. *bāna*; v., to live (so many) years *shekara*; y. after y. *shekara da shekaru*.

yeast, n., spec. y. made of acid pulp of the tamarind *tsamiya*.

yellow, adj. *rawaya*, pl. *rawayyu*, spec. y. needlework on a bernouse *yar-rani*.

yes, adv. *i*, *na'am*, *mādalla**, *yau**, *yo**; to say y. (to assent or consent) *kada kai*; see **certainly**.

yesterday, n. *jiya*; the day before y. *shekaranjiya*, three days ago *wanshekaranjiya*; y. evening *jiya da mareche*.

yet, adv. *har yanzu*, e.g. is your father y. living? *ubanka har yanzu shina da rai*; while y. *tun da*, e.g. while they were y. running *tun da suna gudu*; not y. *tukun*, *tukuna* with *ba*, e.g. he has not y. gone away *ba ya tafi tukuna ba*; I have not y. found it *ban samu har yau*.

yoke, put on necks of slaves, n. *karkiya*.

yokel, a *bagidaje*, *ɗan kawye*.

yolk of egg, n. *gwabduwa*, *gwanduwa*.

yonder, 1. dem. adj. (also=the one y.) *wanchan*, fem. *wachan*, pl. *wadannan*, *chan* or *chana*, e.g. on the y. side *dāga waje chan*.

2. adv. (over there) *chan*, *chana*, *dāga chan*, *wuri chan*.

Yoruba people, Hausa name for *ayagi*, *Yaribawa*.

you, pers. pron. (also ye) *ku*; to you *ma ku* or with assimilation *muku*.

young, adj. 1. (new, fresh, not used of animals or men) *sābo*, fem. *sābuwa*, pl. *sabui*, *sabobi*, *sababi* or *sabbi*.

2. (of animals) *ɗa*, conn. *ɗan*, fem. *ɗiya*, pl. *ya*, conn. *yan*, coll. *ɗiya*, e.g. a y. lion *ɗan zaki* or *ɗan zakanya*; y. lions *yan zakanya*; the

hyena brought forth her y.
kura ta haife diyanta.

3. (of human beings) special terms are used requiring no adj., e.g. a y. lad *yaro*, pl. *yara*; a y. woman *yarinya*, pl. *yam-mata*; a y. man, see **youth**.

youngest, adj. *auta*.

youngling, n. (of animals) *kwikuyo*, *labubu*, *kurkwiyo*, *kuyikuyu*, pl. *kwikuye*, *kuyi-kuyi*.

your, possess. pron. suffixed to a masc. n. *-nku*, suffixed to a fem. n. *-rku*, *-lku*, e.g. y. king *sarikinku*; separate, if the object possessed is masc. *naku*, if fem. *taku*, if pl. *naku*.

yours, (the form of prec. employed when the object possessed is not expressly stated but implied) with masc. object *naku*, fem. *taku*, pl. *naku*, e.g. our horses are

better than y. *dawakinmu sun fi naku*.

yourself, yourselves, refl. and emphatic pron.; see **self**.

youth, n. 1. abstr. *yarantaka*, *yarinta*.

2. concr. (a y. from fourteen to twenty years of age) *samrayi*, *saurayi*, *sarmayi*, pl. *samari*.

Zaria, the town, *Zazzau*, *Zozo* or *Zakazak*; the people of Z. *Zagezagi*.

zeal, n. *himma*, *harama*, *hazama*, *yaji**; v., to show z. *maida* (or *yin*) *himma*.

zigzagging, *kurda nan kurda nan*.

zithern, a kind of *garaiya*, *guraiya*, *karaiya*.

zizyphus, n., Z. *spina Christi kurna*; Z. *lotus magariya*; Z. *mucronata* (buffalo-horn) *magariyar kura*.

Cambridge:

PRINTED BY JOHN CLAY, M.A.

AT THE UNIVERSITY PRESS

PUBLICATIONS OF THE CAMBRIDGE
UNIVERSITY PRESS RELATING TO AFRICA

A History of the Colonization of Africa by Alien Races.

By Sir HARRY H. JOHNSTON, G.C.M.G., K.C.B., Hon. Sc.D. Cantab.
New Edition, revised throughout and considerably enlarged. Crown 8vo.
With 8 maps. 8s. *net*. Cambridge Historical Series.

Ethnology of A-Kamba and other East African tribes.

By C. W. HOBLEY, C.M.G., A. M. Inst. C. E. Demy 8vo. With
54 illustrations and a map. 7s. 6d. *net*.

The Tribes of Northern and Central Kordofán. By

H. A. MACMICHAEL, Sudan Civil Service, late Scholar of Magdalene
College, Cambridge. Demy 8vo. With 19 plates. 10s. 6d. *net*.

Brands used by the Chief Camel-owning Tribes of

Kordofán. By the same author. Demy 8vo. With 17 plates. 6s. *net*.

Initia Amharica. An Introduction to spoken Amharic. By

C. H. ARMBRUSTER, M.A., Sudan Civil Service. Royal 8vo.

Part I. Grammar. 12s. *net*.

Part II. English-Amharic Vocabulary with phrases. 15s. *net*.

Vocabularies of the Kamba and Kikuyu Languages of

East Africa. By HILDEGARDE HINDE (Mrs SIDNEY L. HINDE). Crown
8vo. 3s. *net*.

The Masai Language. Grammatical Notes, together with
a Vocabulary. Compiled by HILDEGARDE HINDE. Crown 8vo. 3s. 6d.

A Grammar of the Somali Language with Examples

in Prose and Verse. And an account of the Yibir and Midgan Dialects.

By J. W. C. KIRK, B.A., King's College, Cambridge, Lieutenant, Duke
of Cornwall's Light Infantry and 6th (Somaliland) Battalion, King's
African Rifles. Demy 8vo. 7s. 6d. *net*.

The Modern Egyptian Dialect of Arabic. A Grammar,

with Exercises, Reading Lessons and Glossaries, from the German of
Dr K. VOLLERS. With numerous additions by the Author. Translated
by F. C. BURKITT, M.A. Crown 8vo. 10s. 6d.

Dictionary of the Hausa Language. By the Rev. CHARLES

HENRY ROBINSON, D.D., sometime Lecturer in Hausa in the University
of Cambridge, Honorary Canon of Ripon. Crown 8vo.

Vol. I. Hausa-English. *Third edition, revised and enlarged.* 12s. *net*.

Vol. II. English-Hausa. *Third edition.* 9s. *net*.

Specimens of Hausa Literature. By the Rev. CHARLES

HENRY ROBINSON, M.A. Small 4to. 10s. Translation, Transliteration
and Notes, without Facsimiles, 5s.

Cambridge University Press

C. F. CLAY, Manager

London: Fetter Lane, E.C.

Edinburgh: 100, Princes Street

3

122

644

**PLEASE DO NOT REMOVE
CARDS OR SLIPS FROM THIS POCKET**

UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO LIBRARY